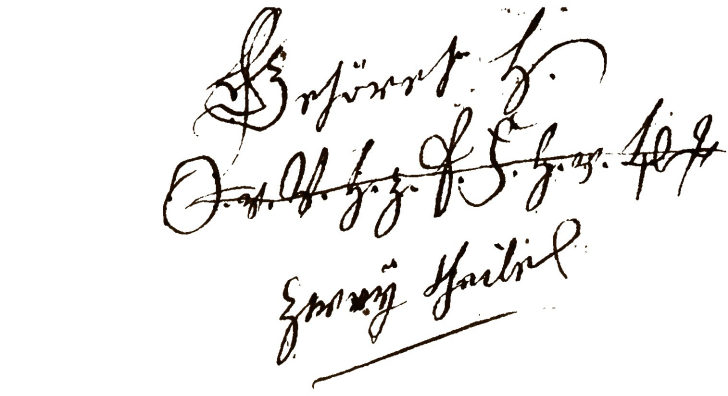
McGhee
683


Sultan Mehmed II, the Conquerer
Ex Libris
George Crews Mc Ghee
United States Ambassador
to Turkey



C P CLARKE

A GENERAL

HISTORY

OF THE

Turks, Moguls, and *Tatars,*

Vulgarly called

TARTARS.

TOGETHER

With a DESCRIPTION of the Countries they inhabit.

In TWO VOLUMES.

I. The Genealogical Hiſtory of the *Tatars*, tranſlated from the *Tatar* MANUSCRIPT written in the *Mogul* Language by *Abu'l Ghâzi Bahâder, Khân* of *Khowârazm.*

II. An Account of the PRESENT STATE of the *Northern Aſia*, as it includes *Grand Tatary*, (or the Countries poſſeſs'd by the *Moguls* and *Tatars*) and *Siberia* : With ſome Obſervations relating to *Great Ruſſia, Turky, Arabia, Perſia, India* and *China.*

With Two MAPS *exhibiting the Antient and Preſent State of* GRAND TATARY.

The whole made *Engliſh* from the *French*, with ſeveral Improvements and Additions.

LONDON:

Printed for J. and J. KNAPTON, J. DARBY, A. BETTESWORTH, F. FAYRAM, J. OSBORN and T. LONGMAN, J. PEMBERTON, C. RIVINGTON, F. CLAY, J. BATLEY, and AARON WARD. M.DCC.XXX.

THE

Genealogical Hiſtory

OF THE

TATARS.

Tranſlated from the *Tatar* MANUSCRIPT written in the *Mogul* Language by *Abu'l Ghâzi Bahâder*, *Khân* of *Khowârazm.*

CONTAINING

The ANTIQUITIES of the *Moguls* and *Tatars* from *Adam*, according to the Account of the *Mohammedan* TATARS. A curious Deſcription of all the Tribes into which the *Turkiſh* Nation is divided: The LIFE of *Zingiz Khân* the Great, and of his Succeſſors in the four Parts of his Empire.

TOGETHER

With a complete HISTORY of the *Uzbek Khâns* of *Khowârazm*, and in a good meaſure of the *Khâns* of *Great Bukharia*, from the firſt Conqueſt of thoſe Countries under *Shah Bakht Soltân* in 1494. to the Death of *Abu'l Ghâzi Bahâder Khân*, the Author, in 1663.

Illuſtrated with NOTES, *and a* MAP *of* Grand Tatary, *as it was in the Time of* Zingîz Khân.

The Whole made *Engliſh.*

VOL. I.

LONDON:

Printed in the Year M.DCC.XXX.



THE TRANSLATOR's PREFACE.

A *Hiſtory of the ſeveral Branches of the* Tatars *is a great Curioſity; and this which we here preſent the Publick has the better Claim to its Regard as coming from a* Tatar *himſelf: tho poſſibly there are ſome, who, according to their narrow way of thinking, may reject it for the ſame Reaſon.*

But whatever ſuch Perſons may fanſy, 'tis certain the Tatars *have made themſelves remarkable for Erudition as well as Arms. That Zeal for the Encouragement of Learning which paſſed thro' the ſeveral Succeſſions of* Perſian *Kings, did not ceaſe upon the Conqueſt of the* Tatars, *but deſcended even to them. It is to* Hulaku, *ſirnamed* Il Khân, *the Founder of their Monarchy in* Perſia, *that we owe the Aſtronomical Tables of* Nasîr al dîn al Tûſi, *called from him* Ilkhanian. *He built a magnificent Obſervatory at* Marâgha *in* Perſia, *and invited thither all the great Aſtronomers of his Time to obſerve the Motions of the Heavens.* Gazan, *or*

Tatars famous for Learning as well as Arms.

Kazan Khân *his 6th Succeſſor, cauſed* * *the Hiſtory of the* Moguls *and* Tatars *to be written by his* Wazîr *(or as we write it* Vizier) Fadl allah, *from which the preſent Hiſtory is chiefly extracted: and* Abu ſayd Khân *the Great is remark'd to have ſpent moſt of his Time in Study.*

If we paſs from the Deſcendants of Zingîz Khân *to thoſe of* Timûr-beg, *or as our Author calls him* Amîr Timûr, *we ſhall find that Love for Learning ſtill continue. Beſides the magnificent Academy and Obſervatory erected at* Samarkant, *the firſt by the laſt mentioned Hero, and the other by his Grandſon* Ologh Beg; *this laſt Monarch has made himſelf famous, among other things, for the Tables of* Epochas, *and the* fixt Stars, *which go under his Name, and will always remain as Monuments both of his Learning and Inclination to promote the Sciences. It is no Novelty in the* Eaſt *to find Kings among their Authors, and the Book before us is an Inſtance of two, the Father and the Son, who were both* Khâns *of* Khowârazm.

Genius of the *Tatars* proved from their Conqueſts.

It may appear at firſt ſight a little out of the way to draw an Argument of the Tatar *Genius from their Conqueſts: Events which we ſhall be told perhaps are the Effects of brutal Force, and in which Numbers only have had the Deciſion. But whoever ſhall place thoſe three great* Tatar *Heroes in his view, I mean* Zingîz Khân, Timûr-beg *and* Zungh-te, *the laſt Conqueror of* China; *and ſhall conſider from how ſmall a Beginning, and by what degrees, they roſe to ſuch immenſe Power; the potent Neighbours they had to ſtruggle with on all ſides, and the various Turns of Fortune they underwent before they could even ſecure themſelves at home: In ſhort, that each of them, comparatively out of nothing, enlarged his little Canton to a prodigious Empire; and in the Compaſs of a ſingle Reign, nay in a few Years of that Reign, con-*

* Pag. 30.

quer'd

quer'd conſiderably more than the Romans *did in* 500 *Years: Theſe Facts, I ſay, weigh'd by a Perſon of Senſe in all their Circumſtances, as deliver'd to us by the Hiſtorians, whether* Aſiatick *or* European, *who have wrote their reſpective Lives, muſt conſtrain him to acknowledge that nothing leſs than the moſt conſummate Genius could be capable of conducting ſuch Grand Deſigns; and make him look upon the Heroes who form'd and executed them under ſo many Diſadvantages (according to the juſt Remark of the* French *Editor* *, *with regard to* Zungh-te) *as infinitely ſuperior to our* Alexanders *and* Cæſars.

North Parts of *Europe* originally from *Tatary.*

Our Contempt for the Tatars *would ſtill leſſen perhaps, did we conſider how nearly we ſtand related to them: that our Anceſtors came originally from the North of* Aſia, *and that our Cuſtoms, Laws, and way of Living were formerly the ſame with theirs: In ſhort, that we are no other than a Colony of* Tatars. *It was from* Tatary *thoſe People came, who under the ſucceſſive Names of* Kymbrians, Titans, Kelts *and* Gauls, *poſſeſſed all the Northern Parts of* Europe, *and eſtabliſh'd a mighty Empire there and in* Aſia, *long before* Greece *was a Nation, or* Rome *had a Name. And what were the* Goths, Huns, Alans, Swedes, Vandals, Franks, *and other Tribes of People, who many Ages after deſcending ſouthward overthrew the* Roman *Empire, but Swarms from the ſame Hive? Theſe Iſlands of ours beyond all doubt were peopled from* Gaul; *and the* Keltick *Language which ſtill ſubſiſts in* French Britany, Wales, *but more eminently thro'out* Ireland (*and which for its great Antiquity and Uſe, in explaining the Antiquities of even* Greece *and* Rome *themſelves, ought highly to be valued) is a Demonſtration that the Inhabitants are deſcended from that* Tatar *Nation. As for the* Saxons, Danes *and* Normans, *who in the latter Times made*

* Pag. 771.

ſucceſſive Conqueſts of England, *every one knows, or at leaſt believes, they came originally from* Tatary.

Saxons from Kipjak.

I might be able perhaps to carry this Point further, and alledge, not without ſome ſhew of Probability, that we are akin to the very Uzbeks *whoſe* Khân *was the Author of the preſent Hiſtory, ſince there appears a great Connection between the* Saxon *and the antient Language of* Kipjâk, *or* Kipchâk, *of which we have a Specimen in the 4th Epiſtle of* Buſbequius, *out of the Language of the Inhabitants of* Krîm, *who are originally of* Kipjak *as well as the* Uzbeks. Buſbequius *owns their Speech, Manners, and Countenances to have a great reſemblance with the* Germans, *but ſuppoſes the* Krîm Tatars *to be deſcended from them; nay, he brings it ſo near as to fanſy they might be* Saxons *tranſplanted thither by the Emperor* Charles *the Great, in order to account for that Agreement. And our Conjecture will ſtill appear more probable, in caſe there be any truth in the old* Swediſh *Chronicles, which bring the* * Swedes *from* Kaſhgar.

This Affinity between us and the Tatars *ought to render a Hiſtory of them the more acceptable to us; and indeed a faithful and exact Chronology from antient Times of that extenſive People would be of great Uſe in fixing their Migrations and Settlements from time to time in all Parts of* Europe; *but it is but of late that they have begun to keep Records of their Affairs any more than we; and their Antiquity is to be proved by the Teſtimony of other Nations, and not by any Monuments of their own.*

Learning ſettled early beyond the *Oxus* or *Amu*.

It is not eaſy to fix the Date when Learning paſſed into the Countries beyond the Oxus *or* Amu; *but it may be preſumed it is of a ſtanding as old as the Name of* Bukharia, *one of the principal Provinces:* Bukhar, *as our Author tells us* †, *ſignifying in the* Mogul *Language* a learned Man,

* Hiſt. Gengh. Khan, *p.* 116. † *Pag.* 108.

becauſe,

becauſe, ſays he, all that have a mind to be inſtructed in the Languages and the Sciences go into Bukharia. *This at leaſt we are certain of, that Learning appeared very early there in the Times of the* Arabians, *and continued to flouriſh in thoſe Provinces till the laſt Conqueſt of them by the* Uzbeks, *who are the preſent Poſſeſſors of* Great Bukharia *and* Khowârazm, *both of which have bred numbers of very famous Men: of whom for* Bukharia *I ſhall only mention* Abu Aly Ebn Sina, *vulgarly called* Avicenna, *and for the latter* Abu Rihan, *ſurnamed* Al Biruni, *the great Aſtronomer; who beſides is the* Scotus, *or* Doctor ſubtilis *of the* Mohammedans, *and even ſurpaſſed* Ebn Sina. *At preſent indeed Learning is brought to decay in thoſe once flouriſhing Countries, thro' the Rapines and Oppreſſions of the* Uzbeks; *and* Khowârazm, *which in the Time of* Mamûn Ebn Mamûn *was full of learned Men, we are told now by the Son of our Author*, contains ſcarce any at all.*

However, Abu'lghâzi Khân *was not deſtitute of Abilities ſuitable to his Undertaking; and, if you will believe himſelf†, he had the Art of writing Hiſtory, as well as of War. This at leaſt appears, that he underſtood the* Turkiſh, *the* Perſian, *and perhaps the* Arabik, *beſides the* Mogul *Language, in which he wrote his Book. And after all that can be ſaid, every People are beſt able to write their own Hiſtory. Other Nations, be they ever ſo near Neighbours, or ſuperior to them in Politeneſs and Genius, cannot poſſibly be ſo well acquainted with their Affairs as themſelves: And it is obvious from the Miſtakes committed by the* Perſian *Hiſtorians, that for a Hiſtory of the* Uzbeks *one muſt have recourſe to an* Uzbek. The Author's Abilities.

The Original, as the royal Author tells us, ‡ was extracted partly from the Books written on this Subject, and partly from particular Memoirs Hiſtory whence extracted.

* Pag. 374. † See his Preface. ‡ Pag. 68.

moirs of divers *Mogul* Tribes. *The Number of theſe Books he informs us elſewhere* * *were eighteen, of which he only mentions* Khoja Raſhîd *as the Chief. This Author is the ſame whom* de la Croix *in his Hiſtory of* Genghiz Khan, Herbelot *and others, cite under the Name of* Fadl allah. *He is the firſt who wrote a Hiſtory of the* Moguls *and* Tatars *at the Command of* Gazan Khân *before mentioned, from ſeveral Original Memoirs which that Monarch had collected by means of one* Pulâd, *or* Fulâd, *mentioned* p. 30. *who was ſent into* Tatary *for that purpoſe. The firſt Volume, for* Fadl allah's *Work conſiſts of three, is in the* French *King's Library, and has been tranſlated by M.* de la Croix *the Son: And as it is the moſt authentick Account of the Original of the* Tatars *perhaps to be met with, it could be wiſh'd ſome kind Hand would communicate it to the Publick, as well as ſome other Tranſlations of that Gentleman mentioned in the Preface to* Timûr-beg.

Contents of it. Abu'l Ghâzi Khân *has divided his Hiſtory into nine Parts. The two firſt contain the Hiſtory of the* Moguls *and* Tatars, *with an Account of all their Tribes, from* Turk *the firſt Founder of their Nation down to* Zingîz Khân; *the third relates the Life and Actions of that great Conqueror; the fourth, fifth, ſixth, ſeventh and eighth treat of his four Sons and their Succeſſors, in the reſpective Quarters of the Empire into which he divided it among them at his Death; and the ninth contains a particular Hiſtory of the* Khâns *who have reigned over* Khowârazm, *from the Conqueſt of it by* Shâh Bakht Khân *to the Death of the Author* Abu'l Ghâzi Khân, *which happen'd in* 1663. *Throughout his Hiſtory he has been particularly careful to mark all the Revolutions in each State, and give us the Pedigree of the new Family, which on ſuch Occaſions aſcends the Throne; and that is the reaſon, I ſuppoſe, why he entitles it a* Genealogical Hiſtory, *rather than*

Why called Genealogical.

* Pag. 30.

a Hiſtory of Succeſſions, or the Reigns of the Tatar *Monarchs, which ſeems to ſuit it better.*

It is certainly a Satisfaction to know what any Nation have to ſay of themſelves, whether it be authentick or not; and we find by the Account given here that the Original of the Tatars *is fabulous as well as that of other Nations. We have no authentick Proof that* Turk *the common Anceſtor of theſe People was the eldeſt Son of* Japhet, *if there was ever ſuch a Man. The Hiſtory of* Ogûz Khân, *Founder of the firſt Empire of the* Moguls, *is a mere Legend. The Diviſion which his Son makes of the Empire among his forty eight Relations, is poſſibly to account for the different Tribes and Nations into which* Tatary *is divided; and the long Wars and various Succeſs after that between the* Moguls *and* Tatars, *ſeem to be only to diſplay the Power of thoſe two Rival Nations, and fill up the vacant Ages. At laſt the* Tatars *prevail in their Turn, and overthrow the Empire of the* Moguls, *the very Name of whom for four hundred Years is loſt in the Mountain of* Irgana Kon*. *That of the* Tatars *ſeems to be loſt too, for we hear nothing of them during that time any more than of the others. Their melting their way out of the Mountains with ſeventy Bellows, is a whimſical Invention. It is not very probable that the Poſterity of two Perſons only and their Wives, who went into* Irgana Kon, *ſhould become ſo numerous in* 450 *Years, as without the Knowledge of Arms to beat the* Tatars, *a People long inur'd to War at the firſt Onſet, and*

Original of the *Tatars* fabulous.

* In all likelihood this Fiction of the *Moguls* being incloſed in the Mountain of *Irgana Kon*, took its Riſe from one of the like kind, which we find in *Arabik* Authors relating to the People of *Yajûj* and *Majûj*, or *Gog* and *Magog*, whom they ſuppoſe to be incloſed within the Mountain *Cocaia* or *Caucaſus*, at the further end of all the North of *Aſia*, ſo ſteep that there is no aſcending it. See *Geog. Nubienſis*, p. 248, & 267. & *D'Herbelot at* Jagiouge & Magiouge.

totally over-turning them, eſtabliſh their Empire a ſecond time. In ſhort, they cannot carry their Hiſtory farther back than their famous pretended Sally out of Irgana Kon, *ſhould we allow it genuine ſo high up: but it is to be ſuſpected they had only ſome traditional and general Knowledge of their Hiſtory before* Zingîz Khân, *of which* Pulâd *gather'd the ſcatter'd Fragments, as has been already obſerv'd.*

Proved from the Chronology.

This appears ſtill plainer from the Chronology, of which there are only two Periods mentioned in the firſt Part of the Tatar *Hiſtory; the firſt is from the Reign of* Ogûz Khân *to that of* Zingîz Khân, *which is ſaid* to contain the Space of about* 4000 *Years: ſo that reckoning back from the beginning of the Reign of* Zingîz Khân *in the* 13*th Year of his Age, the end of that of* Ogûz Khân *will fall in about the Year* 2824 *before Chriſt, which runs it up* 500 *Years beyond the Flood, and makes him contemporary with* Kainan *or* Methuſelah, *inſtead of* Kayumarras, *firſt King of* Perſia, *who was no Antediluvian, according to the beſt Hiſtorians.*

The ſecond Period of Time is mentioned† on occaſion of the Name of Kayath, *which coming from* Kayan, *who enter'd with* Nagos *into the Mountain of* Irgana Kon, *our Author ſays was loſt for about* 3000 *Years, till revived in the ſix Sons of* Kabul Khân, Zingîz Khân's *Grandfather. By this Reckoning there were not quite* 1000 *Years between* Ogûz Khân *and* Kayan; *and taking away* 450 *for the time of the* Moguls *Abode in* Irgana Kon *till their ſallying forth again and overthrowing the* Tatars *under* Bertizena Khân, *there will remain an Interval of* 2550 *Years from this laſt* Khân *to* Kabûl Khân, *which is too much by at leaſt two thouſand of the Number, conſidering the Hiſtory places but ſeventeen* Khâns *in Succeſſion between them; and allowing each of them thirty Years to his Reign, which is more than*

* Pag. 47. † Pag. 154.

we

we ought by Chronological Rules, the Sum of them all will amount but to 510 *Years; whereas according to our Author's Computation they muſt be allowed* 250 *Years apiece. 'Tis true, the allowing about* 3000 *Years for the Reigns of twenty* Khâns *between* Bertizena *and* Zingîz Khân, *is proportion'd well enough to the* 1000 *allowed for thoſe between* Ogûz Khân *and* Kayan, *which are but ſix; but then where is the Probability, I might ſay Poſſibility, of ſuch long Reigns? beſides, if we may depend upon the Authority of* Ebn Abd-allatîf, *cited by* de la Croix*, *who affirms that* Buzenger, (*by our Author called* Budenſir Mogak, *the* 11*th in Succeſſion from* Bertizena, *and* 9*th in degree before* Zingîz Khan) *lived in the Time of* Abu Moſlem, *and* D'Herbelot † *obſerves they correſponded together, the* Tatar *Chronology muſt be falſe: for* Abu Moſlem, *who was Governor of* Khoraſân, *flouriſhed about the Year of the* Hejrah 132, *or of Chriſt* 749. *at which time he expelled the Family of* Ommiyah, *and raiſed that of* Abbâs *to the* Khalîfat: *ſo that if* Budenſir Mogak *was his Contemporary, he muſt have reigned about* 427 *Years before* Zingîz Chân; *whereas according to the former Calculation his Reign muſt have preceded that Conqueror's* 1350 *Years, and falls in with the time of* Antiochus Epiphanes, *the* 11*th* Syro-Macedonian King, *about* 174 *Years before Chriſt.*

All Nations have mixt Fable with their Hiſtory.

I am obliged to ſhew the Defects of my Author, in order to prevent the Reader's being miſled by a wrong Notion of Things relating to the Tatar *Antiquities: but we are not to condemn the Whole for the Faults of a Part. If a Hiſtory is to be rejected for having Fable mixt with it, what Hiſtory would be read? for all Nations have in the Accounts they give of their Original blended Fiction more or leſs with the Truth; and our own Hiſtories are no freer from this Abuſe than that of the* Tatars.

* Hiſt. Genghiz Khan, *p.* 8. † At *Buzangir.*

tars. *A Nation once become powerful never cares to look back upon its obſcure State, but would fain be thought to have always been conſiderable; and the Hiſtorians zealous for the Glory of their Country, endeavour by the help of Invention to put it upon a level with their Neighbours for Antiquity as well as Power; in which however they are generally ſo unskilful as to leave Marks by which their Forgery is detected. The Hiſtory within this Period ſeems to be framed in oppoſition to the* Perſian, *which is the only Hiſtory we know of, except the* Chineſe, *that mentions the* Tatars, *and which by the way is no more to be depended on for the better part of that Interval, eſpecially in what regards* Tatary, *than the former. It muſt be obſerv'd that theſe two Nations have always been at Enmity together; and the Hiſtorians of either Party reſolving to draw all the Honour to their own ſide, have endeavour'd to raiſe the Glory of one at the Diſadvantage of the other. The* Perſian *Hiſtorians make* Tur, *the Founder of the* Turkiſh *Nation, to be a Son of one of their firſt Monarchs, and repreſent their Kings as often overcome and made tributary by their Heroes. 'Tis true, they admit* Afraſiab, *King of* Turkeſtân, *reigning over* Perſia *by Conqueſt for ſome time; but then the* Perſians *upon his Male Adminiſtration turn him out again: and the continual Run of Advantages which they give their Nation over the* Khakhân, *King of* Tatar, *and the People of* Abtela (*who are the* Khaganos *and* Ephthalites *of the* Greeks) *makes the* Turks *and* Tatars (*for their Hiſtories make no mention of the* Moguls *before* Zingîz Khân) *always appear in a Light much inferior to themſelves thro' the whole Courſe of their Hiſtory.*

Tatars and Perſians Rivals in Hiſtory as well as Arms.

The Turkiſh *or* Tatarian *Hiſtory on the other hand extols the Exploits of their antient Kings in its turn; and having been framed much later than*

that

that of its Neighbours, gives the Turks *thoſe Advantages over the* Perſians, *which the* Perſian *Hiſtorians gave their Nation over the* Turks. *The Inventors of theſe Hiſtories, who lived in the flouriſhing Times of the* Moguls *Empire, diſdaining to allow the* Perſians, *who were then under their Dominion, ever to have held their Anceſtors in ſubjection, have taken care not to inſert any thing that may look that way. On the contrary,* Ogûz Khân, *Grandſon of* Mogul Khân, *is made to over-run* Irân *or* Perſia *at large after the Death of* Kayumarras; *and* Afraſiab, *whom the* Perſians *acknowledge as a great Hero and Conqueror of* Perſia, *is mentioned only as a King of a dependant or inferior Monarchy, and not in the Line of* Mogul *or* Tatarian *Emperors.*

There is a certain Period in the Hiſtory of all Nations, which ſeparates the Spurious from the Genuine, and beyond which one cannot be ſure of the Truth. The Reign of Zingîz Khân *ſtands in the ſame Point in the Hiſtory of the* Tatars, *as* Romulus *does in the* Roman, *and* Mohammed *in the* Arabian *Hiſtory. But however uncertain or obſcure the* Tatar *Hiſtory may be before the Appearance of that Conqueror, we may depend upon what has been written of their Affairs ſince his Time, as being authorized by faithful Records; for that warlike People having made themſelves famous throughout the Eaſt by the Conqueſt of the moſt flouriſhing Kingdoms of it, their Actions naturally became the Object of Hiſtory in thoſe Countries for more than two whole Ages, that they held the Empire over them, under the Deſcendants of thoſe two mighty Conquerors,* Zingîz Khân *and* Timûr Beg. *Tatar* Hiſtory ſince *Zingiz Khân* authentick.

*It muſt be confeſs'd our Author is too conciſe throughout, except in his ſecond and ninth Books. He intended * to have written more fully of the Empire and ſeveral Branches of the* Moguls; *but being* The Author's Defects.

* Pag. 164.

ing ſeized with a violent Fit of Sickneſs, he was obliged to abridge his Work that he might not leave it imperfect at his Death, which yet overtook him * *before he could finiſh it. We alſo find in this Author a Knowledge of foreign Countries very limited. What an abſurd Deſcription does he give of* Alexander's *Wall, and of the Nation of* Yadſutz Madzuth †, *which is a Corruption of the* Arabic Yajûj *and* Majûj, *or* Gog *and* Magog? *But making an Allowance for a Fault which he has in common with the* Arabians, Greeks *and* Romans *themſelves, one would be apt to think no part of the* Tatar *Affairs ſhould be unknown to a* Tatar *Prince who profeſſes to write the Hiſtory of them; and yet it is plain he was but little acquainted with the* Khâns, *the immediate Succeſſors of* Zingîz Khân *in the Empire of the* Moguls, *who reigned in the Eaſtern* Tatary, *breaking off with* Coplai Khân *the fourth Emperor. He breaks off as abruptly with* Amîr Timûr, *without informing us who were his Succeſſors in* Ma wara'l nahr, *till it was conquer'd by* Shâh Bakht Soltân *above fourſcore Years after. Of all the* Khâns *who had reigned in* Kaſhgar *of the Race of* Zingîz Khân, *he mentions none but* Togalak Tîmur Khân, *and his Son* Khiſſer Khodſa, *or* Keſra Khoja Khân, *who ſucceeded* Amîr Timûr: *But as for thoſe who came after* Keſra Khoja Khân, *he only obſerves that they were of his Poſterity; nay he confeſſes himſelf ignorant of the Succeſſors of* Hâji Geray Khân *of* Kipjak (*who died about* 1475) *further than that the* Khâns *of* Krîm *are ſprung from one of his Sons; tho the* Khâns *of* Khowârazm *and* Great Bukharia *are collateral Branches of the ſame Family, being all deſcended from* Zuzi Khân, *Son of* Zingîz Chân.

Unacquainted with the ſeveral Parts of the *Tatar* Hiſtory,

And of that of his Anceſtors in *Kipjak.*

Defective in the Hiſtory of *Khowârazm.*

One might alſo have expected this Author would have carry'd back the Hiſtory of his Country into

* Pag. 358. † Pag. 43.

its

its flouriſhing Times, and given an Account of the Empire of the Khowarazmians *which continued for about* 138 *Years under ſeven, ſome make nine Monarchs, and was not inferior to that of the* Moguls *for Extent, when* Zingîz Khân *invaded* Soltân Mohammed. *They were the Inhabitants of this Country (mentioned in the Writers of the holy War by the Name of* Khoroſmins, *but unknown to them and to almoſt all the Hiſtorians ſince as to the Parts from whence they came) who driven out by the* Moguls, *fled towards* Syria, *and gave the Chriſtians in the Holy Land that fatal Blow about* 1242, *which they never could recover afterwards.*

Several other Succeſſions omitted.

There is alſo in this Hiſtory an Omiſſion of ſeveral other Succeſſions, particularly thoſe of Turkeſtân, *the* Kâlmaks, *or* Kalmûks, *and the* Mungals. *'Tis to be obſerv'd alſo, that in ſeveral of his Succeſſions he puts in but one* Khân, *where* de la Croix *mentions two or three, as in that of* Kipjak, *(tho I don't charge this as an Error on him) and the Dates of their Reigns are very rarely added. But theſe Defects are recompenſed by a Recital of a great many Particulars which are to be met with no where elſe: for beſides a circumſtantial Hiſtory of the* Uzbeks, *his Anceſtors, who have reigned over* Khowârazm *ſince* Shâh Bakht Soltân *conquer'd it, which is the Subject of his ninth Book, and ſeems to have been the Author's chief Deſign, we have intermixt with it in a good meaſure that of* Ma-wara'lnahr *alſo, on occaſion of the almoſt continual Wars between thoſe two neighbouring States; by means of which we are able not only to rectify ſeveral Miſtakes in* Teixeira's *and* de la Croix's *Account of the* Uzbek Khâns *who have reigned in that Country, taken from the* Perſian *Hiſtorians, but to bring them down to the Time of our Author. To this may be added ſeveral Particulars occaſionally mentioned relating to the Form of Govern-*

The Author exact in his Hiſtory of the *Uzbek Khâns.*

Government, Manner of Fighting, and other Cuſtoms among the Tatars: *In ſhort, the Hiſtory of* Aſia *receives ſeveral Improvements from this Abridgment.*

And in his Account of the *Turkiſh* Tribes. *But there are two Things for which this Author is chiefly valuable. The firſt is his Deſcription of the ſeveral* Turkiſh *and* Mogul *Tribes, and the Countries they did originally or at preſent do inhabit, which takes up the beſt part of the ſecond Book; not to mention his Account of the* Turkman *Tribes in the ninth. Tho 'tis probable this Part is not ſo complete as it would have been had the Author's Health permitted him to have written more fully on thoſe Matters as he deſigned; yet it is much more perfect and exact than the ſcatter'd and confuſed Account we find of ſome, not all of them, in M.* de la Croix's *Hiſtory of* Genghiz Khân, *and may ſerve well enough till we can get a complete Tranſlation of* Fadl allah's *Hiſtory before mentioned, which is the firſt and beſt that was ever wrote of the* Tatar *Nations in any other Language but their own.*

Gives Light into the Geography of *Grand Tatary.* *The ſecond thing which makes this Author valuable, is the conſiderable Light he gives us into the Geography of* Tatary, *and particularly* Khowârazm, *which before we were almoſt intire Strangers to. There is not a Town nor ſcarce any Place of note in that Country, but what is mentioned upon occaſion of ſome warlike Action or other, or of the frequent Partitions that have been made of them. We knew not before this Author diſcover'd it to us, that the River* Amu *divides it ſelf into two Branches in the Country of* Khowârazm; *and that one of them having quitted its antient Courſe to the* Caſpian *Sea, turns northward, and throws it ſelf into the Lake of* Arall *in the ſame Country. I ſhall only mention further, that by the Notices in this Author we find that* Mankiſhlak, *which is the only*

only Port of Khowârazm, *and the uſual Ferry to and from the Province of* Shîrwân *in* Perſia, *ought to be placed at the Mouth of the ſouthern Branch of the River* Amu, *in the moſt South Eaſtern Corner of the* Caſpian; *whereas Geographers hitherto miſled, I ſuppoſe, by the falſe or corrupted Journal of* Anthony Jenkinſon, *have placed it on a large Bay in the North Eaſt Part of the ſame Sea and Country of* Turkeſtân: *which ſingle Error has been the Occaſion of introducing ſeveral others into the Maps of thoſe Countries; as may be ſeen by* de Liſle's *late Map of* Perſia.

Is impartial in his Hiſtory.

The French *Editor draws an Argument for the Impartiality of our Author, from the Juſtice he has done to* Amîr Timûr *the great Enemy to the Family of* Zingîz Khân; *but beſides, for the reaſon offer'd upon the Place,* p. 174. *I think it appears better from the Account which is given of* Abu'l-ghâzi Khân *in the* 11*th and* 12*th Chapters of the ninth Part, where mention is made of ſome Actions which ſeem to accuſe him of Treachery and Cruelty, if not of Breach of Faith; but the Misfortune is, that we have not any Hiſtory at preſent, I mean of the* Uzbeks, *either of* Khowârazm *or* Great Bucharia *to compare with it: and as for the Accounts of Travellers, their diſagreeing with that given by* Abu'l Ghâzi Khân *can never be urged againſt his Veracity; ſince in the Opinion of all judicious Perſons they muſt give way to the Authority of one who writes the Hiſtory of his own Country Affairs; in conſequence of which Maxim the* French *Editor,* p. 309. *has juſtly decided againſt* Olearius, *tho one of the moſt exact Travellers, in favour of* Abu'l-ghâzi Khân's *Hiſtory. I know of but two Travellers, and both* Engliſhmen, *that have been in* Khowârazm *ſince the* Uzbeks *became Maſters of it, and their Accounts agree very well with our Author. The firſt is* Anthony Jenkinſon *before mentioned,*

mentioned, who travell'd thro' the Country in his way to Boghar, *or* Bokhara, *in* 1557, *in the time of* Hajim, *or* Azim Chan, *as he calls him, of which we have taken notice,* p. 270. *The other is the Author of the curious* Deſcription of the Countrys which border upon the Euxine and Caſpian Seas, *printed at the end of* Tavernier's *Travels, under the fictitious Name of* Aſtrachan. *He obſerves,* p. 109. "*That in the Year* 1620 *there* "*were great Wars in* Yurgeach, *or* Jurgench "[Urgens] *between the* Khân *and his Son the* "*Prince of* Yurgeach; *who, overthrowing his* "*Father in Battle, put out both his Eyes, and* "*cauſed himſelf to be crowned King, ordering his* "*younger Brother to be ſtrangled: But the Lords* "*of his own Party would not ſuffer it, but ſent* "*the Child to the Emperor of* Moſcovy." *Which is conformable with what is related,* p. 325. *about the Death of* Arap Mohammed Khân, *and the Attempt made againſt the Life of the young* Augan Soltân, *by his unnatural and rebellious Brother* Ilbars Soltân.

Etymology of *Kalpak* and *Kalmûk.*

And by the way, I cannot help mentioning another Paſſage of this laſt Author, p. 108. *he tells us,* "*That the* Calmuks *are ſo called by* "*the other* Tatars, *becauſe they wear a kind of* "*Cap or Hats open before and behind, with broad* "*Brims on each ſide; which Caps, he ſays, are cal-* "*led by the* Moſcovites Coulpaks:" *in which, if it be right, we ſee the Etymology both of the* Kalmûks, *or* Kâlmaks, *and* Kara Kalpaks, *as he tells us* Kaſachy Horda *ſignifies a wild People. But why then ſhould the* Ruſſians *call ſome* Kalpaks *and others* Kalmûks, *and not rather all by the ſame Name?* Meninski *indeed confirms the Obſervation with regard to the firſt Term, and* tells us,*

* Theſaur. Linguar. Orient.

Kalpak, Kalpâk, *or* Kâlpak, *is a Word both with the* Poles *and* Tatars, *ſignifying a furr'd Cap; but I find nothing in that copious Author tending to give any Light into the other Name, only that there is ſuch a Word as* Kâlmak, *which ſignifies to remain, abide, and fall away, or to decay: ſo that we ſtand in need of further Information before we can determine on this Point; unleſs that of* * Mathias a Micow *and* Herberſtein † *ſhould happen to be right, who ſay they are called* Kalmuks, *becauſe they are the only Nation among the* Tatars *who let their Hair grow; which yet is no more than a Lock* ** *on the Crown of their Heads: for as to its being compounded of an* Arabic *and a* Tatar *Word,* ‖ *both ſignifying the ſame thing, intimating their being good Archers, according to the Explanation of a* Kalmûk *to the Gentleman I had it from, who asked him the Etymology of it; it ſeems to be too forced and far-fetch'd to be genuine, and to be deviſed in order to make the beſt of a Nickname, which they find is likely to ſtick by them, in ſpight of all their Endeavours to get rid of it.*

The Publick obliged for this Hiſtory to the Swediſh Officers.

The Publick is obliged for this Hiſtory to the Swediſh *Officers remaining Priſoners in* Siberia; *for ſome of thoſe Gentlemen, who were Men of Learning, having bought the* Tatar *Manuſcript of a* Bukhar *Merchant who brought it to* Tobolſkoy, *cauſed it to be tranſlated at their own Expenſe into the* Ruſſian *Tongue, and tranſlated it afterwards themſelves into divers Languages. But all thoſe different Tranſlations having been full of Faults, as well thro' the Ignorance of the firſt, as Careleſneſs of the latter Tranſlators, the* French *Editor was obliged to employ above a Year to put this Hiſtory in a Condition to be ſerviceable to the Publick;*

The Publick obliged for this Hiſtory to the Swedes *diſh* Priſoners in *Siberia.*

* De Sarmatia Aſiana, cap. 7.

† Rer. Moſcov. Comment. in Articulo de Tartaris, apud finem. ** Pag. 534. ‖ *Kalm*, in *Arabic*, and *Ok* in *Tatarian*, as well as *Turkiſh*, ſignifies an Arrow.

nor could he ever have been able, he tells us in his Preface, to have brought it about, if he had not had extraordinary Helps, notwithſtanding he procur'd the Copy he made uſe of from the Hands of one of the very Gentlemen who had got it tranſlated at their Expenſe.

Tranſlated into ſeveral Languages.

To make this Work ſtill more ſerviceable, he hath added Remarks of his own for the Inſtruction of the Reader in what regards the People, Places, and other Particulars mention'd by the Author, which needed Explanation. Theſe Remarks, out of which, with ſome few Additions, the ſecond Volume of this Tranſlation is compoſed, are exceeding curious; and the Editor has good reaſon to value himſelf on having given the firſt true, and diſtinct Notions of the preſent State of that vaſt Continent, and of the different Nations which inhabit it. 'Tis true, in what relates to other Parts of Aſia, he has fallen into ſome Miſtakes, which we have taken notice of in their proper Places; but that ought not to leſſen the Reader's Opinion of the reſt, in which he has diſcover'd a great deal of Judgment and very extenſive Knowledge.

Improvements of the *French* Edition.

Who the Editor is, it would not be Manners to diſcover, ſince he has concealed his Name: the Reader may perceive in general, by his writing the Proper Names in the Tranſlation according to the German Orthography, that he is of that Nation, tho in his Notes he has follow'd the French. He has left us as much in the dark, as to the Funds from whence he drew his Remarks concerning the North of Aſia and Ruſſia; all he diſcovers of the Matter is, that he gather'd them from authentick Memoirs, and the uniform Report of ſeveral Perſons of Merit who were upon the Places themſelves. Tho I agree with that Gentleman, that the Remarks carry along with them ſufficient Evidence of their Veracity; yet, I muſt own, I think he

ſhould

ſhould have cited his written Authority at leaſt for them: Nay, 'tis to be hoped he will print the Originals, ſince he *ſeems to think the Publick has a Demand on* M. de la Croix *for his Tranſlation of* Fadl allah. *There are ſeveral Particulars, eſpecially relating to* Khowârazm, *which excite our Curioſity for them; and when, in the Remarks, one finds the Situation of the Provinces of that Country, mentioned in the Hiſtory, aſcertained, he naturally wiſhes for the Memoirs they were taken from, as Collections from whence he might expect more full Satisfaction in his Enquiries.*

Collectors ought always to print their Authorities.

To illuſtrate his Obſervations the better, the Editor has prefix'd two Maps to the Tatar *Hiſtory: The firſt ſhews the State of* Tatary *in the Time of* Zingîz Khân, *with the Situations of the ſeveral Tribes of the* Turkiſh *Nation; the other is a Repreſentation of it as it is at preſent; both of them are curious in their Kind, and have ſeveral Improvements former Maps want.* Nova Zembla *is found to be an Iſland; there is an Addition, or if you will, a Separation from the Continent of the whole Peninſula of* Kamchatka, *probably the greateſt in the World; the Country of* Khowârazm *undergoes a thorow Reformation;* Turkeſtân *has got into its right Place; in ſhort, the whole puts on a new Face, and is repreſented in a Form very different from what it bears in other Maps. 'Tis true, if we come to a ſtrict Examination, it will be found defective in the Situations of Towns and other Particulars: but as the Editor's Deſign by thoſe Maps ſeems to have been chiefly to ſhew the general Diviſions of that large Continent, and the Diſcoveries which have been made there by the late glorious* Tſar, *we have let them paſs as they were, only correcting two or three of the moſt ob-*

Account of the Maps.

* Pag. 79.

vious Miſtakes; ſuch as the Situation of Khânbâlik, *or* Peking, *that of* Abaſcum Caſira, *or* Aboſkûn Jezîra, *the Country of* Turân, *and a few others. However, it may be proper to caution the Reader, that the Latitudes and Longitudes of Places which are taken from them are not to be depended on; for which reaſon, I have left out ſome of them in the Second Volume, and wiſh I had omitted them all, for fear of miſleading our Geographers, who take every thing of that kind, which they meet with in Authors, for actual Obſervations.*

Account of this Tranſlation.

My Deſign indeed once was, to have drawn new Maps, as well as ſupply'd the defective Parts of the Tatar *Hiſtory out of other Authors the beſt I could, and to have made ſeveral conſiderable Additions to the* French *Editor's Obſervations; eſpecially, when upon bringing thoſe together which relate to Geography, and compoſe the Second Volume, I found they fell very ſhort of making complete Deſcriptions of the Countries they related to: but the Copy having been detained too long by the Bookſellers, before they return'd it me, I was ſo far from being able to execute my Deſign, that I was forced to let ſome Overſights of the* French *Editor paſs untouch'd in the Parts which do not relate to* Tatary, *with regard to which that Gentleman's Remarks are generally exact and curious. However, as the few* NOTES *I have thrown in have help'd to ſwell the Book beyond the expected Bounds, I am the leſs concerned for not having added what I intended; and the rather, ſince I am preparing a Collection of Travels and Obſervations into* Tatary, *from the beſt Authors extant in any Language, according to the Method I have laid down in the* Appendix to the Conſtruction of Maps and Globes.

'Tis

'Tis owing to the ſame Cauſe, namely, the Bulk of the Book, that the Bookſellers have thought themſelves obliged not to print the complete INDEXES, *which I have made, with a great deal of Trouble, of all the Names of Perſons, Places, and Things in both Volumes. This Addition would have been of great Advantage to the Work, and will be particularly miſs'd by the Curious, who know how to ſet a juſt Value upon exact* INDEXES, *which are ſo neceſſary, eſpecially in Books of this Nature, always crowded with Names and Terms, that I think none ſhould be ſuffer'd to be publiſh'd without them. A good* INDEX *is ſometimes the moſt valuable Part of a Book, and a great Help to quicken the Progreſs in Study, as it ſaves the Pains often of reading over a whole Volume, to find a ſingle Paſſage or Circumſtance, by offering it at one View.* Exact Indexes great Advantages to Books.

Before I conclude, 'tis neceſſary to give ſome Directions, with regard to the Orthography of Proper Names and Places; which being written after the German *Pronunciation, 'tis to be obſerv'd that* J *conſonant is always to be pronounced like our* y, *and* ſch *as* ſh, *into which I have generally converted it, as being a harſh Character: but there is not the ſame Uniformity obſerv'd with regard to ſome other Letters. I have not been always able to diſcover where the* Ch *has the Force of* Kh, *and where only of an* H, *in both which Qualities 'tis uſed by the* Germans; *except in the Words* Achmet, Machmut, (*for* Ahmed *and* Mahmûd) *and ſuch others as are* Arabic, *or* Perſian: *To expreſs our* Ch, *ſometimes* Tſch, *at other times* Tzch *is uſed. Thus* Caſatſchia *or* Caſatſhia *is to be read* Caſachia, *and* Kamtzchatka, Kamchatka. Dſ *ſometies ſtands for* Dh, *as in* Dſilhotza (*for* Dhu'lhajjah) *but generally for our* Directions about the Orthography of Proper Names.

g *before* e *and* i, *or rather for* J *conſonant, which is alſo expreſs'd ſometimes by* Dz, *as in* Dzanibek; *ſometimes by* Tz, *as in* Dſilhotza *aforeſaid, and* Tzemedi *for* Jomada; *and if* th *ever ſtands for it, we ſhall then find all the four different Characters together in the Word* Jadſutz Madzuth, *which is* Yajuj Majuj *diſguiſed by the* Kakography. *I have alſo a ſtrong Suſpicion that the* Z *is often put to expreſs the ſame Letter, and that inſtead of* Zingîz *and* Zuzi, *it ſhould be* Jingîz *and* juji *as the* Turks *write and pronounce it: The* Z *alſo in other Words ſeems to ſtand for* Ch, *as in* Zupani, *which the* Turks *and* Perſians *write* Chubani.

Difficulty of ſettling it.

In this and many other Caſes, with regard to ſettling the Orthography, eſpecially of the Tatar *Names, the original* Mogul *Manuſcript would have been of great Uſe, conſidering the Book comes to us at a third or fourth hand by the* French *Tranſlation: and as poſſibly the* Ruſſian *Copy might have ſwerved from the Original, and the* German *from the* Ruſſian; *ſo the* French *may have vary'd from them all. At leaſt, 'tis eaſy to obſerve, that ſeveral of the* Arabic *and* Perſian *Names are written wrong; and I am ſenſible the Tranſlators ſhould have been a little acquainted with the* Arabic, *in order to have written them true, becauſe the Scantineſs of the* Oighurian, *or if you will the* Vigurian *Alphabet, which conſiſts only of fourteen Letters, obliges the* Moguls, *who uſe them, to expreſs ſeveral of the* Arabic *Letters by one and the ſame Character.* Arabſhah *in his Life of* Timûr Beg **particularly obſerves,* "*That they expreſs the Gutturals, and* "*all other Letters of the ſame Organ, by the* "*ſame Character, as the* Ba *and* Fa:" [*to which*

Scantineſs of the *Oighurian* Alphabet.

* Pag. 437. printed Copy in *Arabic*;

"*we*

we may add the P *and* V *which the* Arabic *wants*] " *the* Dal *and two* Ta's, *the* Za, " Sad *and* Sîn", *if not the* Shîn, *which is joined to them in a* Chineſe Tatar Alphabet *lately communicated to me, which goes further yet, and makes one Character ſerve for the* K, Q, G *and* C: *and this may be the reaſon why we find* Ahmet *and* Pulat, *for* Ahmed *and* Fulâd, *or rather* Fulâdh; Abu'l gaſi *for* Abu'l gazi, *or rather* Abu'l ghâzi, *and the like. In ſhort, betwixt the Deficiency of the* Mogul *Alphabet and the Uncertainty of the Orthography of the* Tatar *Hiſtory as it comes to us, one cannot be ſure that even the Name of* Zingis Khan *is written as it ſhould be; at leaſt in* Meninſki's *Lexicon, before-mention'd, 'tis written* Jengîz Khan; *and if, as the* French *Editor affirms,* p. 79. Marco-Polo *writes that Name exactly like our Author, it ſhould be* Chingis Khân.

Reaſons for letting the Proper Names ſtand as in the *French* Copy.

This Difficulty of coming at the Orthography of the Tatar Names, *for want of the original Manuſcript, or a* Tatar *Dictionary, for we would not depend upon the* Turkiſh, *joined to the Variety which is found among Authors, not only of different Nations, but of the ſame Country in writing the* Arabic *and* Perſian *Names, made me reſolve to tranſcribe them all as I found them in the* French *Copy, for fear of adding to the Number of Faults, in all likelihood already crept into former Verſions for the Reaſons aforeſaid, and to reduce them to the* Engliſh *Orthography the beſt I could in the* Margin *and* Indexes.

Orthographick Alterations made by the Tranſlator.

But with regard to the Matter contain'd in the Second Volume, *I have not always been ſo ſcrupulous; and eſpecially in ſuch Remarks as I have inſerted of my own, have laid my ſelf under leſs Reſtraint ſtill as to the Orthography; except-*

ing that I have follow'd our Orientaliſts in the Uſe of ſome Letters, the Inconveniencies of which mentioned hereafter I did not ſee time enough to reform. I have alſo begun to break thro' that barbarous Cuſtom of retaining corrupt Names, after we are come to the Knowledge of the true; and, amongſt the reſt, have introduced that of Mohammed, *inſtead of* Mahomet; *which I am ſurprized Dean* Prideaux, *who complains of this Abuſe, would not venture to do, tho writing the Life of that pretended Prophet. But why ſhould not we have the true Orthography of Names in* Engliſh, *as well as* Latin *Tranſlations? I cannot believe we are ſo loth to be ſet right, as the Arguments uſed by ſome for retaining ſuch Corruptions would infer: but be that as it will, I ſhall chooſe rather to be deemed pedantick, than help to promote an Abuſe which has involved the Hiſtory of all Ages in ſo great Obſcurity. It is evident, that moſt of the Difficulties in Chronology, which after all the Labour ſpent about them by the Learned muſt ſtill remain unſettled, are owing not ſo much to the want of Dates, as the Corruption of Names. How many Volumes have been written to prove the ſame Perſon to be two, and two different Perſons to be the ſame? the Ignorance of Authors, or Careleſsneſs of Copiſts having made Names alike which had no Reſemblance, and disfigured the ſame Name ſo ſtrangely, that it was not to be known in two different Authors; nay, nor in two different Places of the ſame Author; of which Abuſe, modern Hiſtories, as well as antient, furniſh us with numerous Inſtances.*

Confuſion in Hiſtory owing to the Corruption of Names.

Corruption of writing Names after the Pronunciation.

Purſuant to the ſame Maxim, I have alſo alter'd another Practice of writing Words according to the Pronunciation, and that is the Reaſon you find Gelal al din *for* Gelal addin;

Ala 'ldin *for* Ala'ddin, *as they are generally written by Tranſlators; becauſe the* l *in the Particle* al, *is by the* Arabs *in the Pronunciation before certain Letters which they call* Solar *chang'd into them. And this Practice is carry'd to an Exceſs by the* French, *tho perhaps they wou'd take it ill if Foreigners ſhould write their Language as it is ſpoken; and know that however the* Arabs *may pronounce ſuch Words, yet they write them otherwiſe: and their Example, I think, ought to be the Rule in this Caſe. Indeed with regard to cutting off the latter* a, *when two meet, as in* Ala 'ldin, *I have not been ſo ſcrupulous, becauſe the meaning of it is very well underſtood by every body.*

Reaſons for rejecting the Name Tartars.

As to the Word Tatar, *I hope there needs no Apology for uſing it, ſince we have the Sanction of the Author for it, which we could not without the greateſt Injuſtice, as well as Abſurdity, but ſubmit to; beſides, the Name* Tartar *is an Error, which according to the aforeſaid Maxim we ſhould have been obliged to reform; for it has been long ago obſerved by the Authors and Travellers who have wrote with any Judgment about the Affairs of the* Levant; *and our Orientaliſts, ſuch as* Golius, Pocock, Hyde, &c. *have rejected it in their Writings.* Avril, *who was ſent by the late* French *King to diſcover a Road thro' thoſe Countries which go under the Name of* Tatary, *ſays,* "He "knows not why we call them Tartars; "ſeeing "in Poland, Moſcovy, *and even* Tartary *it* "ſelf, *they call them only* Tatars." *And yet, what is ſtrange, he helps to carry on the Abuſe himſelf by retaining the erroneous Word. The* French *Editor has done the like, having in compliance to Cuſtom, all along in his Remarks, written* Tartars, *contrary to the Authority of his* Tatar *Author, tho he follows him in writing the Name of* Zingiz Khân *in oppoſition to almoſt all other Hiſtorians.*

But

But ſeeing no reaſon why his Authority ſhould not be as good in one Caſe as the other, I have in my Tranſlation thought fit to make the Notes in that reſpect agree with the Text.

Rules for tranſlating eſpecially from the Oriental Languages.

To remedy theſe Evils for the future, let us thruſt out Corruptions as faſt as we find them, and not ſuffer Cuſtom to tyrannize over Truth and Reaſon; it has done too much Miſchief to Learning already, and 'tis better to put a Stop to it late than never. In the next place, I would recommend to Tranſlators, with regard particularly to Proper Names, to conſider when they ſhould be only tranſcribed, and when they ſhould be transferr'd into other Characters: For inſtance, in tranſlating from the Originals (I am to be underſtood of Oriental) the Orthography ſhould be ſtrictly adhered to, that is, the Names are to be written according to the Force of the Letters, in the Characters, of the Language of the Country for whoſe Uſe the Tranſlation is deſign'd, correſpondent thereto. And as this is uſually the Method in tranſlating from the Oriental Tongues, (tho ſometimes Tranſlators by a ſtrange Liberty inſert the antient or the corrupted Names inſtead of thoſe given by the Author) it ſhews that in tranſlating from Tranſlations the Words are to be written according to their Pronunciation. Thus the Title of the preſent Kings of Perſia, *which a* Frenchman *writes* Cha, *a* Dutchman, Sja, *a* German, Schah, *an* Italian, Scia, *and a* Portugal, Xa, *muſt be written by an* Engliſh *Tranſlator* Shâh; *otherwiſe, in a Collection from different Languages, there would be no knowing the ſame Name under ſo many Diſguiſes. Indeed that is not a conſtant Rule, for Foreigners are not always uniform in writing Proper Names: The* French *for inſtance, for the* jim, *ſometimes uſe* g, *and ſometimes* dg; *the* Germans, ds, dsj, *and* dz: *For the* Waw *the*

Great difference in writing the ſame Word, occaſioned by the Difference of Alphabets.

firſt

firſt uſe ſometimes ou, *other times* v; *and the latter, for the* Perſian *and* Turkiſh *Chîm (which is our* Ch*) put* Tsj *and* Tſch; *ſo that in order to be ſure, one ſhould have recourſe to the Original. Nor are our Orientaliſts agreed better among themſelves about the Force of ſome Letters, particularly with regard to the* jîm, *ſome uſe* g *for it, others* J *conſonant, ſome both one and the other, according to the Vowels that follow; and a third ſort prepoſterouſly join both Letters together to expreſs a Sound, by a Character in it ſelf inexpreſſible in our Language, which admits of no ſuch unnatural Combination. Not to mention their putting the* C *ſometimes for* K, *and generally* ph *for the* f; *they do further hurt yet, by often leaving out the* w, *(without which there is no writing Oriental Names) and ſubſtituting* Ch *for the* Arabic Kha; *ſo that to expreſs the* Perſian *and* Turkiſh Chîm, *they are obliged to fetch in the* tch; *which, tho found in ſome few* Engliſh *Words, is not properly a Character, nor ever uſed but by our Orientaliſts on this Occaſion.*

Excellency of the *Engliſh* Alphabet.

It may ſeem ſtrange that our Authors ſhould be reduced to ſuch Shifts, when we have an Alphabet ſo capable of furniſhing Letters for all the diſtinct Sounds in the three before-mention'd Oriental Languages. What can better ſuit the Arabic Kha, *than* Kh, *or the* Perſian *and* Turkiſh Chîm, *than our* Ch? *Does any thing expreſs the* jîm *ſo exactly as* J *conſonant, which has the ſame Sound before* a, o *or* u, *as before* e *and* i? *and therefore is more properly uſed for it than the ſoft* g, *which I have mark'd with a' to diſtinguiſh it from the hard* g, *which often happens before* e *and* i, *as in* Zingis *and* Sagil, *and which ought to be reſerv'd for the hard* g *uſed by the* Perſians *and* Turks, *which the* Arabs *want, the* Ghayn *being a different Letter.*

And

Has the Advantage of the *European*,

And by the way, I cannot but take notice of the Excellency of the Engliſh *Alphabet, which expreſſes all the Tones either with ſingle Letters, or at moſt by adding the Aſpiration, while other Nations are obliged both to borrow from us, or one another, and to employ two or three, and ſometimes four Letters to expreſs one Sound, as appears among others from the Inſtances already mentioned.*

And even of the Oriental Tongues.

Nay, what is more, we ſeem to have the Advantage of the Oriental Tongues themſelves in an extenſive Alphabet; for beſides the hard G, *the* P *and* V *Conſonant, which the* Arabs *particularly want, we have the* Q *and the* X, *which both the* Turks *and* Perſians *want as well as they, to help us out in other eaſtern Languages. 'Tis true, we have not the Gutturals, nor ſo many Letters to expreſs the Diviſions of the ſame Tone; but that Defect is not ſo much, when it is conſider'd with regard to the firſt, that we have the Characters with the fundamental Sounds annex'd, tho not the guttural Form; as the* Gh *in* Ghoſt, *or* Gherkin, *and the hard* Ch (*which is equivalent to* Kh) *in* Chriſt, Chronicle, *and all Derivatives from the* Greek: *and as to the latter, thoſe Diviſions of the Tone in* T, D, Dh, S, K, H *and* Z, *which are expreſs'd in thoſe Languages by different Characters, are ſo minute and nice, that perhaps none but thoſe who ſpeak them naturally are able to diſtinguiſh the Difference. In ſhort, the only Letter we ſeem to want, is the* Perſian Zhay, *equivalent to the* French j, *in* J'ai, *I have; which yet may be very exactly expreſs'd by* Zh.

An Alphabet fixt to the Oriental Languages greatly wanted.

It is abſolutely neceſſary therefore that an Alphabet ſhould be fix'd by our Orientaliſts for the Oriental Tongues, and conſtantly made uſe of whether they write in Engliſh *or* Latin, *without tying themſelves down to the Letters of the Language they write in, which has been the chief Occaſion*

of

of the before-mention'd Innovations. 'Tis to be wiſh'd alſo, that they would not add Latin *Terminations to Oriental Words, than which nothing can be more incongruous; but rather, if there was a Neceſſity for it, to make uſe of the* Greek *Articles to diſtinguiſh the Caſes, as Dr.* Hyde, *and others, ſenſible of the Inconveniencies ariſing from that Corruption, have commonly done.*

I could go farther yet upon this Subject; but becauſe it may appear ſomewhat odd to preſcribe Rules to others, which for the Reaſons aforeſaid, I have not exactly follow'd my ſelf, I ſhall reſt ſatisfy'd with giving the Hint at preſent, reſerving the reſt to another Occaſion.

I ſhall only add, that I have taken care to adjuſt the Year of the Chriſtian Æra *in the* Margin, *which does not always exactly correſpond with the* Mohammedan, *in the* French *Edition, and that the Matters thrown in by me are included between two Crotchets; hoping the Reader will paſs a favourable Cenſure upon the Imperfections both of* Them *and the* Tranſlation, *which I am ſenſible ſtand in great need of a particular Apology, if I durſt venture to tire his Patience any further.*

London, Auguſt the 1ſt. 1729.

THE

THE

AUTHOR's PREFACE.

THERE is one only God, and before him none was, as after him none ſhall be. He hath made ſeven Heavens, ſeven Earths, and eighteen Thouſand Creations. 'Tis by him that *Mohammed*, the Friend of God, has been ſent in quality of his Prophet to all Mankind in general; 'tis under his Influence that I *Abu'l-ghazi Bahâder Khân* have begun to write this Book. My Father *Arap Mahamet Khân* deſcended in a right Line from *Zingiz Khân*, and was before me ſovereign Prince of the Country of *Kharazm*. I ſhall treat in this Book of the Houſe of *Zingiz Khân*, and of his Original; of the Places where he eſtabliſh'd himſelf; of the Kingdoms and Provinces which he conquer'd, and what became of him at laſt.

'Tis

'Tis true that before me ſeveral *Turkiſh* and *Perſian* Authors have written upon this Subject, and I my ſelf have eighteen different Books of thoſe Authors in my Hands, ſome of which are tolerably well wrote; but as I perceive thoſe Books ſtand much in need of Correction in many Places, and in others of large Supplies, I judged there was a Neceſſity for having a more exact Hiſtory. And foraſmuch as our Countries are very deſtitute of learned Writers, I ſaw my ſelf obliged to undertake this Work. But notwithſtanding there may not be found any *Khân* before me who was willing to take ſo much Trouble upon himſelf, the Reader will do me the Juſtice to be perſuaded that it is not out of a Principle of Vanity that I have commenced Author, but that 'tis pure Neceſſity which has engaged me to meddle in this Affair. If I was diſpoſed to glory in any thing, it ſhould be only in that Conduct and Wiſdom which I poſſeſs as a Gift from God, and not of my ſelf; for on the one hand I underſtand Military Affairs as well as any Prince in the World, knowing how to make War both with a few Troops and with numerous Armies, and to diſpoſe to advantage as well my Horſe as my Foot. On the other hand, I have a peculiar Talent for writing Books in all ſorts of Languages, and I know not whether the Perſon is eaſily to be found,

of

of more Ability than my ſelf in that kind of Literature, unleſs it may be in the Cities of *Perſia* and the *Indies*: but in all the neighbouring Provinces, of which I have any Knowledge, I dare flatter my ſelf there is no one who exceeds me, whether it be in the Matter of War, or Learning; and as for the Countries which are unknown to me, I ſhan't trouble my Head about them. Since the Flight of our holy Prophet, to the Time that I began to write this Book, there have paſſed 1074 Years. I call it a Genealogical History of the *Tatars*; and I have divided it into nine Parts, in order to conform my ſelf to the Cuſtom of other Writers, who all have this * Number in particular Eſteem.

An. Dom. 1663.

[* Haithon *in his* Hiſtoria de Tartaris, cap. 17. *aſſigns a different Reaſon from that given by the Author,* p. 9. *for the great Veneration which he obſerves the* Tatars *have for the Number Nine; adding, that all Preſents to the* Tatar *Monarch were to conſiſt of nine Things. There is a curious Paſſage mentioned in* Mohammedan *Authors upon this Occaſion, of a Prince, who having made a preſent to* Timûr Beg *of eight beautiful She-Slaves, and being asked where the ninth was, ſaid, he came to offer himſelf as ſuch, which procured him* Timûr's *Friendſhip. And it ſeems the* Tatars *rob by this Rule of Nine, for the* Karawân *with which* Anthony Jenkinſon *travelled from* Urgens *to* Bokhara *was obliged to give the Rovers who attacked them twenty times nine ſeveral Things to get rid of them.*]

THE

THE CONTENTS OF The First VOLUME.

PART I.

Contains the Hiſtory of the Generations of the Tatars, *from* Adam *down to* Mogul, *or more properly* Mung'l Chan.

Chap. I. *Of* Adam *and his Deſcendants until the Deluge.* Pag. 1

Chap. II. *Of the Poſterity of* Nui *to the Time of* Alanza Chan. 5

Chap. III. *Of* Alanza Chan *and his Poſterity, down to* Siuntz Chan ; *deſcending in the ſeventh Degree from* Tatar Chan. 7

PART II.

Contains the Hiſtory of the Generations of the Tatars, *from* Mung'l Chan *to* Zingis Chan, *who did not deſcend in a right Line from the Princes, the Succeſſors of* Mung'l Chan.

CONTENTS of

Chap. I. *Of* Mung'l Chan *and his Poſterity.* 9
Chap. II. *Of the Birth and Reign of* Ogus Chan. 10
Chap. III. *Of the Children of* Ogus Chan, *and of their Deſcendants until* Ill Chan. 21
Chap. IV. *Of the Life and Reign of* Siuntz Chan, *and the Deſtruction of the Empire of the* Mogulls. 24
Chap. V. *Of the Fortune of* Kajan *and* Nagos, *the only Remains of the Poſterity of* Mogull Chan. 26
Chap. VI. *Of the Tribes of the* Kanklis, Kipzaks, Kallatz, *and* Karliks. 31
Chap. VII. *Of the Tribe of the* Vigurs. 34
Chap. VIII. *Of the Tribes of the* Takrins; *of the* Kergis, *of the* Camcamzuts, *and of the* Urmankatts. 36
Chap. IX. *Of the Tribe of the* Tatars. 38
Chap. X. *Of the Tribe of the* Virats, *and its ſeveral Branches.* 40
Chap. XI. *Of the Tribe of the* Naimanns, *of the* Caraits, *of the* Unguts, and *of the* Turkaks. 42
Chap. XII. *Of the Tribe of the* Mogulls. 46
Chap. XIII. *Of the Tribes of the* Markatts, *the* Kunkurats, *the* Ankarahs, *the* Allaknuts, *the* Caranuts, *the* Curlaſs, *the* Ilzigans, *the* Ummauts, *the* Cunnachmars, *the* Arlats, *the* Kalkits, *and the* Kiſhliks. 47
Chap. XIV. *Of the Tribes of the* Viſhuns, *the* Suldus, *the* Durmanns, *the* Bariens, *the* Sukuts, *the* Curla-uts, *the* Burkuts, *and ſome other Branches of the* Mogulls. 51
Chap. XV. *Of the* Chans *of the* Mogulls, *from their ſallying out of* Irgana-kon, *down to* Zingis Chan. 55

PART III.

Contains the Hiſtory of the Reign of Zingis Chan, *from his Birth to his Death.*

Chap. I. *Of the Birth of* Zingis Chan, *and his firſt Years, to the Death of his Father, and his Advancement to the Throne of the* Mogulls. 63
Chap. II. *Of ſome Things that fell out during the firſt Years of the Reign of* Zingis Chan. 67
Chap. III. *Of the War of* Zingis Chan, *againſt* Aunak Chan *of the* Caraits; *and of the Defeat of the latter.* 70
Ch. IV. Zingis Chan *is acknowledged* Chan *of the* Mogulls. 78
Chap. V. *Of the War of* Zingis Chan, *againſt* Taijan Chan *of the* Naimanns; *and of the Reduction of the Tribe of the* Naimanns *under the Obedience of* Zingis Chan. 80

Chap.

Chap. VI. *Of the Reduction of the Tribe of the* Markatts *under* Zingis Chan, *and of the Conqueſt of the Town and Kingdom of* Tangut. 83
Chap. VII. *Of the Death of* Bairak Chan *of the* Naimanns, *and of* Tochtabegi Chan *of the* Markatts. 84
Chap. VIII. *Of the Reduction of the* Kergis *under the Obedience of* Zingis Chan, *and of the Death of* Zamucha Zizen. 86
Chap. IX. *Of the voluntary Submiſſion of the* Vigurs *to* Zingis Chan. 87
Chap. X. *Of* Zingis Chan's *War againſt* Altan Chan *of* Kitay. 88
Chap. XI. *Of the Reduction of the Town of* Akaſhin, *the quaſhing ſome Seeds of Rebellion, aud of the Death of* Kutſhluk. 93
Chap. XII. *Of the Wives and Children of* Zingis Chan. 95
Chap. XIII. *Of the Commencement of the War between* Zingis Chan, *and Sultan* Mahamet Shah *of* Charaſs'm. 97
Chap. XIV. *Of the Expedition of* Zingis Chan *into* Great Bucharia. 107
Chap. XV. *Of the Expedition of the three Sons of* Zingis Chan *into the Country of* Charaſs'm, *and of the Reduction of many Towns on the Frontiers of the* Indies *under the Obedience of that Prince.* 118
Chap. XVI. *Of ſome Actions of Sultan* Dſalaludin, *Son of Sultan* Mahamet. 122
Chap. XVII. *Of the Expeditions of the two* Mogull *Generals into divers Provinces of* Perſia, *and of the Death of Sultan* Mahamet. 127
Chap. XVIII. *Of the Expedition of* Taulai *Son of* Zingis Chan *into the Province of* Choraſſan. 133
Chap. XIX. *Of the Return of* Zingis Chan *into his hereditary Provinces, and of his Death.* 140

PART IV.

Contains the Hiſtory of Ugadai Chan, *third Son of* Zingis Chan; *and of his Succeſſors in the Empire of the* Moguls, *of the Poſterity of* Zingis Chan.

Chap. I. *Of the Reign of* Ugadai Chan. 148
Chap. II. *Concerning ſome memorable Actions of* Ugadai Chan. 153

CONTENTS of

Chap. III. *Of the Reign of* Kajuk Chan, *Son of* Ugadai Chan ; *and of the Poſterity of thoſe Princes.* 156
Chap. IV. *Of the Reign of* Mangu Chan, *Son of* Taulai Chan. 158
Chap. V. *Of the Reign of* Coplai Chan, *fourth Son of* Taulai Chan. 162

PART V.

Contains the Hiſtory of Zagataï Chan, *Second Son of* Zingis Chan, *and of the Princes of his Poſterity, who have reigned over the Cities and Kingdoms of* Caſhgar *and* Ma-urenner.

Chap. I. *Of the Life and Reign of* Zagatai Chan. 165
Chap. II. *Of the Princes of the Poſterity of* Zagatai Chan, *who have reigned in the Country of* Ma-urenner *after the Death of* Zagatai Chan. 167
Chap. III. *Of divers other* Chans *who have reigned in the Country of* Ma-urenner *until* Amir Timur. 170
Chap. IV. *Of the Life and principal Actions of* Amir Timur. 172
Chap. V. *Of the Princes of the Poſterity of* Zagatai Chan, *who have reigned in the Country of* Caſhgar. 176

PART VI.

Contains the Hiſtory of Taulai Chan, *youngeſt Son of* Zingis Chan, *and of his Deſcendants who have reigned in the Country of* Iran.

Chap. I. *Of* Halaku Chan, *and of the Princes of his Poſterity down to* Abuſait Chan. 184
Chap. II. *Of the Civil Wars among the ſeveral Succeſſors of* Abuſait Chan, *and of the Reduction of the Country of* Iran *by* Dzanibek Chan. 188

PART VII.

Contains the Hiſtory of Zuzi Chan, *eldeſt Son of* Zingis Chan, *and of his Deſcendants who have reigned over the* Kipzaks.

Chap. I. *Of* Zuzi Chan, *and of the Reign of his Son* Batu Sagin Chan. 192
Chap. II. *Of the Princes of the Poſterity of* Zuzi Chan, *who have reigned over the* Kipzaks, *after the Death of* Batu Zagin Chan. 195
Chap. III. *Of the Deſcendants of* Togai Timur, *youngeſt Son of* Zuzi Chan, *who have reigned in the Country of* Kipzak. 200

PART VIII.

Contains the Hiſtory of Sheybani Chan, *Son of* Zuzi Chan; *and of his Deſcendants, who have reigned in the Countrys of* Ma-urenner, *and* Turan.

Chap. I. *Of the Life and Reign of* Sheybani Chan. 205
Chap. II. *Of the Deſcendants of* Sheybani Chan, *down to* Jadigar Chan. 208
Chap. III. *Of* Burga Sultan, *Son of* Jadigar Chan. 212
Chap. IV. *Of the Death of* Abulgair Chan, *and alſo of* Burga Sultan. 217

PART IX.

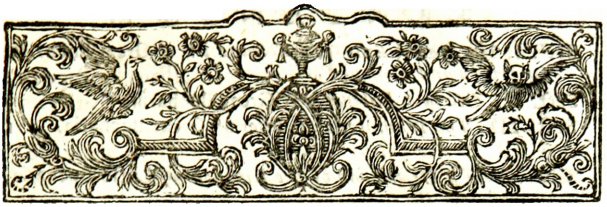
Contains the Hiſtory of the Deſcendants of Sheybani Chan, *who have reigned in the Country of* Charaſs'm.

Chap. I. *Of* Ilbars Chan, *and* Bilbars Sultan, *who were the firſt Princes of the Deſcendants of* Sheybani Chan, *who reigned in the Country of* Charaſs'm. 221
Chap. II. *Of the Life and Reign of* Hadſi Chan, *of* Haſanculi Chan, *of* Saphian Chan, *and of* Buzzuga Chan. 232
Chap. III. *Of the Reign of* Avanaſh Chan, *and of the Civil Wars among the Deſcendants of* Amunak, *and thoſe of* Burga Sultan. 242
Chap. IV. *Of* Kahl Chan, Akattai Chan, Junus Chan, *and* Doſt Chan; *of the Civil Wars among the divers Branches of the Poſterity of* Amunak. 261
Chap. V. *Of* Din Mahamet Chan, *and of the other Deſcendants of* Avanaſh Chan. 271
Chap. VI. *Of* Hadſim Chan, *and the other Deſcendants of* Akattai Chan. 285

CONTENTS.

Chap. VII. Abdula Chan *makes himſelf Maſter of the Country of* Charaſs'm, *and obliges* Hadſim Chan *to ſeek Refuge in* Perſia. 290
Chap. VIII. *Of the Re-eſtabliſhment of* Hadſim Chan *in his Dominions, and of his Death.* 309
Chap. IX. *Of the Reign of* Arap Mahamet Chan, *and of his Death.* 312
Chap. X. *Of the Reign of* Iſphandiar Chan, *and of that of his Brother* Shariph Mahamet Chan. 326
Chap. XI. *Concerning the firſt Years of the Life of* Abulgaſi Chan. 330
XII. *Of the Reign and Death of* Abulgaſi Chan. 356

CON-



CONTENTS

OF

The Second VOLUME.

PART I.

CHAP. I. *Obſervations upon* Grand Tatary, *and the* Tatars *in general.*

Sect. I. *Of the Extent, Nature of the Soil, and Air of* Grand Tatary. 379
Sect. II. Tatars, *whence deſcended.* 384
Sect. III. *Of the ſeveral Branches of the* Tatars, *particularly ſo called.* 388
Sect. IV. *The Government of the* Tatars. 391
Sect. V. *Of the Manners and Cuſtoms of the* Tatars. 399
Sect. VI. *Of their Building, Trade, and Sciences.* 409

Chap. II. *A Deſcription of the Kingdom of* Chowarazm *ſubject to the* Tatars. 419

Sect. I. *The Situation, Extent, Antiquity and Government of* Chowarazm.
Sect. II. *Of the Inhabitants of* Chowarazm, *particularly the* Turkmanns *and* Uzbeks. 423
Sect. III. *A Deſcription of the Provinces and Towns of* Chowarazm. 434
Sect. IV. *A Deſcription of the Rivers* Amu *and* Kheſell, *and of the great Lake of* Arall. 444

Chap. III. *A Deſcription of* Great Bucharia, *or* Ma Wara 'lnahr, *ſubject to the* Uzbeks. 452

Sect. I.

CONTENTS of

Sect. I. *The Name, Extent, and Situation of* Great Bucharia. Pag. 452
Sect. II. *Of the Inhabitants of* Great Bucharia. 455
Sect. III. *The Provinces and Cities of* Great Bucharia. 461

Chap. IV. *A Deſcription of the Kingdom of* Little Bucharia, *or* Caſhgar.

Sect. I. *Of its Situation, Extent, and natural Advantages.* 469
Sect. II. *The principal Places in* Little Bucharia. 470
Sect. III. *The Government, Buildings, Language, Religion, Marriages, Burials, and other Cuſtoms of the Natives.* 474
Chap. V. *A Deſcription of* Tangut, *ſubject to the* Callmaks. 485

Sect. I. *Its Extent, Government of the* Dalai Lama, *and his Religion.* 485
Sect. II. *Of the Towns of* Tangut, *and the great Deſart of* Shamo, *or* Goby. 491

Chap. VI. *Some Account of* Cara-Kitay. 495

Chap. VII. *A Deſcription of the Country of the* Mungals, *or the Eaſtern Part of* Grand Tatary.

Sect. I. *Of the Situation, Bounds, Extent, and natural Products.* 499
Sect II. *Of the* Mungals, *or* Moguls, *both of the Eaſt and Weſt; their Manners, Cuſtoms, Government, Religion,* &c. 502
Sect. III. *The Religion of the* Mungals *of the Weſt, and particularly of the* Kutuchta, *their High-Prieſt or Pope.* 508
Sect. IV. *The Towns and Rivers in the Country of the* Mungals. 512
Sect. V. *A Diſſertation concerning* Gog *and* Magog. 518

Chap. VIII. *A Deſcription of the Country of the* Mogulls, *called* Callmaks; *containing the middle and Weſt Part of* Grand Tatary.

Sect. I. *Its Situation, Bounds, Provinces, Towns, Rivers, Mountains: An Account of the* Archora. 521
Sect. II. *Of the Original, Names, Branches, Cuſtoms, Manners and Religion of the* Callmaks. 529
Sect. III. *Of the three Branches of the* Mogulls *or* Callmaks, *and of ſeveral other Tribes under their Dominion.* 538

Sect.

Sect. IV. *Of the Government of the* Mogulls *or* Callmaks, *and the Power of the* Con Taiſha *their Grand* Chan. 541
Sect. V. *Of the Wars between the* Contaiſh, *and the* Chan *of* China, *and of the Revolution which happen'd thereupon.* 546
Sect. VI. *Of the Tombs, Pyramids, deſerted Towns, and curious Writings, found lately in the Country of the* Callmaks. 555

Chap. IX. *A Deſcription of the Country of* Turkeſtan, *ſubject to the* Tatars.

Sect. I. *Name, Bounds, antient Power, Government, Diviſion, Towns.* 562
Sect. II. *The Inhabitants of* Turkeſtan. 571

Chap. X. *A Deſcription of the Country and Inhabitants of* Kipzak, Kipjak, *or* Kafjak, *ſubject to the* Ruſſians.

Sect. I. *Its Name, Extent, Conqueſt, Inhabitants,* &c. 576
Sect. II. *Of the* Baſhkir Tatars *and* Tatars *of* Uffa, *who inhabit the Duchy of* Bulgar *in the Kingdom of* Caſan. 579
Sect. III. *Of the ſeveral Branches of the* Coſaks. 582

Chap. XI. *An Account of the* Tatars *of* Crimea, Budziak, *and* Kuban. 597

Sect. I. *A Deſcription of* Crimea *and its chief Towns.* 597
Sect. II. *An Account of the* Tatars *of* Crimea. 600
Sect. III. *The* Tatars *of* Budziak. 604
Sect. IV. *The* Kuban Tatars. 605

Chap. XII. *An Account of the Countries between the* Euxine *and the* Caſpian *Seas, inhabited by the* Circaſſian *and* Dagheſtan Tatars; *the* Allans *and the* Abaſſes.

Sect. I. *Of* Circaſſia, *and the* Circaſſians. 607
Sect. II. *Of the Country of* Dagheſtan, *and the* Dagheſtan Tatars. 613
Sect. III. *Of the* Alans *or* Alains, *an Independent People of the Mountains.* 617
Sect. IV. *Of the* Abaſſes, *an Independent People of the Mountains.* 618

Chap. XIII. *A Deſcription of* Siberia. 620

Sect. I.

CONTENTS of

Sect. I. *The Bounds, Extent, Climate of* Siberia, *and of the Diſcovery and Conqueſt of it by the* Ruſſians. 620
Sect. II. *The Soil, Product, Coin, and Trade of* Siberia. 623
Sect. III. *The Inhabitants of* Siberia. 630
Sect. IV. *The Diviſion, Government, Buildings, Towns.* 649
Sect. V. *Of the Lakes and Mountains of* Siberia. 652
Sect. VI. *Of the Rivers of* Siberia. 655
Sect. VII. *Of the* Icy Sea *and Streights of* Waygat. Aſia *not contiguous to* America. 662

PART II.

Chap. I. *Obſervations relating to* Great Ruſſia.

Sect. I. *Its Extent, Bounds, Nature of the Soil, Commodities.* 665
Sect. II. *The Original, Name, and Qualities of the* Ruſſians. 668
Sect. III. *The Government of* Ruſſia, *and of the City of* Moſcow. 673
Sect. IV. *The Rivers of* Ruſſia. 677

Chap. II. *Obſervations upon* Turky.

Sect. I. *Why* Turky *is called* Rûm *by the Orientals, and the* Othman *Sultan,* Chalîfah. *An Error to call his Subjects* Turks. 682
Sect. II. *The Provinces of* Diarbekr, Curdiſtan, *and* Erak; *with an Account of* Mount Ararat. 685

Chap. III. *Obſervations on* Arabia *and the* Mohammedans.

Sect. I. *Of* Arabiſtan. *The Inundations of the* Perſian *Gulf. Of* Mekka *and* Medinah. 691
Sect. II. *Of* Mohammed *and his Religion.* 696

Chap. IV. *Obſervations relating to the Country of* Iran, *or* Perſia *at large.*

Sect. I. *Of the Name and Extent of* Perſia. *Women Dancers.* 706
Sect. II. *Of the Title of* Chan, *ſtill given to Governors in* Perſia. *The Points in which the* Perſians *differ in Opinion from the* Turks *and other* Mohammedans. 709
Sect. III. *Of the Provinces and Cities of* Perſia. 715

Sect. IV. *A Deſcription of the* Caſpian *Sea.* 747

Chap.

Chap. V. *Obſervations relating to* India.

Sect. I. *Of the* Mohammedan *Kingdoms founded in* India *before the Conqueſt of the* Moguls. 754
Sect. II. *Of the Town of* Cabul, *and Kingdom of* Caſhmîr. 759

Chap. VI. *Obſervations relating to* China, *ſubject to the* Tatars, *or rather to the* Mungals.

Sect. I. Kitay, *or* Cathay *and* China, *the ſame. Alſo* Chanbalik *and* Pekin *the ſame. Of* Nanking, *the* Chineſe *Wall, and River* Hoanghſo. 763
Sect. II. *Of the Expulſion of the* Tatars *by the* Bonzas, *and their ſecond Conqueſt of* China *under* Zungh te. 770
Sect. III. *Of the Reign of* Cangh Hy, *the Laws he introduced, and the Methods he made uſe of to eſtabliſh the Dominion of the* Tatars *in* China. 775

THE

A MAP of the NORTHERN ASIA

as it was about the time of the Grand Invasion of the Tatars into the Southern parts of Asia under the Conduct of Zingis Chan

Adapted to the Genealogicall History of the Tatars.

AZOCH ZINGIS

ZINGIS

Polar Circle

Moscow

Sibir

URUSSES

KIPZ

TURA

Volga R.

Don R.

Tanais R.

Ob R.

Irtis R.

Lena R.

Amur R.

Arall Tag

Uluk Tag

Tubus

TELANGUTS

TUNCATS

TUMATS

TURKAKS

MAKRINS

NACHMARS

NIRONS

NAIMANNS

MARKATS

UNGUTTS

Chanbalik

Namking

Cara Muran

KITHAIA

Caracum

Uskun-Luk-Tugra

Ierkehn

Samarcant

Buchara

Talas

Tangut

Akas hin

Lac Mohill

CARAKITHAI

MAURENNAHR

MAGNACHPHARNA

BUCHARIA

Mus

Tag

Balkh

Badagshan

Kashemire

Andeud

Cabull

Gasmien or Gasna

Sir Indel R.

Herat

Bamyan

Nis habur

Chora san

Mer

Sagill

Schiras

Kirman

Ispahan

Bagdad

Hamadan

Sultanya

Tauris

Derbent

SHIRVAN

Shamachie

Nadseen

Kaht

Chajuk

Carmin

Vasir

Abulcheir

Urgens

Chateen

Kashgar

Tashkant

Turkestan

Sighnak

Otrar

Nur

Chodsen

Pharmant

Termis

Karshi

Mankis hlak

Mesched

Bastan

Laursurdi

Dunhin

Ruhin

Ilan

Istakabath

Carender

Sava

Kasbin

Sultanya

Tauris

Kaschi

Kaschi Tag

Mankat

Lallah

Kiacuth

Shahirochevat

Usfjar

Tasch

Samuc

Lallchan

Ilak

Kabalik

Kuk Tag

Kemm R.

Laigik R.

Scharifeda

Caffa

Crim

Iltamboul

Volga

Wolga

Kiza

Kizil

Kizil Tag

Kankli

Kankli Tag

Kurk Tag

Kurk

Kurk-Mangali

Kurk-Mangali Tag

Kurk-Mangali R.

Lapluns

Lapluts

Gallaks

Gallats

Tuncats

Knuts

Kuchlak

Kuchlak R.

Ob R.

Irtis R.

Lena R.

Amur R.

Ziput

Dsurdsut

Tugra

Tugra R.

Ulug R.

Ulug

Ulug Tag

Kemm R.

Laigik R.

Scharifeda

Caffa

Crim

Iltamboul

Volga

Wolga

Don R.

Tanais R.

Derbent

SHIRVAN

Shamachie

Nadseen

Kaht

Chajuk

Carmin

Vasir

Abulcheir

Urgens

Chateen

Kashgar

Tashkant

Turkestan

Sighnak

Otrar

Nur

Chodsen

Pharmant

Termis

Karshi

Mankis hlak

Mesched

Bastan

Laursurdi

Dunhin

Ruhin

Ilan

Istakabath

Carender

Sava

Kasbin

Sultanya

Tauris

Kaschi

Kaschi Tag

Mankat

Lallah

Kiacuth

Shahirochevat

Usfjar

Tasch

Samuc

Lallchan

Ilak

Kabalik

Kuk

THE
Genealogical Hiſtory
OF THE
TATARS.

PART I.

Containing the Hiſtory of the Generations of the *Tatars*, from *Adam* down to *Mogull*, or more properly *Mung'l Chan*.

CHAP. I.

Of Adam *and his Deſcendants until the Deluge.*

WHEN God had determin'd to create *Adam*, he ſent the Angel *Sabrail* to fetch him a Handful of Earth; but the Earth having demanded of the Angel, at the Inſtant he was about taking ſome of it, what he intended to do with that Handful of Earth, and the Angel having anſwer'd that God would

The Tatars *Opinion of the Creation.*

create *Adam* out of it, the Earth begged of him not to take any of it, ſaying, "The Children "of *Adam* would multiply and ſin againſt God, "who thereupon would pour out his Wrath "upon them and puniſh them ſeverely on ac- "count of their Sins; and I dread this Puniſh- "ment extremely, becauſe I cannot chooſe but "ſink under it." The Angel being return'd into the Preſence of God with this Anſwer, God ſent the Angel *Michael* to the Earth with the ſame Commiſſion; but he went back with the ſame Excuſe, without having executed God's Command. After which God ſent again thither the Angel *Aſraphil*, who return'd *once more empty-handed.* At laſt, God having ſent the Angel *Aſrail* to the Earth, ſhe try'd in like manner to perſuade him to return without doing any thing; but the Angel made anſwer, "Thy Remonſtrances are nothing to me in "compariſon of the Commands of God:" After which, having taken a Handful, he went to carry it before God; and 'tis in the ſame Place where the Angel took that Handful of Earth, that the Houſe of *Mechka*, which is ſtill to be ſeen there, was afterwards built, and to which all the Faithful go yearly to pay their Devotions. 'Tis held, in recompenſe of the Angel *Aſrail*'s having ſo punctually on that Occaſion executed the Command of God, that the Power was given him of receiving the Souls of Men at their Death, and bringing them into his Preſence. After God had created *Adam*, he ſet him upon the Earth between the Houſe of *Mechka* and the City of *Toyóf*, where he left him for the Space of thirty nine days; not having given him a Soul till the fortieth Day. There is no Neceſſity to ſpeak here of the Manner how God plac'd *Adam* in *Paradiſe*, and of his

Mecka. Tayif.

ſinning againſt the Almighty in eating the Apple, becauſe that is ſufficiently known to us.

Adam lived a Thouſand Years: his Name is deriv'd from the *Arabick*, in which *Adam* ſignifies, *of the Turf*: and becauſe the Angel *Aſrail* took ſome of the Earth of the Turf, he had the Name of *Adam*; but he was ſurnamed *Saphi-Jula*. He ſaw forty Thouſand of his Poſterity, and nominated before his Death his Son *Shiſs* to reign in his Place, who by this means inherited the Dominion of all the Lands which his Father had peopled, and lived four hundred and twelve Years with the Reputation of a great Prophet: At his Death, the Angel *Aſrail* receiv'd his Soul, and carry'd it into *Arai*, or *Paradiſe*. 'Tis from the Language of *Junan*, or *Greece*, that the Name of *Shiſs* came to him; but in the *Arabick*, he is called *Ezbaſulla*. Safi Jula. Seth.

His Son *Anus* obtain'd the ſovereign Lordſhip after his Death; and inaſmuch as conformable to the Inſtructions of his Father, he lived in great Holineſs and Virtue, they gave him the Name which in *Arabick* ſignifies *Juſt*. He lived 412 Years. Enos. Al Adel.

After him reign'd his Son *Shinan*, who died after having liv'd 240 Years, and had for his Succeſſor his Son Kenan.

Melahil, who perceiving Mankind viſibly to increaſe, was the firſt who began to build Cities. The firſt he built was in the Country of *Babel*, and called it *Suſs*. The Houſes of this Town were built of Earth and Wood; whereas before Caves, Holes, and Grotto's in the Mountains had ſerv'd for Men to live in. 'Twas he alſo who firſt invented what belongs to the Harveſt, and for that End diſtributed his People among the moſt fertile Plains. He liv'd 920 Years, and left a Son called Mahalaleil.

Jared. *Berdi*, who lived 960 Years.

Enoch. His Son and Succeſſor was called in the *Greek* Language *Achnuch*, on account of his extraordinary Wiſdom and Piety; but in *Arabick* he is called *Idriſs*. He propheſy'd and inſtructed his Subjects during 42 Years: After which an Angel came and took him living, upon his Wings, and carry'd him to Paradiſe.

Methuſalah. After him reign'd his Son *Matuſhlach*, who was very Virtuous and Pious; but the Number of the Years he lived is not known.

Lamech. To him ſucceeded his Son *Zämach*; the Years of whoſe Life alſo are unknown: but we know that before his Death he nominated for his Succeſſor his Son

Noah. *Nui*, who was choſen by God at the Age of 150 Years to be a Prophet; he taught Mankind for the Space of 700 Years the Way to Heaven, without being able in all that time to gain over above eighty Souls, reckoning Men and Women; and perceiving all the reſt of Mankind had turn'd away themſelves from God, he ſupplicated God that he would root out that whole Generation. Upon this the Angel *Sabrail* having appear'd to him, ſaid, "Thy Prayer is "granted, and God will in a ſhort time deſtroy "all Men by a univerſal Deluge; for which "reaſon God has order'd you to build an Ark:" The Angel at the ſame time inſtructed him in what Manner that Ark ſhould be built. In Obedience to this Command, *Nui* and the eighty true Believers ſet about building it, and it was ſcarce finiſh'd when the Earth open'd her Deeps, and the Heavens ſent down Rains without ceaſing. Then the Prophet having cauſed all ſorts of living Creatures and Birds, Male and Female to enter into the Ark, he likewiſe went in himſelf with the eighty true Believers, and all the

the reſt of Mankind, as well as of Animals and Birds, was drown'd by the Deluge. After ſome time God having ſhut up the Deeps of the Earth, and made the Rains to ceaſe, the Water inſenſibly diminiſh'd.

CHAP. II.

Of the Poſterity of Nui *to the Time of* Alanza Chan.

IT was on the Mountain of *Dſudi*, between the Town of *Muſel* and that of *Sham*, that *Nui* built the Ark, from whence the Waters rais'd it the firſt Day of the Month *Redſeb* [*Regeb*] and they kept it ſailing till the 10th Day of *Muharam*, when it reſted upon a Mountain; ſo that it floated ſix Months and ten Days. Gudi, Muſell, Sham *or* Damaſcus.

Of all the Men which had enter'd into the Ark with the Prophet, only himſelf, his Wife, and his three Sons and their Wives went alive out of it; all the reſt being dead of Sickneſs during the Deluge. After which *Nui* diſpers'd his three Sons thro' the World, having ſent his eldeſt Son *Ham* to inhabit the *Indies*, his ſecond Son *Sam* to inhabit the Country of *Iran*, and his youngeſt Son *Japhis* into the Country of *Kuttup Shamach*, and the neighbouring Lands; injoining them, that foraſmuch as there were then no more Men in the World but themſelves, they ſhould not begin to build Cities before their Poſterity multiply'd. *Japhis* has been look'd upon by ſome as a Prophet, and by others as a common Man. After he had quitted the Mountain where the Ark reſted, he went to ſettle about the Rivers *Atell* and *Jaigick*, and died af- *Of the Peopling of the World.* Cham. Sem. Japhet. Wolga.

ter having liv'd there 250 Years: He left eight Sons and many Kinsfolks and Relations. Theſe
Chazars. are the Names of his Sons; 1. *Turk*, 2. *Chars*,
Shin. 3. *Sacklap*, 4. *Ruſs*, 5. *Maninach*, 6. *Zwin*, 7. *Camari*, 8. *Tarich*. Before his Death, he appointed his Son *Turk*, to whom he gave the Sirname of *Japhis-Oglany*, to bear chief Rule in his Family; ordering the reſt to obey him and acknowledge him for their Maſter.

Turk. *Turk* was a Man of a ſuperior Genius, having been the firſt who invented many of the Conveniences of Life; he made himſelf Tents,
Reſided at and pitch'd upon a fix'd Reſidence in a Place
Iſach-koll. call'd at preſent *Iſachkoll*. He had four Sons; 1. *Taunak*, 2. *Zakale*, 3. *Berſazar*, 4. *Amlak*.
Taunak. At his Death he appointed his Son *Taunak* for his Succeſſor, who became a very rich and ingenious Prince, Author of many fine Inventions. It happen'd one Day, that *Taunak* having gone a hunting, and kill'd much Game, order'd a Piece to be roaſted; but when he was juſt going to eat ſome of it, he by chance let a Bit drop upon the Ground, and having taken it up, and put it to his Mouth he found it delicious,
Salt found by reaſon a Grain of Salt had ſtuck to it; which
out. having given him to underſtand that this Land was impregnated with Salt, he ſet himſelf to improve this Diſcovery, and became the firſt Inventor of the Uſe of Salt; no one before him having known what Salt was, or that it could ſeaſon Victuals.

Co-temporary with him reign'd a Prince in the Country of *Iran*, called * *Cajumars*. *Tau-*
Jelza *nak* lived 240 Years, and at his Death left his
Chan. Throne to his Son *Jelza Chan*, who lived many Years, and before his Death appointed his Son

[* Caiumarrath, *firſt King of* Perſia, *and of the Family of* Piſhdad.]

Dib-

Dibbakui Chan to ſucceed him. *Dibbakui Chan* liv'd alſo a long time, and diſpos'd of the Succeſſion before his Death to his Son *Kajuk Chan*, who reign'd a great Length of Years; and had for his Succeſſor, after his Death, his Son *Alanza Chan*.

Dibbakui Chan. Kajuk Chan. Alanza Chan.

From the Days of *Japhis* and his Deſcendants, to the Time of *Alanza Chan*, the true Religion was preſerv'd; and during the Reign of this Prince his Subjects liv'd in a profound Peace, having great Abundance of all ſorts of Riches.

Religion continued ſtill uncorrupted.

CHAP. III.

Of Alanza Chan *and his Poſterity, down to* Siüntz Chan; *deſcending in the Seventh Degree from* Tatar Chan.

OUR Forefathers made uſe of a Proverb, which ſays, "That when a Dog is too "well fed, he grows at laſt ſo ſaucy that he "bites his own Maſter." This was effectually verify'd in the Subjects of *Alanza Chan*, who, growing wanton in Affluence, forſook the true God to adore Idols; which they alſo carry'd to ſuch an Extreme, that when any one had loſt a Father, a Huſband, a Wife, a Child, or in ſhort any other Object which was dear to him, he preſently made a Divinity of it, to whoſe Image he offer'd up his Oblations. 'Tis true, that at firſt this was not done but in private, but by degrees it became the Faſhion to practiſe it publickly. *Alanza Chan* had two Twin-Sons, the one called * *Tatar*, and the other *Mogull*, or

Idolatry introduced.

* *'Tis from this Prince the* Tatars *take their Name, and not from the River* Tata, *as the* Mogulls *from* Mogull.

more properly *Mung'l*; between whom he divided his Dominions, when he drew near his End.

Tatar Chan. We ſhall begin at preſent to ſay ſomething with regard to *Tatar Chan*; and if God ſpares me my Life, I ſhall proceed to ſpeak concerning *Mogul*, or *Mung'l Chan*. *Tatar Chan* liv'd a long time, and had for his Succeſſor after his Death his Son *Bucha Chan*. *Bucha Chan* dying after having reign'd likewiſe a good while, left the Scepter to his Son *Jalänzä Chan*: After *Jalänzä Chan*, his Son *Ettela Chan* reign'd: After *Ettela Chan*, *Attaiſir Chan* came to the Throne, and was engag'd in bloody Wars. After his Death his Son *Orda Chan* poſſeſs'd his Dominions a long time in perfect Peace, and after his Death was ſucceeded by his Son *Baydu Chan*; who having reign'd a great many Years, thought fit to make War on the Deſcendants of *Mung'l Chan*; but dying in the mean while, his Son *Siüntz Chan* found himſelf engag'd in ſo furious a War with the Princes of the Poſterity of *Mung'l Chan*, that he had much ado to extricate himſelf; becauſe the Dominions of the Deſcendants of *Mung'l Chan* far ſurpaſs'd his own in Power and Riches. I ſhall now treat of *Mogull* or *Mung'l Chan*; and, if I live, I ſhall not fail to return again to the Reign of *Siüntz Chan*.

Bucha Chan.

Jalanza Chan.

Ettela Chan.

Attaiſir Chan.

Orda Chan.

Baydu Chan.

Siuntz Chan.

PART

PART II.

Containing the Hiſtory of the Generations of the *Tatars*, from *Mung'l Chan* down to *Zingis Chan*; who did not deſcend in a right Line from the Princes, Succeſſors of *Mung'l Chan*.

CHAP. I.

Of Mung'l Chan, *and his Poſterity.*

THE Term *Mung'l* has been chang'd by a general Corruption into *Mogull*. *Mung* ſignifies Melancholy, or a melancholy Man; and becauſe this Prince was of a very melancholy Diſpoſition, he bore that Name very properly. His Deſcendants reign'd after him to the Ninth Generation, *Mogull Chan* having been the firſt of them, and *Ill Chan* the laſt: *Zingis Chan* reign'd a long time after them. An Author call'd *Shara-Sudin*, remarks in his Writings, that the *Turks* are accuſtom'd to ſeek after the Number Nine * in whatever they undertake or write, inaſmuch as they have that Number in ſingular Veneration; becauſe God made uſe of it in the Creation.

Mogull, *a Corruption of* Mung'l.

* *The Number Nine has been in Veneration, thro' I know not what Frenzy, by moſt Nations. The* Romans *and* Greeks, *the* Germans *as well as the* Gauls *have always had great Regard to it in their ſacred Ceremonies; alſo our modern Cabaliſts pretend ſtill to find Myſteries in it, where none elſe can ſee any thing at all.*

Mogull

Mogull Chan having reign'd a long time, died and left four Sons; 1. *Cara Chan*, 2. *Auwas Chan*, 3. *Cauwas Chan*, 4. *Cavar Chan:* But *Cara Chan*, as being eldeſt, came to the Empire after the Death of his Father, and was a very powerful Prince. During the Summer, he made his Abode about the Mountains of *Ar-tag* and *Car-tag*, called at preſent *Uluk-tag* and *Kitzik-tag*; and in the Winter-time, his Reſidence was upon the Banks of the River *Sirr*, at the Foot of the Mountains which are to the North of that River. In his Time none were to be found of the true Religion, the whole World making open Profeſſion of Idolatry.

Country of the antient Mogulls.

CHAP. II.

Of the Birth and Reign of Ogus Chan.*

Cara Chan had by his Favourite Spouſe, a Son, whoſe Countenance ſeem'd to ſhine like the Sun. From the Time of his Birth he would take no Nouriſhment, tho his Mother continually offer'd him the Breaſt: Beſides that, the Mother dream'd every Night that her Son ſaid to her, "Mother, return to the true Reli- "gion, for ſo long as you continue in your Idola- "try I will not receive your Breaſt tho I ſhould "dy by it." Whereupon the Mother, to ſave the Life of her Child, having made a Vow to reſume the Worſhip of the true God, he immediately fell to ſucking her Breaſt: In the mean time, the Mother did not fail carefully to preſerve the Remembrance of this Particular. The *Turks*, who lived between the Time of *Japhis* and *Alanza Chan*, all profeſs'd the true

Birth of Ogus Chan.

Fabulous Story.

[* *The* Ottomon Turks *pretending to be deſcended from this Prince, call themſelves* Oguzians.]

Reli-

Religion: but during the Reign of *Alanza Chan*, abuſing the Proſperity they enjoy'd, they forſook the true God and ſtray'd after Idols; which Abomination increas'd every Day till the Time of *Cara Chan*, when the Fury of Idolatry was come to ſuch a Height, that if the Father had a mind to return to the true Religion, he was ſure to be knock'd in the Head by his own Children; and the Fathers did the ſame to thoſe of their Children, who ſhew'd an Inclination to the true Religion.

The Turks fell into Idolatry in the Time of Alanza Chan.

In the Time of the Reign of *Mogull Chan*, it was the Cuſtom not to give Names to their Children till they had paſs'd the firſt Year. 'Tis for this reaſon that *Cara Chan* would not give his Son a Name till he was a Year old. Then having aſſembled the Lords of his Court, and prepar'd a great Entertainment, he order'd the Infant to be brought, and ſaid to them, "You "know that my Son being this Day a Year "old, it is time to give him a Name." Whereupon every one keeping Silence to hear what Name the Father would give him, this Child ſpoke, ſaying, "What Name mean you to "give me? I call my ſelf *Ogus*." The Admiration which this Novelty gave the whole Aſſembly, to ſee an Infant but twelve Months old give himſelf a Name, caus'd them unanimouſly to conſent that he ſhould keep that Name, in the Opinion that he would one Day become a great Prince. When this Boy began to ſpeak, he had continually in his Mouth the Word *Allah! Allah!* which every one made a Subject of Raillery, ſaying, "This Child is yet ſo "young that he does not underſtand what he "ſays, uttering the firſt thing that comes into "his Head." But far from being a thing of chance, it was the immediate Work of God, who

Ogus gives himſelf a Name.

Allah, i. e. *God.*

who was pleas'd his Name ſhould be glorify'd by the Mouth of this tender Infant.

Ogus *marries two Wives.*

When he was arriv'd at a proper Age, he had given him his Couſin-Germain, the Daughter of *Cavar Chan* in Marriage; with whom being one Day in private, he ſaid to her, "I "know him who hath created thee and me, "and all that we ſee; therefore I am of Opi- "nion we ought to obey him in all that he hath "commanded us." But ſhe, on her part, not being willing to agree to this Propoſal, *Ogus* not only quitted her Bed, but alſo ſhunn'd her Company upon all Occaſions. *Cara Chan* being inform'd that the new-marry'd Couple liv'd in no good Underſtanding together, gave his Son another of his Couſins, the Daughter of *Cawas Chan* in Marriage; with whom he had the ſame Adventure as with the firſt. Some Years after *Ogus* returning from hunting, paſs'd near a Brook, beſide which he ſaw a Woman who was waſhing Linen, and a Third Couſin of his, Daughter to *Auwas Chan*, ſitting by her; whereupon he took her aſide, for fear it ſhould be diſcover'd that he profeſs'd the true Religion, in caſe he ſhould ſpeak to her by ſome body elſe; and having made her ſwear ſhe would keep ſecret all he was going to truſt her with; he ſaid, "My Father has given me "two Wives, but I cannot love them becauſe "they adore Idols, and I live in the true Reli- "gion; therefore if you will embrace my Re- "ligion and forſake Idolatry, I'll take you in "Marriage and love you as long as I live."

Forſakes them on account of Religion.

Gets a Wife to his mind.

She having conſented to the Propoſal of *Ogus*, he ask'd her in Marriage of his Father, who willingly gave her to him; and alſo made a great Feaſt on that Occaſion. *Ogus* liv'd very agreeably with this laſt Wife; but ſome Years after,

after, being gone a hunting a good way from home, *Cara Chan* his Father gave in his Abſence a great Entertainment to all his Wives, and likewiſe invited the Wives of his Son *Ogus*. Among many Diſcourſes which he had with his Wives during the Entertainment, it came into his Head to aſk them, if they did not know the reaſon how it came to paſs his Son ſhould love his laſt Wife ſo well, and hate his two former? But not being able to get a ſatisfactory Anſwer, inaſmuch as they knew not the Secret of that Affair, he put the ſame Queſtion to his Sons Wives. The firſt of which reply'd, "Your Son is of a Religion different "from thine, as is his laſt Wife as well as he; "and becauſe we two were not willing to em- "brace that Religion as he deſir'd us, he hath "taken a Hatred to us."

Cara Chan reſolves to put his Son Ogus to Death on account of Religion.

Upon this Anſwer, *Cara Chan* reſolv'd by the Advice of the Lords of his Court to go to the Place where *Ogus* was hunting, in order to put him to death without any Noiſe. But the laſt Wife being appriz'd of this Reſolution, ſent immediately to inform her Huſband that his Father was gathering Troops to go and ſurprize him, becauſe he had learn'd that he profeſs'd a different Religion from his own. *Ogus* having without Delay ſpread this News thro' the whole Country, caus'd it to be publiſh'd at the ſame time, that all thoſe who pretended to be his Friends ſhould come off-hand to his Aſſiſtance; but the Majority ſided with the Father, and there were but very few who came to take the Son's Part; of which Number, among others, were the Nephews of *Cara Chan*, the Children of his Brothers, who were fallen much below the Grandure of their Birth, to whom *Ogus* gave the Sirname of *Vigur*, as much as to ſay, coming

Ogus inform'd of it, gathers Forces.

Vigur's Tribe.

coming to Aid, or Relief. In the mean time, *Cara Chan* being advanc'd with a great Army againſt his Son, his Troops notwithſtanding their great Superiority were beaten, and in the Rout the *Chan* himſelf receiv'd a Shot with an Arrow in his Head, of which he died not long after.

Cara Chan's *Army routed, and himſelf ſlain.*

Ogus *eſtabliſhes the true Religion in his Dominions.*

Ogus Chan being advanc'd to the Throne, caus'd an Order to be publiſh'd that every one ſhould embrace the true Religion; and the better to encourage his Subjects therein, he heap'd Favours upon thoſe who obey'd him readily; whereas he gave no Quarter to thoſe who perſiſted in Idolatry: And as there dwelt divers People upon his Frontiers who paid no Obedience to his Orders, notwithſtanding they had been heretofore under the Dominion of *Mogul Chan*, many of his Subjects who would not quit their Idolatry went and ſhelter'd themſelves among them, which mov'd *Ogus Chan* to make War upon them ſo briſkly, that at laſt he oblig'd them to ſubmit, except a very few who retir'd into the Dominions of *Tatar Chan*, who reſided in the Neighbourhood of *Dſurdſut*.

Gurgut, *or* Zinu.

The Town of *Dſurdſut* is very powerful, having ſeveral ſmall Towns under its Juriſdiction: 'Tis ſituate towards the Frontiers of *Kitay*, being called *Zinu* in the *Indian* and *Perſian* Language.

OgusChan *wars on* Tatar Chan, *on account of Religion.*

Ogus Chan embrac'd very eagerly that Occaſion to war upon *Tatar Chan*; and having vanquiſhed him, took from him ſo great a Booty, that it had been impoſſible to have carry'd it away, if it had not been for an ingenious Man in his Army, who on this Occaſion invented Chariots; by the help of which they brought off all the Booty: and becauſe thoſe Chariots *skreel'd* much, they were call'd *Kunneck*, and the Author of the Invention *Kankli*: and all thoſe who are call'd at preſent *Kankli*,

Chariots invented.

Kankli *Tribe.*

are

are of the Poſterity of that Man who invented the Uſe of Chariots.

Ogus Chan, after a War with his Enemies which laſted 72 Years, oblig'd all his Neighbours at laſt to ſubmit to him, and brought them back to the true Religion. After which he conquer'd the Empire of *Kitay*, the City of *Dſurdſut*, and the Kingdom of *Tangut* with *Cara Kitay*. The Capital of *Cara Kitay* is a great City, and the Country is inhabited by People as black as the *Indians:* They live about the Lake *Mohill*, between *Kitay* and the *Indies*, drawing towards the South. From thence paſſing behind *Kitay*, he found upon the Sea-Coaſts among the Mountains, very warlike People * who had a *Chan* call'd *Itburak*; who coming to meet him with a good Army, receiv'd him with ſo much Bravery, that he was conſtrain'd to go back the way he came, and to poſt himſelf in an advantageous Camp between two great Rivers, in order to make himſelf ſecure againſt any Surprize. As upon this occaſion, *Ogus Chan* and the chief Officers of his Army carry'd their Wives with them, it happen'd that one of his general Officers, who had been kill'd in the Battle, having left his Wife big with Child, ſhe could find no other Place to retire to when her Time was come but an old Hollow-Tree; into which having crept when her Labour came on her, ſhe there brought forth a Son. The *Chan* being inform'd of this Adventure, gave Orders to have this Child carefully brought up, in Conſideration that he had loſt his Father in his Service, and gave him the Name of *Kipzak*, which ſignifies in the antient *Turkiſh*, an *Hollow-Tree*. When this Boy was

Ogus Chan *conquers* Kitay, Tangut, *and* Cara Kitay.

Gurgut.

Cara Kitay *deſcribed.*

Lake Mohill.

Itburak Chan.

Kipzak, *whence named.*

* *The Author undoubtedly ſpeaks here of* Tunkin *and* Cochin China, *with which the Situation of this People agrees.*

arriv'd

arriv'd to a fit Age, *Ogus Chan* gave him a conſiderable Army to go and war againſt the *Vruſſes*, *Vlaks*, *Madſahrs*, and *Baſhkirs*, who inhabited along the Banks of the Rivers *Tin*, *Atell* and *Jaigik*; and having been fortunate enough to bring theſe People under his Subjection, he reign'd thirty Years in that Country. From him are deſcended all the *Kipzaks*; and from the Reign of *Ogus Chan*, to that of *Zingis Chan*, for above four Thouſand Years, no other Nation has inhabited between thoſe three Rivers, beſides the Subjects of the Princes of the Poſterity of *Kipzak*. This Country is call'd *Daſht Kipzak*, or the Plain of *Kipzak*.

Magahrs.

Daſht Kipzak.

Seventeen Years after *Ogus Chan* attack'd *Itburak Chan* the ſecond time, and having this time entirely defeated him, he put him to death and afterwards made himſelf Maſter of his Dominions. On this Occaſion he treated thoſe of his own Subjects, who had preſerv'd the true Religion, with all the Tenderneſs imaginable; but caus'd all thoſe whom he found to be Idolaters to be deſtroy'd. After which turning back, he paſs'd by the Frontiers of the *Indies*, drawing towards *Talaſh*, *Sairam*, *Taſhkänt*, *Samarkant* and *Bucharia*. Firſt of all he took the Towns of *Sairam* and *Taſhkänt*, and detach'd his Son from thence with ſome Troops towards that ſide, where are the Towns of *Turkeſtan* and *Andidſan*; who having made himſelf Maſter of thoſe Cities, came to rejoin his Father after an Abſence of ſix Months. From thence *Ogus Chan* march'd towards *Samarkant*, and after having reduc'd that City, he made himſelf Maſter of all the great *Bucharia*: Then he march'd to the Town of *Balk*, and having likewiſe ſubdu'd it, he advanc'd in the middle of Winter toward that ſide where ſtands the Town of *Chor*; but

OgusChan *conquers* Itburak Chan.

Conquers Turkeſtan, Andigan.

And Great Bucharia.

but as it was extremely cold, and there had fallen abundance of Snow, this March put his Army to infinite Fatigue. In the mean time he continued his Rout, having taken all proper Precautions that none ſhould remain behind. After he had poſſeſs'd himſelf of that Town, he made a Review of his Army in the Spring following; and finding that ſome had abſented themſelves, he cauſed diligent Search to be made in order to know what was become of them; and when they were arriv'd ſome days after, the *Chan* demanded of them where they had been ſo long. To which they anſwer'd, that having follow'd the Army at an eaſy Rate, there fell ſo much Snow one Night that they could not poſſibly re-join it: And as beſides that, all their Horſes and Camels had burſt, they had been oblig'd in ſpite of themſelves, to wait till Spring before they could be able to appear before him. Whereupon the *Chan* gave them the Sirname of *Karlik*, in memory of the Snow ſtopping them on the Road, *Karlik* ſignifying Snow: And it is from theſe People that the *Karliks* deduce their Original.

Ogus Chan reviews his Army.

Great Snow.

Karlik Tribe.

From thence he march'd towards *Cabull Gaſmien*, and *Caſhmir*, which are famous Cities to the North of the *Indies*. The Town of *Caſhmir* was then in Subjection to a very puiſſant Prince called *Jagma*; who upon the News of the March of *Ogus Chan*, poſſeſs'd himſelf of the Avenues of the Mountains and the Banks of the Rivers which are about that Town, and put a Stop to him in this manner for a whole Year. But *Ogus Chan* having at laſt ſurmounted all theſe Difficulties, and defeated his Troops, put him to death; and having taken the City, he put the greater Part of the Inhabitants to the Sword. After which he return'd by the Ci-

Jagma, King of Caſhemir.

ties of *Badagſhan* and *Samarkant* into his hereditary Dominions.

Some time after having taken a Reſolution to go and conquer the Country of *Iran*, where among others, are the Cities of *Sham* and *Miſſer*, he caus'd it to be publiſh'd that all his Men ſhould provide themſelves with Proviſions, becauſe they had a long March to make. After which ſetting forward with numerous Troops near the Town of *Talaſh*, he join'd thoſe of his Army who had ſtaid behind in his March to the *Indies*; and having aſk'd one of them how it came to paſs they had delay'd ſo long coming to him? he made Anſwer, "Our Horſes were "quite ſpent; and for my own part, I was "embarraſs'd with a Wife who was ready to "fall to Pieces without my being able to give "her any thing to eat; and being deliver'd on "the Road, ſhe was ſo reduc'd with Hunger "that ſhe had not Milk to nouriſh her Child, "which oblig'd me to go and kill ſome Game, "and roaſt ſome of the Fleſh for my Wife's "Support, that ſhe might be in a Condition to "give her Infant Suck: This I continued to "do till ſuch time as one of the Officers, com-"manded to gather together the Stragglers of "the Army, lighting upon me, preſs'd me "to repair to the Camp." Whereupon the *Chan* having order'd a Horſe to be given him, with Proviſions, gave him leave to return home, and gave him the Name of *Kall-atz* in memory of that Adventure; for *Kall* ſignifies *left*, and *atz*, *being hungry*. The Poſterity of *Kall-atz*, corruptly call'd *Callatz*, has ſince that time increas'd to that degree, that there are at preſent divers very numerous Branches of them in the Country of *Ma-urenner*, and in the Cities of the Country of *Choraſan* and *Irak*.

Sham, *or* Damaſcus.

Miſſer, *or* Cairo.

Talaſh.

Kall-atz *Tribe.*

Ogus

Ogus Chan decamping from about the Town of *Talaſh*, march'd thro' the Territory of the Cities of *Samarkant* and *Buchara*; and paſſing the River *Amu*, went and laid Siege to the Town of *Choraſſan*. The Country of *Iran* was juſt at that Juncture without a Maſter, for the laſt *Chan*, called *Cajumars*, who was a very powerful Prince, dying before his Son *Hauſhany* was of an Age capable of holding the Reins of Government, the Lords of the Country, taking the Advantage of the Minority of *Hauſhany*, waged War among themſelves; which made the Reducing of *Choraſſan* very eaſy to *Ogus Chan*. From thence he turn'd towards the Cities of *Irak*, *Adirbeindſan*, and *Arméen*; whereof he took ſome by Capitulation, and others by Force. In this Expedition, being in the City of *Sham*, one Day he order'd one of his moſt faithful Attendants to go into the neighbouring Foreſt, and there bury ſecretly, in ſome Part towards the Eaſt, a golden Bow which he put into his hands; but ſo, that only a little Bit of it could be ſeen: which having been executed according to his Commands, he gave him alſo three golden Arrows, with Orders to bury them in like manner; but on the Weſt-ſide of the Foreſt. A Year after, having cauſed his three eldeſt Sons to be called before him, 1. *Kiun*, or the Sun, 2. *Ay*, or the Moon, 3. *Juldus*, or the Star, He ſaid to them, "You know, "my Children, that we are in a ſtrange Country, "where I am ſo overburden'd with Affairs that "I have not time to ſpare for Hunting; there- "fore I would have you go in my ſtead, and "that on the Eaſt-ſide; and do not fail to bring "me all that you are able to take, for there "is a great deal of Game in thoſe Quarters."

Ogus Chan *invades* Iran. Talaſh.

Huſhangh *ſirnam'd* Piſhdad.

Conquers Choraſan. Irak, Adirbengan, Armenia. Sham.

The Adventure of the golden Bow and Arrows.

As ſoon as they were departed, accompany'd by Perſons whom their Father had named for that purpoſe, he order'd his three younger Sons to be called, and commanded them as he had done the others to repair to the Chaſe, but on the Weſt-ſide. Theſe three laſt were called, 1. *Kuck*, or the Heaven, 2. *Tag*, or the Mountain, 3. *Zingis*, or the Sea. The three firſt at their Return, brought to the *Chan*, beſides a great Quantity of Game which they took, the golden Bow which they found: and the three latter, who return'd ſoon after, brought likewiſe the three golden Arrows, with much Game. The *Chan* having caus'd all the Game to be dreſs'd, and much other Victuals to be added to it, gave a great Feaſt on this Occaſion for Joy that his three eldeſt Sons had found a golden Bow, and his three youngeſt Sons three golden Arrows: and he was pleas'd that the three firſt ſhould divide the golden Bow among themſelves, and that the three others ſhould alſo keep each of them his golden Arrow.

OgusChan returns into his Dominions.

Ogus Chan having reſided ſome Years in the Towns he had conquer'd, treated very mildly all thoſe who ſubmitted themſelves; but gave no Quarter to ſuch who were ſo obſtinate as to reſiſt him: After which he put ſtrong Gariſons into all the Cities of Defenſe, and led back his Army into his own Dominions. At his Return, he caus'd to be prepar'd a magnificent Tent adorn'd with golden Apples, curiouſly enrich'd with all ſorts of Stones, and having order'd 900 Horſes, and 9000 Sheep to be kill'd, and 99 Leathern Bottles with Drink to be provided, whereof 9 were fill'd with Brandy, and 90 with Kumiſſe, or Mare's-Milk; he gave a great Regale to his Sons, and all the Lords and Officers of Diſtinction in his Empire. And having thank'd

Makes a great Feaſt.

thank'd his Sons for the inviolable Love and Fidelity which they had always preſerv'd towards him, he beſtow'd on them many Cities, and gave them Subjects of their own: He alſo gave Gratuities to each of the Lords of his Court, and his principal Officers according to their Merits; and as he had his Views in cauſing the golden Bow and Arrows to be bury'd in the Foreſt near *Sham*, he took Occaſion from thence to give his three eldeſt Sons the Name of *Buſſuk*, that is, *broken*, in memory of the golden Bow which they had found and parted among themſelves: and to the three youngeſt he gave the Sirname of *Utz-ock*, that is to ſay, *three Arrows*, in Remembrance of the ſame Adventure: adding, it is not by Chance, but thro' the Will of the living God, that it came to paſs that you found that Bow and thoſe Arrows; and ſeeing our Anceſtors have always believ'd that the Bow ſignify'd the Prince, and the Arrows his Ambaſſadors, becauſe the Arrow muſt fly that way the Bow is drawn, and that my eldeſt Son *Kiun* has found the Bow, he ſhall reign after my Death, and his Deſcendants after him, while there ſhall remain any of the Poſterity of the *Buſſuks*; and thoſe of the Poſterity of the *Utz-ocks* ſhall be their Subjects for ever.

Hence Buſſuktu Chan.

Ogus Chan *propheſies of the Empire of the* Buſſuks.

CHAP. III.

Of the Children of Ogus Chan, *and of their Deſcendants until* Ili Chan.

OGUS CHAN dying after having reign'd 116 Years, his Son *Kiun Chan* ſucceeded him. He had among thoſe of his Council, an old

Kiun Chan *ſucceeds* Ogus Chan.

old Counſeller of his Fathers of the Tribe of the *Vigurs*, who had the Reputation of a Man of great Parts. This Perſon being one Day in private with *Kiun Chan*, repreſented to him that his Father had reign'd 116 Years, and endur'd many Fatigues; only with the View of conquering by his Sword a great Number of Cities and Provinces, and leaving his Poſterity a Name full of Glory: That he ſhould poſſeſs all *that* ſo long as he lived in good Harmony with his Brothers; but that the Moment Diſcord enter'd among them, they would loſe all with their Lives and Honour. After having prepar'd *Kiun Chan* by this Diſcourſe, he added, You are ſix Brothers, each of whom has four Sons; therefore I adviſe you to divide part of that great Number of Cities and Provinces which your Father has left you among your Brothers and their Children, in order to prevent that Jealouſy which will creep in among you, in caſe one hath all, and the reſt nothing: and to this Purpoſe it will be neceſſary, that you order a great Entertainment to be prepar'd, to which all ſhall be invited without Diſtinction; and you may take that Opportunity to divide the Empire with your Brothers and their twenty four Children, in the Preſence of all your Subjects.

Kiun Chan divides his Dominions amongſt his Brothers and their Sons.

Kiun Chan having approv'd of this Council, cauſed that magnificent Tent which he inherited by his Father to be ſet up with ſix other great white Tents on each ſide. After which he cauſed to be erected near theſe Tents, two Trees forty Fathoms high, and a golden Hen to be fix'd on the Top of the Tree, which was planted near the Tents on the right hand; and on the Top of the Tree which was planted near the Tents on the left ſide, a Hen of Silver; ordering, that all thoſe who bore the Name of

Buſſuk, ſhould exerciſe themſelves in ſhooting at the golden Hen running full ſpeed, and that thoſe of the Name of *Utz-ock* ſhould ſhoot in the ſame manner at the ſilver Hen; and he order'd conſiderable Prizes for thoſe who hit the Hen. This Feaſt every way reſembled the laſt which *Ogus Chan* gave, and there were conſumed at this, as well as that, 900 Horſes, 9000 Sheep, 9 Leathern Bottles * of Brandy, and 90 of Kumiſſe: It continued 10 Days and 10 Nights ſucceſſively, and *Kiun Chan* on this Occaſion publickly divided the Inheritance of his Father, not only with his Brothers and their 24 Children, but he alſo aſſign'd a convenient Portion to the other Sons which his Brothers had by their Concubines, which were likewiſe pretty numerous. *Great Feaſts.*

Ogus Chan left ſix Sons; 1. *Kiun Chan*, 2. *Ay Chan*, 3. *Julduſs Chan*, 4. *Kuk Chan*, 5. *Tag Chan*, 6. *Zingis Chan*; each of theſe ſix Brothers had four Sons in lawful Wedlock. The Sons of *Kiun Chan* were called; 1. *Kagi*, 2. *Bayat*, 3. *Alkaaduli*, 4. *Carajuli*. The Sons of *Ay Chan* were called; 1. *Jaſir*, 2. *Japhir*, 3. *Dodurga*, 4. *Dugar*. The Names of the Sons of *Julduſs Chan* were; 1. *Uſhar*, 2. *Kaſik*, 3. *Begdeli*, 4. *Karkin*. The Sons of *Kuk Chan* were called; 1. *Bajender*, 2. *Bazina*, 3. *Zauldor*, 4. *Zabni*. The Sons of *Tag Chan* were called; 1. *Salur*, 2. *Imar*, 3. *Alajunti*, 4. *Uſgar*. The Sons of *Zingis Chan* were named; 1. *Igder*, 2. *Baydus*, 3. *Auwa*, 4. *Kannek*. *Ogus Chan's Children.*

The ſix Sons of *Ogus Chan* had likewiſe each four natural Sons, which make in all twenty four, viz. 1. *Kana*, 2. *Luna*, 3. *Turbati*, 4.

[* *Rather Sheeps Skins, called by the* Spaniards Borrachios.]

Karedi, 5. *Sultanli*, 6. *Okli*, 7. *Kukli*, 8. *Sultzli*, 9. *Haraſanli*, 10. *Jurazi*, 11. *Zamzi*, 12. *Turunco*, 13. *Kumi*, 14. *Surki*, or, as they name it at preſent, *Surchi*, 15. *Kortzik*, 16. *Suerzik*, 17. *Caraſib*, 18. *Kaſquet*, 19. *Kergis*, 20. *Takàn*, 21. *Za*, 22. *Zama*, 23. *Murda*, 24. *Shuy*.

Ay Chan's *Reign.* *Kiun Chan* dying after having reign'd ſeventy Years, his Brother *Ay Chan* ſucceeded him: *Ay Chan* at length alſo dying, had for his Succeſſor *Julduſs Chan*; not his Brother of that Name, but another of the ſame Houſe. *Julduſs Chan* held the Reins of the Empire with great Conduct and Prudence, but he did not live long; and after his Death his Son *Mengli Chan* ſucceeded him, who having alſo reign'd very worthily, dyed in Peace at a great Age, and left the Empire to his Son *Tinjis*; who in his old Age, reſign'd the Crown in favour of his Son *Ill Chan*, that he might employ the remainder of his Days in Exerciſes of Devotion. *Ill Chan* reign'd a long time over the *Mogulls*.

Julduſs Chan.

Mengli Chan.

Tinjis Chan.

Ill Chan.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Life and Reign of Siuntz Chan, *and the Deſtruction of the Empire of the* Mogulls.

Ill Chan *and* Siuntz Chan *Contemporaries.* *ILL Chan* and *Siuntz Chan* reign'd at the ſame time; *Ill Chan* being of the Poſterity of *Mogull Chan*, and *Siuntz Chan* deſcended from *Tatar Chan*. Theſe two Princes were continually at War together, but *Ill Chan* always carry'd away the Victory, which oblig'd *Siuntz Chan* to ſend Ambaſſadors with magnificent Preſents

ſents to the *Chan* of the *Kergis*, who was a Potent Prince, to engage him to come to his Aſſiſtance: but as *Ill Chan* appear'd ſtill too formidable for them both, and *Siuntz Chan* propos'd to make his Part ſo good this time, as to aſſure himſelf of Succeſs in his Enterprize, he took ſuch effectual Methods to raiſe a Jealouſy of the too great Power of *Ill Chan* in the Princes his Neighbours, that they all united with him in order to keep him under. As ſoon as *Ill Chan* receiv'd Advice of this Confederacy, he went and encamp'd in a very advantageous Place and ſo fortify'd himſelf, that notwithſtanding the Confederate Princes attack'd his Camp ſeveral times with all their Forces, they were not able to force it, which oblig'd them to come to a Reſolution to order their Men, that at the Attack which they were to make the next Day, they ſhould, after a ſlight Skirmiſh, throw away their Arms, and every thing they had, and feign a Flight towards a Place where they had planted the beſt of their Troops in Ambuſcade, in order to draw their Enemies into it *. This Stratagem having ſucceeded to their Wiſhes, the Army of *Ill Chan* was ſurrounded on all ſides, in ſuch wiſe that it was entirely cut to Pieces; after which the Allies having with eaſe carry'd the Intrenchments of the *Mogulls*, made all thoſe Priſoners who were ſaved from the Defeat of the Enemy, and utterly ſubverted the Empire of the Deſcendants of *Mogull Chan.*

Chan *of the* Kergis.

Confederacy againſt Ill Chan.

Ill Chan *overthrown.*

The Empire of the Mogulls *deſtroy'd.*

* *A Method of Fighting uſed of old by all the* Scythians.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Of the Fortune of Kajan *and* Nagos, *the only Remains of the Poſterity of* Mogull Chan.

Adventure of Kajan *and* Nagos.

AS ſoon as *Siuntz Chan* had finiſh'd that Expedition he return'd with his Army into his own Country. *Ill Chan* had ſeveral Children, but they all loſt their Lives with him in that unfortunate Battle, except the youngeſt of his Sons called *Kajan*, and his Nephew *Nagos*, his Brother's Son, who were both of an Age, and marry'd in the ſame Year. Theſe two Princes who had been taken Priſoners, ſeeing themſelves with their Wives under the Guard of only one Man, came to a Reſolution after ten Days Captivity, to betake themſelves to Flight with their Wives, and return into their own Country; where being happily arriv'd, they firſt of all appropriated to themſelves all the Camels, Horſes, Cows and Sheep which eſcaped from the Action, having none to diſpute them with them; and judging a while after thoſe Quarters were not over ſecure for them, they took the Clothes which they found on the Field of Battle and retir'd into the Mountains.

They dwell in the Mountain of Irganakon.

They paſs'd in this manner from Mountain to Mountain, till arriving with their Wives and Cattle at the Foot of a very high one, they could find no way to paſs it but a ſmall Path very narrow, made by certain Animals called in the *Tatar* Language *Archara*; and tho they ſearch'd all about the Mountain for another Road, they could find none; which obliged them to make uſe of this Path, tho it was ſo ſtrait

ſtrait there could not paſs above one at a time, and that with the unavoidable hazard of breaking one's Neck at the leaſt falſe Step. Having aſcended the Mountain on one ſide by this Path, they deſcended it alſo on the other ſide by the ſame way, and were not a little rejoiced to find a Landſkip perfectly agreeable, interſperſed with Brooks and charming Meadows, abounding in all ſorts of delicious Fruits: But what pleas'd them moſt was, that beholding it incloſed on all ſides with inacceſſable Mountains, they had room to believe themſelves ſhelter'd from the Purſuits of their Enemies.

Content with their Deſtiny, they fed in this Place, during the Winter, upon the Fleſh of their Beaſts, the Skins of which alſo ſerv'd them for ſeveral Uſes, and in Summer liv'd on Milk-Meats and Fruits. They call'd this Country *Irgana-kon*, in alluſion to its Situation; *Irgana* ſignifying in the old Language of the *Mogulls*, a Valley, and *Kon*, a ſteep Height. After this in proceſs of Time their Poſterity very much increaſed; *Kajan* whoſe Poſterity were moſt numerous, called his Deſcendants *Kajath*; and *Nagos* who had a leſs numerous Iſſue, called one Part of his Deſcendants *Nagoſſer*, and the other Part *Durlagan*. *Kajan* had received the Name which he bore from his Father *Ill Chan*, becauſe all the Children of *Ill Chan* were exceeding robuſt and vigorous Men. *Kajan* ſignifying a Torrent which falls down with Rapidity from the Top of a Rock. Irgana-kon.

Kajan and *Nagos*, and their Deſcendants after them, dwelt in this Place above 400 Years, till finding it at laſt too narrow for them, they made a general Meeting to deliberate upon the State of their Affairs; and foraſmuch as they had learned from their Anceſtors, that the Country behind *Lived in the Mountain 400 Years.*

behind thoſe Mountains from whence *Siuntz Chan* had driven them, was a fine and extenſive Country, they came to a Reſolution to return there; but they were at a Nonplus to find a Road to carry them out of the Incloſure of theſe Mountains, becauſe the Path, by which their Forefathers had found the way into it, was deſtroy'd thro' length of Time: whereupon a Farrier, who thought he had obſerv'd that the Mountain was not over thick in a certain Place, and alſo that it entirely conſiſted of Iron-Mine, propos'd to apply Bellows to it, to try if it was not feaſible to diſſolve this Mountain by Fire.

Melt their way thro' the Mountain. This Counſel having been unanimouſly approv'd of, every one carry'd thither Wood and Charcoal; and having laid round the Foot of the Mountain, one Bed of Wood and another of the Coal, they ſet Fire to it; which they ſo effectually blew up by the help of 70 Leathern Bellows, that the Mountain at laſt coming to melt in this Place, left a Road large enough for the Paſſage of a loaded Camel; and by this Road they all march'd out with great Joy.

Still celebrate the Day of that Sally. To perpetuate the Memory of this miraculous going forth, the *Mogulls* ſtill celebrate the Anniverſary of it with the following Solemnities. They kindle upon that Day a great Fire, wherein they put a Piece of Iron to make it red-hot; after which the *Chan* gives the firſt Stroke with a Hammer upon the Piece of Iron, and then all the Heads of the Tribes and other Officers of Diſtinction, each according to his Rank, give it a Stroke with a Hammer; and when they have done, the common People do as much: which thing is obſerv'd thro' the whole Extent of the Empire of the *Mogulls*, in Remembrance of that Sally.

The

The *Mogulls* had at that time a *Chan* of the Family of *Curlaſs*, of the Poſterity of *Kajan*, call'd *Bertezena*; who immediately after this Sally ſent Embaſſadors to all the neighbouring People, to let them know, that having iſſued out of *Irgana-kon*, he offer'd his Protection to all thoſe who having been heretofore of the Inheritance of the Princes of *Mogull Chan*, ſhould ſubmit themſelves to him; but that he would purſue with Fire and Sword all ſuch as refus'd to return to their Duty: which induced ſome of the People voluntarily to put themſelves under his Government.

Bertezena Chan *ſends Embaſſadors to the neighbouring People to ſubmit.*

In the mean time the Princes, Deſcendants of *Tatar Chan*, being alarm'd with ſo unexpected a Piece of News, did not fail without delay to take up Arms and go in queſt of *Bertezena Chan*; but he entirely defeated them, and put to the Sword all the *Tatars* capable of bearing Arms, who upon this occaſion fell into his Hands; giving Quarter to none but the young People whom he divided among his *Mogulls*: This happen'd juſt 450 Years after the Name of the *Mogulls* had been loſt by the Defeat of *Ili Chan*: And notwithſtanding the *Tatar* Nation was much more numerous than that of the *Mogulls*, the neighbouring *Aimacks*, or Tribes, induced by the Victory which theſe latter had obtain'd, without more ado put themſelves under the Protection of *Bertezena Chan*, which augmented his Forces conſiderably.

The Poſterity of Tatar Chan *defeated by* Bertezena Chan.

Tatars *more numerous than the* Mogulls. Aimack, *or Tribe.*

There was a Man in the City of *Caſwin*, call'd * *Chodſa Raſhidt*, who reports in his Writings, that there was one of the Deſcendants of *Taulai Chan*, the Son of *Zingis Chan*, who reigning in the Country of *Iran*, was the firſt of *Mogull*

* Choga Raſhid, *the ſame as* Fadlallah, *Author of the Hiſtory of the* Mogulls *and* Tatars.

Extrac-

Extraction who embrac'd the Religion of the *Mahometans*, which is the true one. This was *Gaſan Chan*, Son of *Argun Chan*, Son of *Abka Chan*, Son of *Halacu Chan*, Son of *Taulai Chan*; he built a City for himſelf to reſide in, but we know not the Name of it: and the Year after he came to the Crown of thoſe Provinces, he ſaid to *Chodſa Raſhidt*, who was of his Council, " God be prais'd the *Mahometan* Worſhip is " well eſtabliſh'd among us; and ſince the time " that my great Grandfather *Halacu Chan* came " from the Country of the *Mogulls* to reign o- " ver theſe Provinces, there have paſs'd two or " three Generations: Wherefore it is neceſſary " that I ſhould order a Book to be compiled of " the Families, Religion and Cuſtoms of our " *Mogulls* to leave it to Poſterity; and as it is " not poſſible for me to ſet about it my ſelf, " and that I have no body but you who is ca- " pable of doing it well, I intend to put into " your hands all the Books which I have rela- " ting to that Matter; and ſeeing they are " written in the *Mogull* Language, I will join " to your Aſſiſtance one of the Lords of my
Fulat, or Pulad. " Court, called *Fulat*, ſurnamed *Zabixang*, who " underſtands perfectly that Language, to the " end that you may carry on that Work with " Succeſs:" In which *Chodſa Raſhidt* having
An. Dom. 1302. obey'd his Maſter, he finiſh'd that Book in the Year 702, and called it *Dſamaſtavaroh*. 'Tis
Gami al Tawarik. from that Book, and 17 others, that I *Abulgaſi Bayadur Chan* have extracted the Contents of mine, which I begun to write 372 Years after *Chodſa Raſhidt*. 'Tis true that in that Interval there are to be found many Writers who have been pleaſed to meddle with it; but as they did not underſtand the different Languages which they ſtood in need of on that occaſion, they

they have committed groſs Faults, and have in a manner entirely confounded the Generations. Wherefore having been obliged for certain Reaſons to remain a whole Year in the Country of the *Calmacks*, I have had Opportunity to learn the Language of the *Mogulls*; and the reaſon why I have written this Book in the *Mogull* or *Turkiſh* Language, without meddling with the others, is that it may be every where in uſe; and if God ſpares me my Life, I am reſolv'd to tranſlate it hereafter into the *Perſian*.

Calmacks *and* Mogulls *the ſame Language.*

I come now to treat of the principal Tribes which compoſe the *Turkiſh* Nation; and in the firſt place, I ſhall ſpeak of the Tribes which have no Connexion with the *Mogulls*, deſcended from *Kajan* and *Nagos:* and after that, I ſhall treat of thoſe which deduce their Origin from the *Mogulls*, ſince their ſallying out of *Irganakon*.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Tribes of Kanklis, Kipzaks, Kall-atz, *and* Carliks.

THERE are five *Aimacks* or Tribes which derive their Name from *Ogus Chan*, whereof there is only one, *viz.* the Tribe of the *Vigurs*, which ſprung from the Poſterity of *Mogull Chan*. The four others are the Tribe of the *Kanklis*, the Tribe of the *Kipzaks*, the Tribe of the *Kall-atz*, and the Tribe of the *Carliks*; of which ſomething has been hinted in the Life of *Ogus Chan*.

The Tribe of the *Kall-atz* dwells among the *Turcmanns*, in the Country of *Ma-urenner*, and the Province of *Choraſſan*.

Kall-atz *Tribe.* Turkmanns.

The

Kipzaks *Tribe.* The Tribe of the *Kipzaks* has always inhabited the Banks of the Rivers *Tin*, *Atell* and *Jaigik*.

Kanklis *Tribe.* The Tribe of the *Kanklis* dwelt for ſome time jointly with the *Turcmanns* in the ſandy Deſarts; but when theſe laſt went to live in Towns, the *Kanklis* went and dwelt about the Rivers *Iſſikul*, and *Tallaſh*; where they have inhabited a long while.

Now Tekees *and* Ila.

Vigiſh Chan *of* Chowarazm. *Sultan* Mohammed *his Son.* *Vigiſh Chan* of *Urgens*, having eſpouſed a Wife out of this Tribe called *Turkan*, he had by her one Son, who was called afterwards *Sultan Mahamet Shah* of *Charaſs'm*, and came to be a Prince exceeding powerful *: He uſually reſided in the City of *Urgens*, and had obliged all the neighbouring Countries to ſubmit to him, *viz.* on the Eaſt-ſide the *Indies* and *Bucharia*; on the North-ſide the Towns of *Turkeſtan* and *Andidſan*; Southward the Country of ‡ *Arabiſtan*, and Weſtward the Country of *Ruhm*: he conferr'd many Favours on thoſe of the Tribe of *Kanklis*, for the ſake of his Mother. His Uncle *Chamar*, Brother to his Mother, coming to ſee him, and turning *Mahometan*, he placed him at the Head of his Council. *Inallzik*, who was his Mother's Couſin-Germain, being Brothers Children, having likewiſe come to pay his Court to him, he honour'd him with the Name of

Or Andigan.

‡ *That is, all poſſeſſed by the* Arabs *on this ſide* Gihun, *except* Arabia.

* *This Prince, whoſe Anceſtors were rais'd ſucceſſively from being Slaves to the Governor of the Country of* Charaſs'm *to the Government, and from the Government to the Sovereignty of the Country, always retain'd the Name of* Shah *of* Charaſs'm, *tho he poſſeſs'd in a manner all* Perſia *and the* Great Bucharia, *with part of the* Armenias *and* Syria. *He mounted to ſo great Power, upon the Decay of the Grandeur of the* Selgiukid *Sultans; the laſt of which he put to death, notwithſtanding he and his Anceſtors ow'd all their Fortune to the Favours of the Princes of that Houſe.*

[*This is the ſame Prince, who is called by moſt other Authors* Tacaſh.]

Gagir

Gagir Chan, and gave him the Property of the Town of *Turkeſtan*,* after he had embrac'd *Mahometiſm*. Another Man of the Tribe of the *Kanklis*, call'd *Kuk*, repairing alſo to Court, he conferr'd on him the Government of the *Great Bucharia*, and gave him the Title of *Kuk-Chan*. Turkeſtan *under Sultan* Mohammed.

There were between 50 and 60000 Men of the Tribe of *Kanklis*, who put themſelves in Subjection to Sultan *Mahamet*, *Schah* of *Charaſs'm*; but there remain'd about 10000 along the Banks of the Rivers *Iſſikull* and *Tallaſh*, whom *Zingis Chan* put to the Sword, when he went to make War againſt Sultan *Mahamet*. Nevertheleſs there have ſprung up ſince then ſome of that Tribe, without any one being able to find out from whence they came. 10000 *Families of the* Kanklis *put to the Sword by* Zingis Chan.

Thoſe of the Tribe of *Carliks*, have always inhabited the Mountains of the Country of the *Mogulls*, living on the Produce of their Lands and Herds. They elected their *Chans* out of their Tribe, and might make in all 20000 Families; but *Zingis Chan* coming to the Empire, and having conquer'd many neighbouring Towns and Provinces, ſent a Man named *Berlas Koplay-Noyan* on an Embaſſy to the *Carliks*, to perſuade them to ſubmit to him. Whereupon *Arſlan Chan*, who was at that time their Prince, took a Reſolution to go and offer him a very pretty Daughter which he had, with very magnificent Preſents, and to put himſelf under his Protection. In Requital of which, *Zingis Chan* gave him one of his Couſins in Marriage: But when he was gone back, he ſaid it was too much to call him *Arſlan Chan*, and that the Name of *Arſlan-Syrak* fitted him better; for the *Mogulls* make uſe of the Term *Syrak*, ſignifying a poor ſpirited Perſon, when they would ſpeak of a Carliks *ſubmit.* Arſlan Chan *of the* Carliks.

* *This ſeems to have been after* Kutſhluk's *Death.*

Tagicks. ſort of Men whom they call *Tadſicks*; becauſe thoſe *Tadſicks* are a very ſimple People.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Tribe of the Vigurs.

The true Country of the Mogulls. IN the Dominions of the *Mogulls* there are found two Chains of very high Mountains which extend from the Eaſt to the Weſt, of which one is called *Tugra Tubuſluk*, and the other *Uskun Luk Tugra:* Between theſe two Chains of Mountains, towards the Weſt, lies the true Country of the *Mogulls*, and beyond that more Weſtward yet is another Mountain which they call *Kutt:* between theſe three Mountains the *Vigurs* inhabited heretofore; and as one finds in this Country ten Rivers on one ſide, and nine on the other, one part of the *Vigurs*, call'd *Un-Vigurs*, inhabited about the aforeſaid ten Rivers, and the other part dwelt about the other nine Rivers, and theſe laſt bore the Name of *Tokos Vigurs:* They got theſe different Names from the Number of the Rivers about which they inhabited; *Un* ſignifying in the *Turkiſh* Language ten, and *Tokos* nine.

Now Uluk-tag, *and* Kitzik-tag.

Now Chaltay.

Country of the Vigurs.

Vigurs *at firſt had no* Chans. Theſe two Kindred Tribes poſſeſs'd a great Number of Towns, Villages and Subjects, without having Chans, notwithſtanding they were numerous, conſiſting of more than 120 particular Branches: At length a great Diſſenſion ariſing amongſt them, they reſolv'd to chooſe two ſeparate Kings; in purſuance of which Reſolution, the *Un-Vigurs* elected a Prince of their Tribe called *Mangatati*, to whom they gave the Sur-

Divide and chooſe two Kings.

name of *Il-ittar*; and the *Tokos Vigurs* choſe al- Il-ittar.
ſo a Prince of their Tribe, whom they call'd *Il-* Il-irgin.
irgin: Theſe Princes and their Deſcendants reign'd more than 100 Years over the *Vigurs*, preſerving always the ſame Name which the firſt Princes bore. After which theſe two Tribes coming to unite together, had but one and the ſame Prince whom they call'd *Idi-kut*, ſignifying Idi-kut.
in the *Turkiſh* Tongue, *ſent by the Spirit*: *Idi* i. e. *ſent by the Spirit.*
importing, *being ſent*, and *Kut*, the *Spirit or Soul*:
But in the Language of the *Uſbeks*, it is as much as to ſay, *a free Man who is not ſubject to any body.*

Theſe two united People lived together in theſe Mountains almoſt 2000 Years in Peace; but in the End a new Difference ariſing among them, they ſeparated for good and all; one part of them remaining in thoſe Diſtricts, and the other going to inhabit about the Banks of the River *Irtis*. Theſe laſt divided once more into three Branches, whereof one went and dwelt in the Town of *Biſhbalik*, and ſubſiſted by cultivating the Lands thereabout. The ſecond diſpers'd themſelves in the Neighbourhood of that Town, feeding upon their Cattle; and the third Branch continued beſide the *Irtis*, living by Fiſhing and Hunting of Zibelines, Caſtors, Martins, Squirrels, and ſuch like Beaſts, of which they eat the Fleſh, and employ'd the Skins to make them Clothes, becauſe they were always accuſtom'd to go clad with nothing but what was made of Skins: Theſe laſt conceiv'd ſo great a Hatred to that ſort of Life which their Brethren had choſen, that it was a great Curſe among them, to wiſh a Man to be reduc'd to live among Men who fed upon Beaſts, eat their Meat dreſs'd, and chang'd Garb.

Live united for 2000 Years.
Separate again.
Biſhbalik.
R. Irtis.
Vigurs *Curſe.*

Banerzick Idi-kut Chan.

Cavar Chan *of* Turkeſtan.

Vigurs *about the* Irtis *expert in the* Turkiſh, *and in Writing.*

Employ'd as Secretaries by Zingis Chan *and his Succeſſors.*

Banerzik Idi-kut Chan, who was their Prince in the Time of *Zingis Chan*, ſubmitted to this Conqueror, to ſecure himſelf againſt *Cavar Chan* of *Turkeſtan*, and every Year ſent him conſiderable Preſents; he came alſo in Perſon to join him with a good Number of Troops, when he went to attack Sultan *Mahamet Shah* of *Charaſs'm*; and as there were among the *Vigurs* many Perſons ſkill'd in the *Turkiſh* Language, and expert at the Pen, *Zingis Chan* made uſe of them to very good purpoſe in all his Expeditions as Secretaries to the Chancery; and the Princes his Deſcendants, who reign'd after him in the Country of *Ma-urenner*, and over the Cities of *Irak* and *Choraſſan*, continued for a long time to make uſe of them in that Quality. *Ugadai Chan*, among others, having ſucceeded his Father in the Empire of the *Mogulls*, conferr'd the Government of the Province of *Choraſſan*, *Maſanderan*, and *Gilan*, on a Man of that Tribe, call'd *Vigur Kurgur*, who gave him an Account every Year of all the Revenues of the Cities of his Government.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Tribes of the Takrins; *of the* Kergis, *of the* Camcamzuts, *and of the* Ur-mankatts.

Takrins.

Zingis Chan having begun to make himſelf formidable, ſent an Ambaſſador to the *Takrins*, with Orders to ſay, "God has made "me a very puiſſant Prince, and the three "Parts

" Parts of the World obey my Orders; where-
" fore I expect that you will ſubmit to my Go-
" vernment." Thereupon their Prince, called *Bugai-Zinantz Chan*, came to a Reſolution to promiſe him Obedience, and having a very pretty Daughter, he ſent her to him with magnificent Preſents. *Zingis Chan* having receiv'd the Maid and the Preſents, caus'd the Embaſſadors of *Bugai-Zinantz Chan* to be very ſplendidly entertain'd, and plac'd his Daughter among the Number of his Wives. After the Death of *Zingis Chan*, his Son *Ugadai Chan*, tho he had already many Wives, yet found ſo much Beauty in this Daughter of *Bugai-Zinantz Chan*, who had been one of his Father's Wives, that he marry'd her, and lov'd her better than all his other Wives.

Bugai-Zinantz Chan *of* Kergis *ſubmits to* Zingis Chan.

Ugadai Chan *marries one of his Father's Wives.*

The Tribe of the *Kergis* was none of the moſt numerous at firſt; but as it poſſeſs'd a Country very agreeable, full of Rivers and fertile Fields, many of the *Mogulls* and other People came and join'd themſelves with this Tribe; which conſiderably increas'd the Number of its Families. In the Time of *Zingis Chan*, the *Kergis* had a Prince called *Uruſs Inall*, to whom *Zingis Chan* ſent two Embaſſadors call'd *Altai* and *Taramiſh*, to ſummon him to ſubmit himſelf. This Prince finding himſelf too weak to run the Hazard of drawing ſo formidable a Neighbour upon his Back, was oblig'd to comply with the Times, and do what was demanded of him. Purſuant to which, having diſmiſs'd the Embaſſadors, he ſent back with them one of his chief Officers, charg'd with magnificent Preſents for *Zingis Chan*; among which there was a Bird all white, having only the Feet, Eyes, and the Bill red. This Bird is called in the *Turkiſh* Language *Shungar*, but the *Ruſſians* call it *Kratzſhet*.

Kergis.

Uruſs Inall, *Prince of the* Kergis.

Submits to Zingis Chan.

Strange Bird, by the Turks Shungar, *by the* Ruſſians Kratzſhet.

Camcamzut *Towns.* There are two Towns call'd *Camcamzut*, which are very near one another, between two great Rivers; whereof one is call'd *Selanga*, and the other *Ikar-muran.* Beſides theſe, there are also two other Towns upon the Frontiers of the *Kergis*, both of them call'd *Apruſir.*

Apruſir *Towns, No ſuch at preſent.*

There is a particular Tribe of People which are call'd *Ur-mankatts*, becauſe they dwell in the Places moſt remote and full of Foreſts: They are Neighbours to the *Kergis*, and ſubmitted as well as thoſe to *Zingis Chan.* There is alſo another Tribe of the ſame Name, but quite different from this; tho the People belonging to it lead much the ſame Courſe of Life. Theſe laſt are of the Poſterity of *Mogull Chan*, by his Grandſon *Ogus Chan*; and that Name has been given them alſo becauſe of their living always in the Foreſts.

Ur-mankatts *ſubmit to* Zingis Chan.

Another Tribe of the ſame Name, but different.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Tribe of the Tatars.

Tatar *Tribe.* THE Tribe of the *Tatars* is one of the moſt antient and famous of the *Turkiſh* Nations; it was heretofore above 70000 Families ſtrong, and had only one *Chan* who was very potent; But being afterwards divided into ſeveral Branches, its Power by degrees began to decline. The principal Branch of the *Tatars* went and dwelt towards the Borders of *Kitay*, in the Country of *Biurnaver*, and was brought in Subjection to the Empire of *Kitay.* But the *Tatars* of this Branch revolting ſome time after, the Emperor of *Kitay* was oblig'd to make a ſevere War upon them before he could bring them again to their Duty; which has very often been the Caſe with them ſince.

Biurnaver *Country ſubject to* Kitay.

Ano-

Another Branch of the Tribe of the *Tatars* went and ſettled upon the Banks of the River *Ikar*, or *Ikran Muran:* This River glides along the Frontiers of the *Kergis*, and having receiv'd thereabouts the Waters of many other Rivers, inlarges it ſelf conſiderably, and at laſt after a long Courſe falls into the *Azoch-Zingis*, or bitter Sea. Near its Mouth there is a great Town, which commands ſeveral ſmall ones thereabouts, call'd *Alachzin*, that is to ſay, *pied*; becauſe the Inhabitants of that Town have none but pied Horſes: All the People who inhabit the neighbouring Lands, and breed great Numbers of Beaſts, are ſubject to this Town *. The Horſes found in this Country are of a very tall ſize, a Colt of a Year old being as large as a Horſe of three Years old elſewhere; and more than that, they are all pied. There are rich ſilver Mines in the Neighbourhood of that Town; and 'tis for that reaſon that nothing is ſeen there but ſilver Plate. The *Usbeks* know by Tradition, that there is a Nation in ſome part of the World that makes uſe of nothing but Gold or Silver Plate, and has none but pied Horſes; but they cannot ſay preciſely where that Nation is.

River Ikar. *now* Jeniſea.

Alachzin *Town.*

Pied Horſes.

A Tradition.

After the Death of *Zingis Chan*, the *Kergis*, with ſome other neighbouring People, fell to the Share of *Taulai Chan*; who dying ſome time after, his favourite Spouſe call'd *Siurchochtny-begi*, ſole Mother of all his Children, having the Charge of the Regency of the Country, caus'd three Officers of Diſtinction to embark with 1000 choſen Men, to go upon the Diſcovery of this Country; with Orders, if they found a favourable Opportunity, to make War

Attempt to diſcover the Country beyond Alachzin.

* *The* Ruſſians *have a Tradition like this of a pied People ſome where in* Siberia. *See* Vol. II.

with the Inhabitants of *Alachzin*; but if they did not, that then at leaſt they ſhould not return, without bringing home ſome Informations that might be depended upon of the true State of that Country. Theſe Officers having departed with theſe Inſtructions, return'd a long time after with 300 Men, which remain'd of the 1000 they had at ſetting out, and gave an Account that all which was ſaid of theſe People was true; but that the Air was ſo unwholeſom there that they had loſt the greateſt part of their Men, who were not accuſtom'd to the Intemperature of that Climate. That indeed they had found Silver ſufficient to load their Veſſels with it; but as they were oblig'd to ſail up the River againſt the Stream in their Return, they had been forc'd to throw it all away for want of Hands.

Fictitious Relation.

Plenty of Silver.

CHAP. X.

Of the Tribe of the Virats, *and its ſeveral Branches.*

I MUST take notice here by the by, that the *Turks* in their antient Language call all great Rivers *Sai*; the *Tadſicks* call the ſmall Rivers *Ruth*, and the great ones *Ruth Canna*, The *Arabians* call the great Rivers *Uwady*, and the *Mogulls* name them *Muran*.

Tagicks.

In the Country of the *Mogulls*, there are on the Eaſt-ſide eight Rivers, which all fall into the great River *Ikar*, or *Ikran Muran*, and they call them all by one common Name, *Sekir Muran*, or Eight Rivers, of which theſe

Country of the Virats.

are

are the Names; 1. *Kok Muran*, 2. *On Muran*, 3. *Cara Uſſun*, 4. *Sebikan*, 5. *Ikran Muran*, 6. *Akar Muran*, 7. *Zagan Muran*, 8. *Chodſa Muran*: About theſe Rivers heretofore dwelt the *Virats*.

In the Time of *Zingis Chan*, thoſe of the Tribe of the *Virats* had a Prince called *Tochta-begi*, who had two Sons; one call'd *Inalzi*, and the other *Tauranzi*. This *Chan* and his two Sons, after having for a good while maintain'd War againſt *Zingis Chan*, were in the end vanquiſh'd, and the *Virats* reduc'd under the Subjection of the *Mogulls*. The *Torgauts*, the *Kuriſs*, and the *Utulaſs* draw their Origin from the Tribe of the *Virats*; but they have ſeparated and form'd particular Branches. The *Torgauts* bear that Name, becauſe they inhabit beyond a Country call'd *Salika*, which is beyond the Country of the *Mogulls*, which has given them the Name of *Torga-ut*.

Tochtabegi, *Prince of the Virats, reduced by* Zingis Chan. Torgauts. Kuriſs. Utulaſs. Salika.

The *Tumats* are likewiſe ſprung from the Tribe of the *Virats*: They dwell upon the Borders of the *Kergis*, in the Country of *Barkutzin-tugum*, and had in the Reign of *Zingis Chan* a Prince call'd *Tatula Sukar Chan*, who was obliged to ſubmit himſelf to the *Mogulls*.

Tumats *inhabit the Country of* Barcutzin-tugum.

The *Boygazins* and the *Hirmuzins* are alſo two Branches of the Tribe of the *Virats*; they dwell in the neighbourhood of the *Kergis*, and are very peaceable People.

Boygazins *and* Hirmuzins.

The *Telanguts*, the *Oraſuts*, and the *Kuſſut-maits* are alſo ſprung from the *Virats*; tho they bear different Names. They have all along been renown'd for their Skill in Phyſick and in Magick, and for being great Hunters and good Fiſhers: Accordingly they always have dwelt by the ſides of Rivers, and in Foreſts.

Telanguts, Oraſuts, *and* Kuſſumaits *skill'd in Magick and Phyſick.*

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

Of the Tribe of the Naimanns, *of the* Caraits, *of the* Unguts, *and of the* Turkaks.

Naimanns. THE Tribe of the *Naimanns* is very antient, and very rich; but I am a Stranger to their Origin and Government. The firſt of their Princes that I have come to the Knowledge of, was called *Karkiſh Chan*; who had his Son *Abjath* for his Succeſſor after his Death.

Carakum *the Country of the* Naimanns. In the Reign of *Zingis Chan*, they were govern'd by a Prince call'd *Taijan Chan*, who had a Son called *Kutſhluk*; they dwelt in a Country of the *Mogulls* called *Cara Kum*, or Black Sand, and had not the Cuſtom of cultivating their Lands.

Cara-its. The Term *Cara-it*, ſignifies *ſwarthy*; and inaſmuch as there was a Father who had ſeven Sons all of a ſwarthy Complexion, they called their Poſterity *Cara-its*. This Tribe is very antient, and was heretofore very numerous and rich in Cattle. It had its own particular Government, and dwelt in the neighbourhood of the *Naimanns*. Among the other Princes of the *Cara-its*, there was one of them called *Margus Illi Chan*, who had two Sons, of which the eldeſt was called *Korzacur*, and Sirnamed *Buſruk*, ſucceeded his Father. The eldeſt Son and Succeſſor of *Korzacur* was called *Tayrell*; but the Emperors of *Kitay* gave him the Name of *Aunak*, which imports, in the Language of *Kitay*, Emperor. This is the ſame *Aunak Chan* of the *Caraits*, of whom we ſhall ſpeak in the Hiſtory of *Zingis Chan*.

Margus Illi. Korzacur.

Tayrell, *or* Aunak Chan *of the* Caraits.

Chineſe *Wall.* Thoſe of *Kitay* have built a great Wall to cover their Country, in which there are two Iron Gates for the Paſſage of the Merchants and other Travellers. This Wall is call'd *Sat* in *Ara-*

Arabick, which ſignifies *Fortreſs*; in the antient *Turkiſh* Language it is called *Turk-urga*, and in the Language of *Kitay*, *Ungu*. * *Alexander the Great* cauſed a like Wall to be raiſed to cover the Frontiers of his Dominions; but it was compoſed of all ſorts of Metals. His deſign by this Wall, was to hinder the Nation of *Jadſutz-Madzuth* from carrying their Ravages into the Lands under his Dominion, where they had done great Miſchief in Times paſt. 'Tis a general Tradition with the *Tatars*, that thoſe People have the Muzzle of a Dog; and that this Wall being made up of all ſorts of Metals, they did indeed all in their Power to make a Paſſage thro' it by dint of Licking; but they could not ſucceed: That nevertheleſs before the Day of Judgment, they ſhall come and lick their way thro' the Wall; and that then they ſhall do a great deal of Miſchief in the World. *Nau-Shirwanadill*, Sultan of *Shamachy*, cauſed in like manner a Wall of Earth to be built round about his Kingdom.

Alexander's *Wall*

Jadſutz-Madzuth, *i. e.* Gog *and* Magog.

Nau-Shirwan *the Juſt's Wall.*

The Iron Gates which are in the Wall of *Kitay*, are called *Timurchanai*: The Emperors of that Country engaged one entire *Turkiſh* Tribe for great Wages in their Service to guard this Wall and the Gates, which give Entrance into the Empire of *Kitay* by this Wall. This Guard has been entertain'd for a long time, and becauſe of the great Wages which it gets, they have given this Tribe the Name of *Ungutti*, which is as much as to ſay in the *Mogull* Language, *Men who are well to paſs*. In the Time of *Zingis Chan* this Tribe might conſiſt of about

Gates of the great Wall call'd Timurchanai.

Ungutti *Tribe, the ſame as* Ancout.

* Alexander the Great *is the true* Amadis *of the Oriental Hiſtorians; they name him* Iskander, *and vent as many blind Stories upon that Head as would fill many great Volumes. The Curious may find ſome Samples of them in the Voyages of* Olearius.

4000

4000 Families under a Prince called *Alakus*, who having made an Alliance with *Zingis Chan*, contributed much to render the Conqueſt of the Empire of *Kitay* eaſy to him, for going to meet him when he approach'd the Frontiers of that Empire with his Army, he gave him a free Entrance by the Wall.

Kitay *divided into two Parts.*

Cara Kitay.

The Empire of *Kitay* is divided into two Parts; the firſt is called *Cara Kitay*, but that is enough of this Matter for the preſent. The Inhabitants of *Cara Kitay* having revolted againſt the Emperor of *Kitay*, a great part of them abandon'd their Country and retir'd near the *Kergis*; but the *Kergis* having pillag'd them, they reſolv'd to go and dwell in the Country of *Atill*, and built there a Town, living by cultivating the Lands thereabouts: And foraſmuch as it ſucceeded with them very well, many neighbouring Families went and joined them; ſo that they were able to make up 40000 Families.

Part of the Carakitayans *ſettle elſewhere.*

Atill *Country.*

Cara Kitay *conquer'd by the* Chan *of* Gurgut.

About the ſame time the *Chan* of *Dſurdſut* declar'd War againſt the Inhabitants of *Cara Kitay*, and having defeated them, made himſelf Maſter of the Country, inſomuch that the Prince of *Cara Kitay*, called *Nuſi Taigir Ili*, who was a Prince of much Merit, was oblig'd to retire among the *Kergis*, and from thence to a Town of *Kitay*, call'd *Imill*, which happen'd in the Year 573. Two Years after, when the Place of his Retreat was known, one *Illik Chan*, of the Poſterity of *Aſraſiap Chan*, who kept his Reſidence in the Town of *Jalaſagan*, which is called by the *Mogulls Chambalik*, or the good Town, *Cham* importing in the Language of the *Mogulls* good, and *Balik* a Town; ſeeing himſelf hardly preſs'd by thoſe of the Tribe of the *Kanklis*, who dwelt in the neighbourhood of that Town, and who had ruin'd all the Lands which

Imill *in* Kitay, An. Dom. 1177.

Illik Chan.

which he had cauſed to be cultivated, ſent to *Nuſi Taigir Ili* to deſire his Aſſiſtance, and offer to reſign to him the Sovereignty of that Town.

Nuſi Taigir Ili having accepted this Offer, march'd to his Aſſiſtance, and taking the Government into his Hands, he chang'd the Name of *Illik Chan* into that of *Illik Turkmann*, and took himſelf the Name of *Cavar Chan*, or Grand Seigneur; after which he conquer'd the Towns of *Andidſan*, *Taſhkant* and *Turkeſtan*, but rais'd the Siege before *Samarkant*, becauſe the Inhabitants of that Town obliged themſelves to pay him an annual Tribute. After he was return'd into his Dominions, he ſent one of his Generals called *Arys*, with a numerous Army on the ſide of the City of *Urgens*; who having plunder'd all the adjacent Parts about that Place, conſtrain'd *Vigiſh Chan* of *Urgens* to agree the Matter with his Maſter, by a Tribute of 20000 Dinars of Gold, which he promis'd to pay yearly to *Cavar Chan*, and which he paid indeed very regularly till his Death. But his Son *Mahamet* coming to ſucceed his Father, would no longer pay that Contribution, which cauſing a War between them, Sultan *Mahamet*, notwithſtanding he had gather'd all his Forces, and that his Dominions extended as far as the Country of *Ruhm*, was defeated by *Cavar Chan*, and conſtrain'd to fly for Shelter to the Tribe of *Kanklis*, until he had found means to make a new Agreement with *Cavar Chan*.

Nuſi Taigir Ili, or Cavar Chan.

Conquers Andigan, Taſhkant and Turkeſtan.

Makes Samarkant Tributary.

Plunders Urgens.

Conſtrains Vigiſh Chan of Cowarazm to pay him an annual Tribute.

Defeats Sultan Mohamed.

I know not from whence or from what *Turkiſh* Tribe the *Turkaks* are deriv'd; the word *Turkak*, ſignifies in the *Turkiſh* Language, a Guard; for among the *Turks*, while one half of the Guards of the Night repoſe themſelves, the other half which is on Duty, muſt always beat upon ſomething which may give a Sound, that

Turkaks, i. e. a Guard.

that one may know they are on the Watch; and when he who is on Duty has a mind to be reliev'd, he ſays to the other *Turkak*; that is to ſay, get up and beat: *Tur* ſignifying, *get up*; and *kak*, *beat*. This Tribe has increas'd exceedingly by length of Time.

We have treated hitherto of the different *Turkiſh* Tribes which draw their Origin ſome where elſe than from the Deſcendants of *Kajan* and *Nagos*; we come now to the Tribe of the *Mogulls* and other Tribes which are Branches of it.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Tribe of the Mogulls.

Kajan Nagos.

I HAVE remark'd above, that when *Ill Chan* was defeated by the Princes of the Poſterity of *Tatar Chan*, that there were none of his whole Army who eſcaped, but *Kajan* his youngeſt Son, and *Nagos* his Nephew, who went and ſettled themſelves among the Mountains; and the Deſcendants of *Kajan* took the Surname of *Kajat*, and thoſe of *Nagos* took that of *Durlagan*, or *Nagoſler*, which occaſion'd them in a little time to loſe their true Names.

Kajat, Durlagan, Nagoſler.

There was a Woman of the Tribe of *Kajan*, and of the Poſterity of *Curlaſs*, who brought forth three Children at a time without having had Commerce with any Man; of which I ſhall ſpeak more fully in the end of this Book. From theſe three Sons ſprung a numerous Tribe which took the Surname of *Nircha*, which ſignifies in the Language of the *Mogulls*, a pure Family, in memory

Nircha Tribe.

memory that the firſt Founders of this Tribe were born without any Commerce with Man.

Cabul Chan, Great Grandfather of *Zingis Chan*, had ſix Sons, all great Warriors; from whence they had the Name of *Kajat*. The eldeſt of theſe ſix Brothers was called *Borton Chan*, and had a Son called *Jeſſugi-Bayadur*, who had a red *Border* between the Black and White of his Eyes, for which reaſon they gave to his Deſcendants the Surname of *Borzugan Kajat*, becauſe the *Mogulls* call ſuch Perſons *Borzugan*. *Jeſſugi Bayadur Chan* was the Father of *Zingis Chan*. There is no Perſon at preſent in all the *Turkiſh* Nation who can have any Knowledge of theſe Circumſtances, which are known to none but to me *Abulgaſi Bayadur Chan*.

Kajat.

Borzugan Kajat.

A ſtrange Teſtimony.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Tribes of the Markats, *the* Kunkurats, *the* Ankarahs, *the* Allaknuts, *the* Caranuts, *the* Curlaſs, *the* Ilzigans, *the* Ummauts, *the* Cunnachmars, *the* Arlats, *the* Calkits, *and the* Kiſhliks.

THOSE of the Tribe of the *Markats* had in the Time of *Zingis Chan*, a *Chan* called *Tochtabegi*, who was always at variance with *Zingis Chan*; and one time among others that *Zingis Chan* was abſent, *Tochtabegi* invaded his Lands, and carry'd away his Wives and his Subjects with all that fell into his Hands. Another time *Zingis Chan* himſelf, as he was taking a Walk, was made Priſoner by *Tochtabegi*, who lay

Markats *Tribe.*

Toctabegi Chan *of the* Markats.

Takes Zingis Chan *Priſoner.*

lay in ambuſcade for that purpoſe; but his Subjects ranſom'd him for a great Sum of Money.

There was a Man of the Poſterity of *Kajan*, who had three Sons, 1. *Zurluk Mergan*, 2. *Cabayſhira*, 3. *Busjuday*. *Zurluk Mergan*, who was exceeding dextrous at ſhooting with the Bow, falling out one time with his younger Brother, they agreed between themſelves to fight on Horſeback with Bows and Arrows; and being arriv'd at the Place of Rendezvous, Fear ſeiz'd *Cabayſhira* juſt in the Inſtant they were going to advance againſt each other: Wherefore bowing himſelf down all on one ſide of the Horſe, he was content to hold his Bow ſtrait before him, ſuppoſing he would be ſhelter'd by the large Creſt of his Horſe. This Poſture rais'd Compaſſion in his eldeſt Brother, who reſolv'd, ſeeing he was his Brother, not to kill him, as he might eaſily have done, and to forgive him for his Fear, *only ſtriking off the Pendant at his Ear*; which he did ſo dextrouſly, that he *did not ſo much as touch his Ear, leaving alſo the Jewel unhurt at which the Pendant hung.* The ſame *Zurluk Mergan* had afterwards a Son called *Kunkurat*, from whom the Tribe of the *Kunkurats* draw their Origin.

Kunkurat *Tribe.*

Cabay Shira had two Sons, the eldeſt of which was called *Ankarahs*, and the youngeſt *Allaknut*. From theſe two Brothers the Tribe of the *Ankarahs* and that of the *Allaknuts* are ſprung. The Mother of *Zingis Chan*, called *Ulun*, and to whom ſometimes they give the Surname of *Ulun-iga*, and ſometimes that of *Ulun Kuſin*, came from the Tribe of the *Allaknuts.*

Ankarahs Allaknut *Tribes.*

Busjuday had alſo two Sons, the eldeſt of whom was named *Caranut*, and from him the Tribe of the *Caranuts* has its Original. The ſecond Son of *Busjuday* was called *Conachlot*, and

Caranut *Tribe.*

and had a Son called *Meiſir-ili*, who had two Sons, of whom the eldeſt was called *Curlaſs*, and the youngeſt *Ilzigann*; and from theſe two Brothers the Tribes of *Curlaſs* and of the *Ilzi-ganns* draw their Origin.

Curlas *Tribe.*

Ilziganns *Tribe.*

The Tribe of the *Umma-uts* was heretofore called the Tribe of the *Urma-uts*; but at preſent they are generally called *Umma-uts*. There was a Man of the Tribe of the *Umma-uts* who had three Sons, the eldeſt of which was called *Cunnachmar*, and from him has iſſued the Tribe of the *Cunnachmars*. After the Death of *Jeſſugi Bayadur Chan*, the Father of *Zingis Chan*, a Perſon of Diſtinction of the Tribe of the *Cunnachmars*, call'd *Menglik Izka*, who had the Reputation of a wiſe and virtuous Man, having marry'd his Widow *Ulun-iga*, otherwiſe *Ulun-Kuzin*, the Mother of *Zingis Chan*, *Aunak Chan*, Prince of the *Caraits*, ſent a truſty Perſon to him, and order'd him to ſay, "You are as "chief of your Tribe, and nothing is between "you and the Crown but your Wife's Son; "therefore I will come and ſee you, and we "ſhall try to find means to put * *Zingis Chan* to "death without Noiſe; after which, we may "divide between us his Subjects and Effects." As *Aunak Chan* was an intimate Friend of the Father of *Zingis Chan*, that Prince never ſuſpected any ſuch Treaſon; and for that reaſon he made no Difficulty of going to ſee *Aunak Chan*, accompany'd with a very ſmall Retinue, who ſome time after gave him an invitation under pretence of treating with him about a Marriage between *Zuzi*, eldeſt Son of *Zingis Chan*, and his Daughter; but meeting his Father-in-Law on the Road, who was the afore-mention'd

Ummauts, *or* Urmauts *Tribe.*

Cunnachmars *Tribe.*

Menglik Izka, Zingis Chan's *Father-in-Law, tempted by* Aunak, Chan *of the* Caraits, *to deſtroy* Zingis Chan.

Diſcovers the Plot to Zingis Chan.

[* *Spoken by way of Prolepſis, for as yet he was not called* Zingis Chan.]

Menglik Izka, and being inform'd by him of the ill Deſign of *Aunak Chan* of the *Cara-its*, he immediately return'd the Way he came. From that time *Zingis Chan* conceiv'd ſo great a Friendſhip for his Father-in-Law, that he could not live without him.

Menglik Izka's true Name was *Menglik*, and the Surname of *Izka*, which ſignifies a devout Man, was given him by the *Mogulls*, on account of his great Piety and Virtue. *Zingis Chan* was but thirteen Years old when *Menglik Izka* eſpouſed his Mother in ſecond Marriage, for he had before three Sons by a firſt Venter, the eldeſt of which called *Kokza*, paſs'd in the Conceits of People for the Image of God. When I come to the Reign of *Zingis Chan*, I ſhall have occaſion to ſpeak of this *Kokza*. The ſecond Son of *Menglik Izka* was nam'd *Arlat*, and from him came the Tribe of the *Arlats*. The third Son of *Menglik Izka* was called *Calkit*, becauſe he could not ſpeak plain; and from him are ſprung the Tribe of the *Calkits*.

Arlats Tribe.

Calkits Tribe.

A Man of the Tribe of the *Calkits* had two Sons, one called *Badu* and the other *Kiſhlik*, who kept the Horſes of one of the great Lords of the Court of *Aunak Chan* of the *Cara-its*; one of theſe two Brothers going one Day to his Maſter's Apartment, with ſeveral *Days gathering of Mares-Milk*, heard that his Maſter being in private with his Wife, bid her get his Arms in readineſs; and upon her aſking him what he was going to do with them? he anſwer'd, That *Aunak Chan* intended to make War upon *Zingis Chan* without much Noiſe. This Man returning to the Place where his Brother was, after delivering his Milk into his Maſter's Kitchen, they agreed together, that ſeeing they ſprung from the *Mogulls*, and conſequently

The Deſigns of Aunak Chan, *againſt* Zingis Chan, *diſcover'd by the* Calkits.

ſequently were of the ſame Tribe with *Zingis Chan*, they would go and inform him of what was plotting againſt him: But we ſhall drop this Hiſtory for the preſent, reſerving it till we come to the Life of *Zingis Chan*. In reward of ſo great Service, *Zingis Chan* gave to theſe two Brothers an Employment which they call *Tarkun*, which frees them from all ſorts of Taxes; which Exemption they have enjoy'd, and their Deſcendants after them to the ninth Generation. 'Tis from this *Kiſhlik* that the Tribe of the *Kiſhliks* draw their Origin.

Office of Tarkun, *or* Tercan.

Kiſhlik *Tribe.*

CHAP. XIV.

Of the Tribes of the Viſhuns, *the* Suldus, *the* Durmanns, *the* Bariens, *the* Sukuts, *the* Curla-uts, *the* Burkuts, *and ſome other Branches of the* Mogulls.

THE *Viſhuns* as well as the *Suldus* are Branches of the *Mogulls*. There was in the Country of the *Mogulls* a *Chan* of the Poſterity of *Kajan*, called *Bizin Kajan*, who had five Sons; the youngeſt of which named *Kipzi Mergan*, had the beſt Parts, which induced his Father at his Death to appoint him his Succeſſor. The other four ſeeing the Government going to be conferr'd on their youngeſt Brother were exceedingly enraged, and declar'd they were content to let them chooſe which they would of them four to ſucceed their Father in the Dignity of *Chan*; but that if they perſiſted in the Reſolution to affront them by electing their youngeſt Brother, they would all four quit the Country;

Viſhuns *Tribe.*

Suldus *Tribe.*

which in reality they did, when they found, notwithſtanding all their Proteſtations, that the principal Lords of the Country in obedience to the laſt Will of *Bizin Kajan*, had put the Government into the Hands of *Kipzi Mergan*: And as the *Mogulls* call the Number Four, *Durmann*, the Deſcendants of theſe Four Brothers retain'd the Name of *Durmanns*, and came in proceſs of Time to dwell in the Dominions of *Kipzi Mergan*.

Durmanns *Tribe.*

Bariens *Tribe.*

There was a Man of the Tribe of the *Durmanns* who had three Sons, the eldeſt of which was called *Barien*, and from him the Tribe of the *Bariens* deduce their Original. The third had no lawful Children, tho he was marry'd, but one of his Slaves became with Child by him; and tho his Wife gave this Slave great Blows on the Belly to make her miſcarry, yet ſhe was happily brought to bed of a Son about Midnight, and having wrap'd up the Infant in a piece of Skin which ſhe had cut off the furr'd Garment of the Father, ſhe carry'd it to a Place where there was a great deal of a kind of Shrubs, which they call in their Language *Julgun*. The Father paſſing next Morning by that Place, and hearing the Child cry, he judged whoſe it was by the Piece of the furr'd Coat which he knew, and carrying the Infant home, he gave it to the Mother to take care off, and at the ſame time nam'd it *Sukut*, becauſe the aforeſaid Shrubs are call'd *Sukut* in the *Mogull* Language; and 'tis from him that the Branch of the *Sukuts* draw their Origin.

Sukut *Tribe.*

Kurla-uts *Tribe.* Burkuts *Tribe.* Kankratts, *or* Congorats *Tribe.*

The Tribes of the *Kurla-uts*, and that of the *Burkuts* inhabited formerly along with the *Kankratts*, who are related to them; and all theſe three Tribes are deriv'd from the *Mogulls*.

The

The *Oklians* are alſo ſprung from the *Mogulls*; but by what Generation is unknown. Oklians *Tribe.*

The *Dſoigerats* and the *Adſerats* are deſcended from the Tribe of the *Allaknuts*, which is a Branch of that of the *Mogulls*. Goigerats *Tribe.* Agerats *Tribe.*

The *Bajauts* are divided into ſeveral Branches; the moſt conſiderable of which are thoſe of the *Sadagin Bajauts*, and the *Makrim Bajauts:* The *Bajauts* were Neighbours to the *Virats*, and have taken their different Names from the Rivers of *Sadagin* and *Makrim*, on the Borders of which they inhabited: They derive their Origin from the Tribe of the *Durlagans*, which are of the Poſterity of *Nagos*. Bajauts *Tribe.* *Rivers* Sadagin *and* Makrim. Galagir, *or* Gelairs *Tribe.*

The Tribe of the *Dſalagirs* is very antient: they were heretofore ſcatter'd over a great Extent of Country, and had many Princes; but thoſe of *Kitay* having declar'd War againſt them, they were oblig'd to come cloſer together, to be in a Capacity to aſſiſt one another. Their Families were ſo numerous, that formerly they ſpread over ſeventy different Provinces, which they call'd in their Language *Kuran*, and the greateſt part of them dwelt in a Quarter of the *Mogulls* Country called *Uman:* but the Emperor of *Kitay* having defeated them and carry'd away a great Number of them Priſoners, the reſt of this Tribe ſav'd themſelves by Flight, and were reduc'd to live on Roots for want of other Food. This happen'd in the Reign of *Dutumin*, Grandfather of *Zingis Chan*, in the Seventh Generation. *Poſſeſſed ſeventy Provinces, called* Kuran. *Defeated by the Emperor of* Kitay.

Dutumin had nine Sons, the eldeſt of which called *Kaidu*, ſucceeding his Father, went to be marry'd in another Country, and his ſecond Brother *Mutulun* kept the Houſe, with his ſeven other Brothers, while their eldeſt Brother was abſent about his Miſtreſs. There was near their *Eight Sons of* Dutumin Chan *ſlain by the* Galagirs.

Habitation a very level Place where the ſeven Brothers uſed to perform their Exerciſes and Tournaments; one Day that they went there for that Purpoſe, they found the afore-mentioned *Dſalagirs*, who were digging the Earth to look for Roots: whereupon retiring immediately, they went and told their Brother *Mutulun* how the Place had been ſpoil'd, ſet apart for their Exerciſes. *Mutulun* having repair'd thither with a ſtrong Force at firſt, put to flight the *Dſalagirs*; but theſe laſt having had time to rally, return'd to the Charge, and having at laſt overcome *Mutulun*, after great Loſs on both ſides, they kill'd him and his ſeven Brothers, ruin'd their Habitations, and put to the Sword all thoſe of their Subjects who fell into their Hands.

Galagirs.

Galagirs *ſubmit to* Kaydu Chan.

Kaydu Chau being inform'd of this Accident, return'd home as quick as he could, and ſent to demand of the *Dſalagirs* their Reaſon for killing his Brothers. The *Dſalagirs*, extreamly terrify'd at this Meſſage, came to a Reſolution to ſend him five of the Authors of this Diſturbance, with their Wives and Children, to take on them what Satisfaction he thought fit; but *Kaydu Chan* was content to keep them as his Slaves, which prov'd of good account to him, for they ſerv'd him very faithfully; and having quitted their former Name, took the Surname of the Maſter they ſerv'd. In the Reign of *Zingis Chan*, the other *Dſalagirs* took likewiſe the Surname of their Captive Brethren; but in truth they derive their Origin from the *Durlagans*, who are of the Poſterity of *Nagos*. The Deſcendants of theſe enſlaved People continued in the Service of the Children of *Kaydu Chan* to the fourth Generation; ſome of them

Galagir, *or* Kaydu *Tribe.*

them having ten, others twelve, as far as twenty Families for their Portion.

CHAP. XV.

Of the Chans *of the* Mogulls, *from their ſallying out of* Irgana-kon, *down to* Zingis Chan.

Kajan and *Nagos* dwelt in the Country of *Irgana-kon*, and their Deſcendants multiplying, divided themſelves into many Branches, with different Names. There was among others, a Man of the Poſterity of *Kajan* call'd *Curlaſs*; and as his Family was one of the moſt numerous, they agreed to chooſe one of them to be *Chan* of the *Mogulls*; and every time the *Chan* came to dy, they rais'd another of the ſame Family to that Dignity.

Chans *choſen out of the Family of* Curlaſs *in* Irgana-kon.

At the time that they ſally'd out of *Irgana-kon*, they had a *Chan* of the Poſterity of *Curlaſs* named *Bertezena*, and after his Death his Son *Kaw-idill* ſucceeded him; who likewiſe dying, his Son *Bizin-kajan* reign'd after him, and had his Son *Kipzi Mergan* for his Succeſſor. After the Death of *Kipzi Mergan*, his Son *Menkoazin-Borell* obtain'd the Government, and after his Death his Son *Bukbendun* ſucceeded him, who had for his Succeſſor his Son *Simſauzi*. *Simſauzi* dying left the Throne of the *Mogulls* to his Son *Kaymazu*, who was ſucceeded by his Son *Temirtaſh*, and he by his Son *Mengli Chodſa*. After the Death of *Mengli Chodſa*, his Son *Julduſs Chan* came to reign over the *Mogulls*, and had two Sons, who both died before him; but

1. Bertezena.
2. Kawidill.
3. Bizinkajan.
4. Kipzi Mergan.
5. Menkoazin-Borell.
6. Bukbendun.
7. Simſauzi.
8. Kaymazu.
9. Temirtaſh
10. Mengli Choga.
11. Julduſs Chan.

Dejun Bajan. Alancu.

but one of them having left a Son called *Dejun Bajan*, and the other a Daughter named *Alancu*, *Julduſs Chan* marry'd them together, as ſoon as they came to a proper Age, and gave a magnificent Feaſt on that Occaſion.

None could reign under thirty Years of Age.

Sometime after *Julduſs Chan* happen'd to die before his Grandſon *Dejun Bajan* had attain'd the Age requir'd by the Laws to qualify him to reign by himſelf, which was that of thirty Years. *Dejun Bajan* did not long ſurvive his Grandfather, and left two Sons, the eldeſt of which called *Belgadei*, was ſeven Years of Age, and the youngeſt named *Begdſadei*, ſix Years. In ſome Books the eldeſt of theſe two Children of *Dejun Bajan*, is called *Belgajut*, and the youngeſt *Bugnat*; and tho after the Death of their Father, their Mother was ſought in Marriage by ſeveral of *Julduſs Chan*'s Relations, ſhe conſtantly refus'd to marry again, ſaying ſhe was oblig'd during the Minority of her Children to take care of the Regency, that when they came to Years ſhe might deliver it up to them in good Condition. But ſome little time after, having ſlept all Night long, ſhe ſaw ſomething as ſhe awak'd in the Morning, as bright as the Sun, fall into her Chamber thro' the Opening a-top, and approach her in the Form of a Man, of an Orange Colour, with Eyes of a ſingular Beauty, which frighten'd her ſo, that tho ſhe had a mind to call her Servants, and ſtrove alſo to riſe, ſhe had neither Strength to ſpeak nor get upon her Feet: Nevertheleſs as ſhe did not loſe her Senſes, ſhe took notice that this Spirit, after lying with her ſeveral times, of a ſudden diſappear'd.

Fable of an Incubus and Alancu.

As this Adventure ſavour'd too much of the Fabulous, ſhe durſt not make any body a Confident in it, for fear they would not give Credit

to her words. Five or ſix days after the Spirit return'd to ſee her in the ſame manner, and continued his Viſits frequently afterwards. In the mean time, as ſhe was with Child by the Spirit from the time of his firſt Viſit, they did not fail, as ſoon as they perceiv'd ſomething of it, to put it home to her, to know who was the Father: which having obliged her to relate the whole Adventure, ſhe added, that to clear up the Truth of what ſhe ſaid, they needed only ſet Guards upon her, inaſmuch as ſhe did not believe the Spirit would avoid coming upon that ſcore; that if what they ſaw had happen'd to her thro' Frailty of Nature, ſhe would to be ſure have marry'd again, as they all knew ſhe had Opportunities enough of doing; but that this had happen'd to her againſt her Will, and after a ſupernatural manner: That poſſibly alſo ſome particular Sign might ſhew it ſelf upon the Child ſhe was big with, which might diſtinguiſh it from other Men. Thereupon they thought proper to allow her Guards, who found that all ſhe had ſaid was true, excepting that they could not ſee any Appearance of a Man.

In the mean time, *Alancu* being come to her full Time *, was happily deliver'd of three Sons at a Birth; the firſt of which was called *Bocum Catagun*, from whom the Branch of the *Cata-* Catagun *Tribe.*

* *All the Oriental Hiſtorians who treat of the Original of the* Tatars, *make mention of this miraculous Adventure, tho they vary in the Circumſtances; which naturally leads me to the Reflection, whence it comes that in all Ages they have obſerved to introduce the Miraculous into the Origin of great Revolutions which have happen'd both in the State and Religion: and I can find no other Reaſon for it, except it be, either to cover certain Defects which occur in the Original of thoſe Revolutions, or to impoſe on the Vulgar; and to diſpoſe them by the falſe Luſtre of thoſe feign'd Miracles to a greater Tractableneſs.*

guns

Zalzuts. *Tribe.* *guns* derive their Origin. The ſecond was call'd *Boskin Zalzi*, and from him are ſprung the *Zalzuts*. The Name of the third was *Budenſir Mogak*, who came to reign over the *Mogulls*: 'Tis from him that the Family of *Zingis Chan*, and ſeveral other conſiderable Families of the *Mogulls* are deriv'd.

12. Budenſir Mogak.

The Deſcendants of theſe three Princes took the Surname of *Niron*. *Budenſir Mogak* had two Sons, the eldeſt of which was called *Tumu*, and the youngeſt *Tocha*: 'Tis not known if the firſt left Children; but after the Death of *Budenſir Mogak*, his ſecond Son *Tocha* came to the Throne, and was ſucceeded after his Death by his Son *Dutumin*.

Niron *Tribe.*

13. Tocha Chan.

14. Dutumin Chan.

Dutumin had nine Sons, but the *Dſalagirs* having ſlain eight of 'em in the manner above related, *Kaydu* only remain'd alive and reign'd after his Father. *Kaydu Chan* had three Sons; the firſt was named *Baſſicar*, the ſecond *Hurmalancum*; and from theſe two Brothers the Branch of the *Bayzuts* derive their Original. *Hurmalancum* had a Son called *Murank-Ducozina*, who had a Son called *Kadun*, who bore the Surname of *Tayſhy*, becauſe he ſung very well: This word importing in the Language of *Kitay*, a Man who has a fine Voice. The Son of *Kadun* was called *Arall*, who had a Son called *Kariltuk*; who is believ'd to be the ſame, who being chief of the *Bayzuts*, made War on *Zingis Chan* by the Name of *Burganay Kariltuk*. The third Son of *Kaydu Chan* was called *Zapzin*, from whom the *Zipzuts* and *Irigents* draw their Origin. After the Death of *Kaydu Chan*, his Son *Hurmalancum* marry'd his Widow, who was his Stepmother, and had by her two Sons, who were called in the Language of the *Mogulls*, the one *Caudu Zena*, and the other *Olek-*

15. Kaydu Chan.

Bayzut *Tribe.*

Zipzuts *Tribe.*

Irigents *Tribe.*

zin

zin Zena; but in the *Turkiſh* Language the firſt was named *Irgak-bura*, and the ſecond *Urgazi-bura*, which ſignify a He Wolf, and a She Wolf. There hath ſprung from theſe two Brothers a very numerous Family, which took the Name of the Tribe of *Zenaſs*, on account of their Anceſtors having borne the Surname of *Zena*. They took beſides that, the Surname of *Nagos*, inſomuch that they had two Names; but they have no relation to the Branch of the *Nagoſler*, of which I have ſpoken before: Theſe laſt having by length of Time loſt the Knowledge of their Pedigree.

Mogul *and* Turkiſh *Language not the ſame.*

Zenas, *or* Nagos *Tribe.*

Baſſicar, eldeſt Son of *Kaydu Chan*, who reign'd after his Father, was a Prince of great Conduct, and conquer'd many Provinces and Towns. After him reign'd his Son *Tumana*, who grew ſo powerful that he reduced the whole Tribe of the *Nirons* under his Obedience, and his Subjects were in a very flouriſhing Condition during the time of his Reign. He had nine Sons, and of their Deſcendants ſome retained the Name of their Family, and the reſt divided themſelves into divers particular Branches. There were two Twin Brothers among thoſe nine Sons of *Tumana Chan*, who were call'd *Cabull* and *Cazuli*. The eldeſt of theſe nine Brothers was called *Zazſu*, and had three Sons, 1. *Butakin*, 2. *Uruth*, 3. *Mankatt*; from whence are deſcended the three Tribes of the ſame Name. The ſecond Son of *Tumana Chan*, was called *Janinſhur-Tumanzu*, and was likewiſe the Father of a particular Branch. The third Son of *Tumana Chan* was called *Samcazun*, and from him are ſprung the *Badurgins*. The fourth was called *Batkilki*, and 'tis from him that all the *Budatts* are deriv'd. The fifth was *Cabull Chan*, Great Grandfather of *Zingis Chan*. The ſixth was *Cazuli*,

16. Baſſicar Chan.

17. Tumana Chan *reduces the* Nirons.

Butakin, Uruth, *and* Mankatt *Tribes.*

Badurgins *Tribe.*

Budatts *Tribe.*

zuli, who had a Son called *Jedemzi-burlaſs*; from whom the *Burlaſs* draw their Original. *Amir Timur Chan* was of this Tribe. The Term *Burlaſs*, ſignifies a Commander of Troops. The ſeventh was called *Udur-Bajan*, and from him are iſſued the *Cajums*. The eighth was called *Balzar Oglan*, becauſe he halted. *Oglan* ſignifying in the Language of the *Mogulls*, a lame Man, and from him deſcended the *Vilots*. The ninth Son of *Tumana Chan* was called *Olzingan*, and from him the Branch of the *Baſſuts* draw their Origin. The *Mogulls* call a Man who has ſat a long while at his own Fire-ſide, *Olzingan*, from whence the Name is given, by an indirect Application, to the youngeſt Sons, becauſe the Parents uſually keep them longer at home than the other Children; and they reckon for the ſame reaſon among the *Mogulls*, that the youngeſt Sons are the moſt robuſt and fit for War. When *Zingis Chan* enter'd with his Army into the Country of *Ma-urenner*, he detach'd one of his Generals called *Zena Noyan*, deſcended from the Tribe of the *Jeſſuts*, or *Baſſuts*, with 30000 Men to go in purſuit of Sultan *Mahamet Shah* of *Charaſs'm*; who after ſeizing the Treaſures, the Wives and Children of the Sultan, conquer'd all the Countries of *Irak* and *Choraſſan*; and from thence paſſing into the Country of *Shirwan*, he went and fell upon the *Zerkas* and *Kipzaks*, and having put all to the Sword in thoſe Quarters, he paſs'd the Rivers of *Atell* and *Jaigik*, and came back to join his Maſter at his Return from the Country of *Iran*, upon the Frontiers of the great *Bucharia*.

Burlaſs *Tribe.*

Cajums *Tribe.*

Vilots *Tribe.*

Baſſuts, or Jeſſuts.

Mogulls *reckon the youngeſt Sons fitteſt for War.*

After the Death of *Tumana Chan*, his Son *Cabull Chan* ſucceeded him, who had ſix Sons, *viz.* 1. *Ukinjargak*, 2. *Bortan-bayadur*, 3. *Kutuktu Manga*, 4. *Caſſan-bayadur*, 5. *Coblacun*, 6. *Budan-*

18. Cabul Chan.

Budan-kajat. In regard we have already treated of the Name of *Kajat*, I have only to add here, that tho, conformable to what has been ſaid above, the *Kajats* took their Surnames in *Irgana-kon* from *Kajan* their firſt Founder; they have nevertheleſs in proceſs of Time, one after another, quitted their firſt Surnames, and taken in lieu of them ſeveral other Names: Some of them having called themſelves *Kankratts*, others *Curlaſs*; ſome *Durmanns*, and others again by other Names; inſomuch that the Surname of *Kajat* was in a manner unknown for above 3000 Years: But in regard the Sons of *Cabull Chan* were all ſix very ſtrong Men and great Warriors, their Father revived in them the Name of *Kajat.*

Kajats *take other Names, as* Kankratts. Curlaſs. Durmanns. *Name of* Kajat *loſt and revived.*

After the Death of *Cabull Chan* his Son *Bortan Chan* obtain'd the Sovereignty over the *Mogulls.* He had four Sons, *viz.* 1. *Mungadai*, 2. *Bugan Tayſhy*, 3. *Jeſſugi Bayadur*, 4. *Daritlai-bulai*; and their Deſcendants preſerv'd alſo the Name of *Kajats.*

19. Bortan Chan.

After the Death of *Bortan Chan*, his Son *Jeſſugi Bayadur* ſucceeded him in the Throne of the *Mogulls.* He had five Sons, *viz.* 1. *Tamuzin*, or *Zingis Chan*; he did not take this laſt Name till after he was proclaim'd *Chan.* 2. *Zuzicar*, which is as much as to ſay *a Gueſt like a Wolf*; *Zuzi* ſignifying in the *Mogull* Language *a Gueſt*, and *car*, or (in the *Perſian* and *Turkiſh* Language) *Dan*, importing a carnivorous Beaſt. 3. *Kazun*, 4. *Tamuka*, and 5. *Belgatai.* Theſe five Brothers were all of a fair Complexion, inclining to yellow, with a red Circle between the black and white of their Eyes: and becauſe the *Mogulls* call this kind of Eyes *Borzugan*, all the Deſcendants of theſe five Brothers

20. Jeſſugi Bayadur. 21. Tamuzin, *or* Zingis Chan.

Borzugan Kajat Tribe.

thers were ſurnamed *Borzugan Kajat*. *Tamuzin* and his four Brothers deſcended in the ninth Generation from the three Brothers, born in the manner above related of *Alancu* the Widow of *Dejunbajan*.

PART

PART III.

Which contains the Hiſtory of the Reign of Zingis Chan, *from his Birth to his Death.*

CHAP. I.

Of the Birth of Zingis Chan, *and his firſt Years, to the Death of his Father, and his Advancement to the Throne of the* Mogulls.

Zingis Chan was born in the Country of *Blunjulduk* in the Year 559, which is called *Tongus*, or the Hog in the *Mogull* Language; he brought into the World with him a piece of coagulated Blood in his Hand, of which his Mother having acquainted his Father, he adviſed with his principal Officers about this odd Accident; one of whom aſſur'd the *Chan*, it was a Preſage that the new-born Prince ſhould ſubdue many Provinces and Nations to his Empire, which in reality came to paſs afterwards. At his Birth his Father called him *Tamuzin*, but when he was declar'd *Chan*, he took the Name of *Zingis*; tho I have ſpoken before

An. Dom. 1163. *Birth of* Zingis Chan.

Tamuzin his firſt Name.

[* *Called* Dilon Yldac *in the Hiſtory of* Genghiz Chan, *p.* 13.]

of

of his Original, nevertheleſs I ſhall repeat here his Genealogy in form.

Genealogy of Zingis Chan.

Jeſſugi Bayadur Chan was the Father of *Zingis Chan*, his Father was *Bortan Chan*, whoſe Father was *Cabull Chan*, the Son of *Tumana Chan*, the Son of *Kaidu Chan*, whoſe Father was *Dutumin Chan*. 'Tis to be obſerv'd here, that the *Turks* and * *Tadſiks* are accuſtom'd in reckoning up Genealogies not to go backwards above the ſeventh Generation. The *Mogulls* call the Father in the firſt Generation *Izka*, the Grandfather or Father in the ſecond Generation *Ulugan*, him in the third *Atinzak*, him in the fourth Generation *Budutur*, in the fifth *Badakur*, in the ſixth *Murki*, and the Father in the ſeventh Generation *Dutakar*.

How the Mogulls *name the Degrees of* Anceſtry.

But to return to the Genealogy of *Zingis Chan*. The Father of *Dutumin Chan* was *Tocha Chan*, his Father was *Budenſir Mogak*, born of the Widow *Alancu*, Grand-daughter of *Julduſs Chan*, who was brought up with his Grandfather; becauſe his Father, of whoſe Name we are ignorant, and who was the Son of *Julduſs Chan* died, being as yet very young. The Father of *Julduſs Chan* was *Mengli Chodſa Chan*, who was the Son of *Temirtaſh Chan*, the Son of *Kaymazu Chan*, Son of *Simſauzi Chan*, Son of *Bukbendun Chan*, Son of *Menkoazin Borell Chan*, Son of *Kipzi Mergan Chan*, Son of *Bizin Kajan Chan*, Son of *Kaw Idill Chan*, whoſe Father was *Bertezena Chan*.

Between the Reign of *Bertezena* and the Flight of *Kajan*, who went and inhabited in the Country of *Irgana-kon*, after the Defeat of his Father, there is a Vacancy of 450 Years;

[* Tagicks *are the Inhabitants of* Mawaralnahr *and* Iran, *that are neither* Turks, Mogulls, *nor* Tartars. *Vid. Hiſt. of* Timur Bec. *Pag.* 13. *Vol.* II.]

which

which is juſt the time that the *Mogulls* were confin'd within the Mountains of *Irgana-kon*, and were in perfect Ignorance of the Order of the Succeſſion, and Names of the Princes who reign'd over the *Mogulls* in that Interval, tho we are certain they were all of the Poſterity of *Kajan*; and inaſmuch as we don't find the leaſt Certainty in the Books of the *Mogulls* on this Head, I am likewiſe obliged to leave a Gap in this Place.

A Vacancy of 450 Years in the Succeſſion of Mogull Emperors.

The Father of *Kajan* was *Ill Chan*, his Father was *Mengli Chan*, the Son of *Julduſs Chan*, who ſucceeded *Ay Chan*, *Julduſs Chan* having been neither the Brother nor Son of *Ay Kan*, or *Kiun Chan*, but only their Relation. *Ay Chan* ſucceeded his Brother *Kiun Chan*, whoſe Father was *Ogus Chan*, the Son of *Cara Chan*, the Son of *Mung'l Chan*, Son of *Alenza Chan*, Son of *Kajuk Chan*, Son of *Dibbakui Chan*, Son of *Jelza Chan*, Son of *Taunak Chan*, whoſe Father was *Turk*, the Son of *Japhis*, the Son of *Nui*, whoſe Father was *Zamach*, the Son of *Matuſhlach*, the Son of the Prophet *Idriſs*, called in the Language of *Junan*, *Achnuch*, whoſe Father was *Berdi*, the Son of *Melahil*, Son of *Shinan*, Son of *Anus*, whoſe Father was the Prophet *Shiſs*, who was the Son of *Adam*, ſurnam'd *Saphi Jula.*

The Genealogy of Kajan.

Greece.

At the Death of *Jeſſugi Bayadur Chan*, his Son *Zingis Chan* was but thirteen Years of Age, and his Brothers were ſtill younger than he. 'Tis a Law among the *Mogulls* for the Subjects to give yearly to their *Chan* the Tithe of all their Cattle of all Denominations; and tho a *Chan* leaves five or ſix Sons, the eldeſt is of right his Succeſſor, and the other Brothers are to ſerve him juſt like the reſt of his Subjects, excepting that they give him yearly one Beaſt of every

Mogulls give their Chans Tithe of all Cattle.

Chan's *Brothers only exempt.*

ſort; but this Exemption extends only to themſelves, their Children and Deſcendants being obliged to the ordinary Tithe juſt like the other Subjects.

Thirty or forty Thouſand Families under Jeſſugi Bayadur *at his Death.*

At *Jeſſugi Bayadur*'s Death, they reckon'd under his Obedience between thirty and forty thouſand Families paying Tithe, all ſprung from the ſame Stock; beſides which there were ſeveral neighbouring Tribes whoſe Chiefs paid him Tribute, of which Number among others was one *Buſander Chan*. *Zingis Chan* being very young at his Father's Death, moſt of thoſe Families taking Advantage of his Youth would no longer obey him, nor pay him Tithe, and withdrew themſelves into Places out of the way. The Tribe of the *Tayzeuts*, which was the richeſt and moſt conſiderable of them all, was the firſt which revolted from *Zingis Chan*, having ſubmitted to one *Burgany Kariltuk*, whom the other Branches, which had withdrawn themſelves from the Obedience of *Zingis Chan*, in like manner acknowledg'd afterwards for their Head. The Father of *Burgany Kariltuk* was called *Arall*, whoſe Father's Name was *Kadun Tayſhy*, the Son of *Muranck Ducozina*, the Son of *Hurmalancum*, the Son of *Kaydu Chan*.

Moſt of 'em revolt from Tamuzin.

Burgany Kariltuk.

Only a third Part continue firm to Tamuzin.

Of all thoſe Families which were under the Obedience of *Jeſſugi Bayadur Chan* at his Death, there was but one third of them which continued firmly attach'd to *Zingis Chan*, the other two thirds having wholly deſerted him. The third Part which continued faithful to him, conſiſted of the Deſcendants of his Great Grandfather, who were all united to him; of half the Tribe of the *Mankatts*, and of divers Families of the other Tribes, out of ſome of which there remain'd 50, out of others 100, or 200, and out of ſome only 5 or 10 Families. The Tribe

the *Mankatts*, tho not very numerous, yet had its particular Chief, called *Kojuldar*; but *Zingis Chan* was their Sovereign Prince.

The Tribes that deſerted with Burganay Kariltuk.

Theſe are the Names of the Tribes which went away with *Burganay Kariltuk*; the *Cataguns*, the *Zipzuts*, the *Dſoigerats*, and the *Nirons*, of which there did not ſtay ſo much as one Family with *Zingis Chan*. The Tribe of the *Markatts*, which never would ſubmit to the Father of that Prince, went over alſo to *Burgany Kariltuk*, as ſoon as they were inform'd that he had ſeparated himſelf from *Zingis Chan*, and corrupted ſuch Numbers; but *Zingis Chan* having made War upon theſe Revolters, reduc'd them to their Obedience one after another.

Goigerats.

CHAP. II.

Of ſome Things that fell out during the firſt Years of the Reign of Zingis Chan.

THE Mother of *Zingis Chan* was called *Ulun*, Surnamed *Iga*, which is as much as to ſay *great* in the *Mogull* Language. She alſo had another Surname which was that of *Kuzin*, which ſignifies in the Language of *Kitay*, an old Woman. In the Language of the *Tadſiks*, an old Woman is called *Banu*, and in the *Usbeck* Language *Baybiza*, which ſignifies alſo a Governeſs: She was deſcended of the Tribe of the *Allaknuts*, and had a vaſt deal of Wit. After the Death of the Father of *Zingis Chan*, the above-mention'd *Menglik Izka* marry'd her; and becauſe he was of the Tribe of the *Cunachmars*,

Ulun Iga, Tamuzin's *Mother.*

Tagicks.

Marries Menglik Izka.

Cunachmars *ſubmit to* Tamuzin.

mars, and was in great Credit with the People of his Tribe, he order'd it ſo that all that Tribe ſubmitted to *Zingis Chan*.

Author's Apology for not writing more amply.

I had at firſt a Deſign to write more fully of the Empire, and the different Branches of the *Mogulls*; but a great Illneſs, with which I was ſurpriz'd, giving me cauſe to fear with a good deal of reaſon, that I ſhould die before I finiſhed this Book; I have been oblig'd to abridge my Work, that I might not leave it imperfect after me. I have alſo continued throughout the Courſe of my Diſtemper *, to labour at it, having for that End four Clerks, to whom I dictated whilſt they wrote, whenever my Sickneſs gave me any Reſpite. With regard to that Part of my Hiſtory which reaches from *Adam* down to *Sheybani Chan*, I have extracted part from the Authors which wrote on that Subject, and part from particular Memoirs of divers *Mogull* Tribes: But with regard to the other Part, which begins with the Reign of *Sheybani Chan*, and reaches down to my own time, I have not had much Occaſion to conſult Books in order to render that perfect; becauſe I have had before hand an exact Knowledge of the chief Tranſactions within that Period. As for what relates to remarkable Actions, and the Names of Princes, and of the different Tribes, I have taken particular care to preſerve them, without omitting any: But for Actions of the leſſer kind,

How this Hiſtory was compiled.

Nothing material omitted.

* *'Twas of the ſame Diſtemper that our Author* Abulgaſi Bayadur Chan, *after having languiſhed near ſix Months, died at laſt in the Year of the* Hegira 1074, *which anſwers to the Year* 1663 *of the Chriſtian Æra, before he could put the laſt hand to this Book. His Son* Anuſha Mahamet Bayadur Chan *brought this Work to Perfection two Years after the Death of his Father, as we have remark'd at the beginning of this Book.*

and

and other Circumſtances of ſmall importance, I have paſs'd them over in ſilence, that I might not ſwell this Book more than was needful.

When *Burgany Karilluk* corrupted the *Tayzeuts*, the *Nirons*, and the other aforeſaid Tribes from their Obedience to their natural Prince, there remain'd with him very few Families of the Tribe of the *Nirons*. 'Tis true that *Zingis Chan* did all he could to remedy this Evil in the beginning, and that for this end, while he was ſcarce thirteen Years old, he took the Field againſt thoſe Revolters, and fought a bloody Battle with them; but in regard it was not deciſive, he ſaw himſelf obliged to temporize until the Year *Bars*, or of the *Tiger*; when entring into the 40th Year of his Age, a Man belonging to the Revolted Tribes, came to tell him that the *Tayzeuts* and the *Nirons* were joyn'd with the *Bayzeuts*, the *Markatts*, and the *Tatars*, intending to ſurprize him. Upon this News *Zingis Chan*, who had already conſiderably augmented his Forces, and acquir'd great Experience in the Buſineſs of War, having given a general Rendezvous to the thirteen Tribes which were under his Obedience, and aſſign'd to every Tribe as they arriv'd, the Poſt which they were to be employ'd in; having afterwards order'd the Baggage and Cattle to be plac'd in the middle of the Camp, he put himſelf at the Head of his Troops, and in this Poſture expected the Enemy without ſtirring: but at their Approach he rang'd his 30000 Men in a Line, to cover by ſo large a Front his Baggage and Beaſts; and having in this manner engag'd the Enemy, he gain'd a compleat Victory over them, leaving between five and ſix thouſand ſlain upon the Field of Battle, beſides a great Number of

Tamuzin *takes the Field at Thirteen, againſt the Revolted Tribes.*

Tamuzin *enters the 40th Year of his Age.*

Defeats the Tayzeuts, Nirons, Bayzuts, Markatts *and* Tatars.

Priſoners which fell into the Hands of *Zingis Chan.*

Cruel Execution. Immediately after the Battle, *Zingis Chan* having order'd ſeventy large Caldrons of Water to be put upon the Fire, he caus'd the principal of the Revolters to be thrown in Head-foremoſt while the Water was boiling hot. After which he march'd towards the Habitations of the Revolted, and having ſack'd them, he carry'd away the Men and the Cattle, and every thing in general which he found to be of uſe. He condemn'd the Children of the chief Men of the Tribes to Slavery, and diſtributed the reſt among his Troops to ſerve for Recruits, which conſiderably increaſed the Number of them.

CHAP. III.

Of the War of Zingis Chan, *againſt* Aunak Chan *of the* Caraits; *and of the Defeat of the latter.*

Goigerats. THERE was a Man of the Tribe of the *Dſoigerats*, called *Zamuca Zizen*; the Term *Zizen* in the *Mogull* Language, ſignifies an eloquent Man; in the *Arabick* ſuch a Perſon is called *Akill*, and in the *Perſian* Tongue *Bachirath.* This Man going to *Sungun*, eldeſt Son of *Aunak Chan* of the *Caraits*, ſaid to him, "You and your Father imagine that *Zingis Chan* is your beſt "Friend; but I can aſſure you that he has "ſent to deſire *Tayan Chan* of the *Naimanns*, "and *Bairak Chan* to join him, in order to "war upon you; and none can know it better than I, becauſe I have been brought "up with him; and am of the ſame Tribe "and

Zamuca Zizin *ſtirs up* Aunak *or* Ung Chan *againſt* Tamuzin.

" and I have had what I tell you, not only from " *Zingis Chan*'s own Mouth, but alſo from thoſe " who are in Confederacy with him." *Aunak Chan* calling to mind upon this Advice, that the *Chan* of the *Naimanns* had an old Grudge againſt him, believ'd that this Intelligence was not altogether to be deſpis'd. Nevertheleſs conſulting his Son *Sungun* about it, he gave him to underſtand that it was almoſt impoſſible to give entire Credit to the Report of *Zamuca Zizen*, becauſe of the conſtant Friendſhip which *Zingis Chan* had always ſhewn for them for the time paſt; that conſequently it was no way adviſable that they ſhould be the firſt who ſhould break that Amity, upon the Report of only one Man who might be falſe, but that they ſhould obſerve the Motions of *Zingis Chan*, and hold themſelves in readineſs let what would happen; to the end that if he was determin'd to make War upon them, the Blame at leaſt might lie at his Door. At the ſame time, he put his Son in mind of the great Obligations which he had to the Houſe of *Zingis Chan*, in the time of his Wars againſt his Brothers.

Ung Chan conſults his Son Sungun.

Suſpects Zamuca Zizen.

Is inclined not to make War on Tamuzin.

Under great Obligations to the Family of Zingis Chan.

For it muſt be obſerv'd that *Margus Ili*, Prince of the Tribe of *Caraits*, having at his Death left ſix Sons, the eldeſt called *Korzacur*, and the youngeſt *Cavar*; theſe two Brothers agreed together to divide the Inheritance of their Father between them. *Korzacur* had in proceſs of Time five Sons, called, 1. *Aunak*, or *Tayrell*, 2. *Jacacara*, 3. *Baytimut*, 4. *Numiſſai*, 5. *Zukambu*, all active Men and of uncommon Bravery; who after the Death of their Father, quarrelling among themſelves for the Succeſſion, the eldeſt and youngeſt joined againſt the other three, and having got the better of them, they obliged their Brother *Jacacara*, who was the

Hiſtory of Ung Chan.

Ung *routed by his Brother, flies to* Jeſſugi Bayadur.

chief of the Party, to retire among the *Naimanns*; who having given him Aſſiſtance, put him in a Condition to go back, and chaſe his Brother *Aunak* in his Turn, who fled to the Father of *Zingis Chan*. This Prince having lent him Succours re-eſtabliſh'd his Affairs, put *Jacacara* again to flight, and plac'd *Aunak* once more in the Poſſeſſion of the Country of the *Caraits*. *Jacacara*, who took ſhelter with his Uncle *Cavar Chan*, wrought ſo upon him by his Importunities, that he prevailed with him to interpoſe his Authority with *Aunak Chan*, in order to oblige him to come to an Agreement with his Brothers, and part the paternal Inheritance among them. But *Aunak Chan* giving little heed to the Remonſtrances of his Uncle, *Cavar Chan* enter'd his Territories with an Army, and reduc'd him a ſecond time to fly for Refuge to the Father of *Zingis Chan*; becauſe the greateſt part of his Subjects refuſed to take Arms againſt his Uncle, whoſe ſole Buſineſs was to reconcile him with his Brother. Whereupon *Jeſſugi Bayadur Chan* coming anew to the Aſſiſtance of *Aunak*, and having this time put to death his Brother *Jacacara*, who fell into his Hands, he re-ſettled him in the Poſſeſſion of his Country, without reaping any other Advantage by this Expedition, than the Glory of having laid the Foundation of the Riches and Power to which *Aunak Chan* afterwards arriv'd.

Flies to him a ſecond time.

Is re-eſtabliſhed by Jeſſugi Bayadur.

Ung Chan's *Plot to inſnare* Tamuzin.

The Remembrance of theſe Benefits could not but oblige *Aunak Chan* to have much regard for the Perſon of *Zingis Chan:* but as on the other hand he fear'd him extreamly on account of his active Spirit, he came to a Reſolution with his Son to ſend Embaſſadors to him; who to teſtify that the Remembrance of ſo many Benefits were not blotted out of their Minds,

ſhould demand the Continuance of his Friendſhip, and at the ſame time propoſe a more ſtrict Alliance betwixt his Family and that of *Aunak Chan*, by the Marriage of his Son *Zuzi* with the Daughter of *Aunak Chan:* That to ſettle this Affair, they ſhould endeavour to engage him to make a Viſit in Perſon to their Maſter, and that as ſoon as he arriv'd, they ſhould put him to death, and ſo be under no neceſſity of engaging in a War on that Occaſion.

Tamuzin accepts the Invitation to Ung Chan's Court.

Purſuant to this Reſolution, *Aunak Chan* ſent one of his Officers he moſt confided in, called *Bukadai Kanzat*, to make the aforeſaid Propoſals to *Zingis Chan*; who having given a favourable Reception to this Embaſſador, and having had no Knowledge of the falſe Reports which *Zamuca Zizen* had made on that Head to *Aunak Chan*, ſet forward, accompany'd with only two of his Men, to go and ſee him: But meeting with his Father-in-Law *Menglik Izka* on the Road, who inform'd him of the ill Deſigns of *Aunak Chan* againſt his Perſon, he return'd back again; and after cauſing the Embaſſador to be handſomely treated, ſent him back with anſwer, "That he wiſh'd it was in "his Power to return the Civilities of his Maſ-"ter by inviting him to his Court; but that "the Cattle was ſo lean at preſent that his "Entertainment muſt be very indifferent: that "therefore he was oblig'd to put off the Invi-"tation till the Seaſon came when the Beaſts "would be fatter; and then if *Aunak Chan* "would do him the Honour to come and ſee "him, he would not fail going to viſit him in "his Turn."

Is met on the Road by his Father-in-Law, who diſcovers the Plot.

Tamuzin returns, and ſends an Apology to Ung Chan.

Ung Chan deſigns to ſurprize Tamuzin.

Five or ſix days after the Departure of that Embaſſador, one named *Badu*, and his Brother *Kiſhlik* came to find *Zingis Chan*, and deſiring to

Deſign diſcover'd. to ſpeak to him in private, they ſaid to him, "We keep the Horſes of one of the chief Officers of the Court of *Aunak Chan*, when "I *Badu* going Yeſterday to carry the Milk, "which I had been ſome days gathering, to my "Maſter's Houſe, I heard by chance from behind the Door, my Maſter ſaying to his Wife, "Our Embaſſador is return'd, and foraſmuch "as our *Chan* finds he has miſs'd his Point, "he is reſolv'd to go and ſurprize *Zingis Chan* "before he ſuſpects any thing of the Matter; "and he deſigns to begin his March immediately, or in the Evening, that he may be "up with him early, becauſe he knows he is "accuſtom'd to lie long a-bed in the Morning. "Struck with Horror at ſo black a Treaſon, I "did not delay a Moment's time after I had "deliver'd my Milk in my Maſter's Kitchin, "from coming to inform you of it, to the end "you might be upon your Guard."

Tamuzin *lies in Ambuſh expecting* Ung Chan. Upon this Advice *Zingis Chan*, having diſpatch'd immediate Orders to his People that were neareſt hand to repair to him, ſent the Women and Children, together with the Cattle and all their other Effects, to a Place out of the way called *Balzunabalak*, ſaying, "If God gives "us Victory, we ſhall bring them back quickly again:" But he ſtay'd himſelf with about 2500 Men, which were all he was able to get together in haſte, in the ſame Place where he then was; ordering his Men, that during the Night, every one ſhould hold his Horſe by the Bridle, that they might always be in readineſs for the Combat. *Aunak Chan* of the *Caraits* drawing nigh about Sun-riſe, at the Head of 12000 Men, *Zingis Chan*, by Advice of a Man of Parts, of the Tribe of the *Mankatts* called *Kojuldar Zizen*, divided his Men into two Bodies,

Ung Chan *appears at Day-break with* 12000 *Men.*

dies, and put himſelf with one of them in Ambuſcade, while the other Part expected their Enemies reſolutely in the Open Field. In this manner the Van of the Enemy being attack'd in Front and Rear at the ſame time, was immediately routed, and tho *Aunak Chan* advanc'd in Perſon with his Son *Sungun* at the Head of a great Body of their Troops to ſupport them, far from being able to rally them, they were ſo roughly attack'd themſelves in their Turn, that *Sungun* having receiv'd a great Stroke with a Pike in his Face, all the reſt were put to flight. After which *Zingis Chan*, content with the Honour of having beat the Enemy with ſuch a Handful of Men, judged it convenient to retreat before all the Forces of the Enemy came down upon him, and ſhaping his March towards *Balzunabalak*, where he had ſent the Women and Baggage of his Men the Night before, he found at his Arrival there ſo little Water, that he was conſtrain'd to decamp and march towards the River *Kalaſſui*, and in regard the Tribe of the *Kunkurats* at that time dwelt upon the Banks of that River, and had a Chief called *Turk-illi*, who was a Relation of *Zingis Chan*, he ſent one of his Officers to tell him, that being his Friend and Relation, he would come and ſee him, and that if he was diſpos'd to keep up the old Friendſhip which was between them, he ſhould always find him ready to do it on his ſide with the greateſt Exactneſs; but that in caſe he was reſolv'd to renounce that Amity, and enter into Engagements contrary to his Intereſts, he need only ſpeak his Mind and then he knew what he had to do.

Is defeated.

Orchon.

Upon this Meſſage *Turk-illi* thought proper to put himſelf under the Obedience of *Zingis Chan*, and join him with all the Tribe of the *Kun-*

Turk-illi *with the* Kunkurats *joins* Tamuzin.

kurats. From thence they march'd together
Tola. towards the River *Collanuaer*, upon the Banks of which they ſtop'd ſome time. After which *Zingis Chan* ſent a Man of the Tribe of the *Badurgins*, called *Aarcaizum Bayadur* to *Aunak Chan* of the *Caraits*, to repreſent to him
Tamuzin's *Letter to* Ung Chan. " What Ingratitude it was in him to attack him " without any Reaſon, after he had been twice " eſtabliſh'd in his Dominions by the Arms of " his Father, and had receiv'd from himſelf on " five or ſix different Occaſions, ſo authentick " Proofs of his Friendſhip, that he had never " attempted to corrupt his Subjects, or ſeize " his Lands; having on the contrary always " ſought Occaſions to ſerve him without any " View to Intereſt: That he ever believ'd he " ought to conſider him and his Son *Sungun* as " the two Shafts of his Chariot; and *remember*, " *that one of them ought not to be broken*, unleſs " *the Chariot did not run true*, how ſtrong and " good ſoever the other Shaft might be." *Aunak Chan* having heard theſe Remonſtrances with ſome kind of Confuſion, acknowledg'd that there was nothing in the Whole which was not very true; but foraſmuch as it was in com-
Sungun *oppoſes the Peace.* pliance with the Advice of his Son *Sungun* that he had begun the War, he ſent back that Envoy to his Son, to receive from him the final Anſwer to thoſe Articles; and he who purpos'd to have his Revenge for his late Hurt, would upon no Account hear of an Accommodation.

Tamuzin *advances with his Army.* *Zingis Chan* having yet try'd many other ways to bring them to Peace, and ſeeing in the end he only loſt his Labour with them, ſet forward with all his Troops in queſt of them, and having quickly encounter'd *Aunak Chan* and his Son, who came to meet him with a very numerous Army, they came to a bloody Battle,

in

in which Fortune having declar'd in favour of *Zingis Chan*, *Aunak Chan* and his Son *Sungun* were conſtrain'd to ſave themſelves by Flight, and to abandon their Dominions, and all thoſe of their Subjects who liv'd on the Produce of their Lands and Cattle, at the Diſcretion of the Vanquiſher. *And defeats* Ung Chan *and his Son.*

After this Defeat, *Aunak Chan* reſolv'd to fly for Refuge to *Taijan Chan* of the *Naimanns*; but in the way falling into the Hands of two *Murſas* of the *Naimanns* called *Kurimazu* and *Tamika*, who knew there had always been much Animoſity between their Chan and him, they kill'd him with all his Attendants; and having ſtrip'd the dead Bodies of whatever they had about them of any uſe, they cut off the Head of *Aunak Chan* and brought it for a Preſent to their *Chan*, who blam'd much this Action, ſaying, "That being a great Prince, and venerable for his Age, they had better ſerv'd for his Guard than been his Executioners." And to honour the Memory of ſo great a Prince, he had his Head enchas'd in Silver, and plac'd upon his own Seat with the Face turn'd to the Door. They give out, that one Day when the Head was become dry, the Tongue was obſerv'd to ſtir and thruſt it ſelf three times out of the Mouth, which gave occaſion for many Speculations to thoſe who pretended to draw ſome Preſage from thence. *Death of* Ung Chan. Ung Chan's *Head enchas'd in Silver.*

Sungun the Son of *Aunak Chan* hid himſelf for ſome time among his own Subjects; but obſerving that they ſought after him to take away his Life, he retir'd to the Town of *Chateen*, which was in the Hands of a Lord of the Tribe of *Kallatz*, called *Calizohara*; who inſtead of protecting, put him to death, and *Death of* Sungun.

ſent

ſent his Head, with his Wife, his Children, and all the Effects he found, to *Zingis Chan.*

CHAP. IV.

Zingis Chan *is acknowledg'd* Chan *of the* Mogulls.

The leſſer neighbouring Tribes ſubmit to Tamuzin.

AFTER this Event, all the leſſer neighbouring Tribes putting themſelves under the Power of *Zingis Chan*, he began to grow formidable: but the other Tribes, who thought themſelves numerous enough to make head againſt them, would not hear of ſubmitting to him.

An. Dom. 1202.

In the Year 599, called by the *Mogulls Tongus*, or the Hog, *Zingis Chan* being full forty Years old, all the Tribes of the *Mogulls* which had ſubmitted to him, acknowledg'd him for their *Chan* in the Country of *Naumancura*, where he reſided at that time; on which Occaſion he gave his Subjects a great Feaſt. The moſt remarkable thing which happen'd at this Solemnity was, that one *Cokza*, ſurnamed the *Image of God*, Son of *Menglik Izka* by the firſt Venter, ſprung from the Tribe of the *Cunachmars*, Father-in-Law to *Zingis Chan*, came to this Prince, called till then *Tamuzin*, and declar'd to him, "That he came from God, to "tell him that from thenceforth he ſhould take "the Name of *Zingis*, and order all his "Subjects for the time to come to call him "*Zingis Chan.*" He foretold at the ſame time, "that all thoſe of his Poſterity ſhould be *Chans* "from

Naumancura, *or* Oman Curule.

Tamuzin *takes the Name of* Zingis Chan.

" from Generation to Generation." The word *Zin* in the *Mogull* Language ſignifies *great*, and the Termination *gis*, making the Superlative, *Zingis* is as much as to ſay, *the moſt great* *. *Derivation of the Name of* Zingis.

The aforeſaid *Cokza*, who brought him this Meſſage, was accuſtom'd to go much in Winter with his Feet bare, and very thin of Clothes; and as he was nevertheleſs in good Health, while others would have but ill endur'd ſuch a Courſe of Life, they gave him the Name of *the Image of God*. He gave out alſo, that a white Horſe † came to him from time to time, and that as ſoon as he was upon his Back, the Horſe mounted with him up to Heaven, where he convers'd with the Divinity †. *Cokza, a ſort of falſe Prophet.*

* *As our Author gives in this Place an exact Derivation of the Name of* Zingis Chan, *it ſeems to me that there is no room to doubt, that all thoſe who write that Name after a different manner do but maim it; nevertheleſs, as a Confirmation, it is proper to take notice that* Marco Polo, *who pretends to have lived ſeveral Years in great Repute at the Court of* Coplai Chan, *Grandſon of* Zingis Chan, *writes the Name of that Conqueror juſt as our Author. 'Tis on account of the ſame Derivation that the* Callmuks, *who uſe at preſent the true Language of the* Mogulls, *give the Name of* Zingis *to the Sea, as tho to ſignify an Extent of extraordinary Greatneſs.*

[† *This Story is copied from the Fable of* Mohammed's Al Borak.]

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Of the War of Zingis Chan, *againſt* Taijan Chan *of the* Naimanns; *and of the Reduction of the Tribe of the* Naimanns *under the Obedience of* Zingis Chan.

Taijan Chan *of the* Naimanns *invites* Alakus *to join againſt* Zingis Chan.

IN the mean time, *Taijan Chan* of the *Naimanns* diſpatch'd an Envoy to *Alakus*, Chief of the Tribe of the *Ungutts*, with Inſtructions to tell him, that *Zingis Chan* began to make himſelf more formidable every Day, and treated with extreme Severity thoſe whom he brought under his Power; cauſing the principal Men of them to be ſlain, and preſerving the common People only to augment the Number of his Slaves: That he had treated in this manner the Tribe of the *Caraits*, tho it was one of the moſt conſiderable Tribes of the *Turkiſh* Nation; that he had order'd *Aunak Chan* to be ſlain, with the chief of his Subjects, and had ſeiz'd all his Demeſns; that the Dread of theſe Violences had already brought the other ſmall neighbouring Tribes to ſubmit to that Prince: That for his part, not doubting but he *would ſerve them the ſame Sauce*, he judg'd it proper to attack him with their Joint Forces before he could arm himſelf, and *that he ſummon'd* Alakus *to enter into that* Confederacy.

Alakus, *Chief of the* Ungutts, *ſends Notice to* Zingis Chan.

But *Alakus* not only rejected theſe Meaſures, but ſent to inform *Zingis Chan* of the Propoſal which had been made to him on the Part of *Taijan Chan*. Upon which *Zingis Chan* having conſulted with the Heads of the Tribes dependent on him, they were unanimouſly of Opinion,

nion, that they were not in a Condition to undertake any thing till their Horſes were ſomewhat recover'd from the Fatigue of their laſt Expedition. But *Daritlai Olzingan*, or *Daritlaibulai*, *Zingis Chan*'s Uncle by the Father's ſide, diſapproving all Delay on this Occaſion, ſaid to them, "If you have no other Reaſon for deferring ſo long, an Expedition of ſuch Importance, but the bad Condition of your Horſes, you ſhall have mine, which are in very good Caſe, and I take upon me to furniſh the whole Army." Upon theſe Offers, the War againſt the *Naimanns* was reſolv'd on, and *Zingis Chan* aſſembled his Troops without Delay to be before-hand with his Enemies.

An. Dom. 1203. *War againſt the* Naimanns *begun.*

It was in the Year 600, called by the *Mogulls Zizkan*, or the *Mouſe*, that the War againſt the *Naimanns* began: but before he took the Field, *Zingis Chan* ſent a truſty Perſon called *Zena Noyan*, to get Intelligence of the Enemy, and inform himſelf whether the *Naimanns* were yet in Motion to come and attack him. *Zena Noyan* having ſeiz'd a *Naimann*, brought him to *Zingis Chan*; who queſtioning him about the Motions of thoſe of his Tribe, learn'd that *Taijan Chan*, after joining the *Markatts*, the *Virats*, and the *Dſoigerats*, had paſs'd the River of *Altai*, and made great Marches in order to ſurprize him.

Goigerats.

Now Siba.

The Armies meet.

Zingis Chan upon this Advice, ſetting forward inſtantly with his Troops, was before hand with him. After many days March, he was at length inform'd by his forlorn Hope, that the Front of his Enemies Army appear'd; whereupon he gave the Command of the Right Wing of his Army to his Brother *Zuzicar*, and that of the Left to his eldeſt Son *Zuzi*, placing

himſelf in the Center; in which Order, he made the Charge to be given.

Taijan Chan *wounded at the firſt Onſet.*

At the beginning of the Battle, it happen'd unluckily for the *Naimanns*, that their *Chan* was dangerouſly wounded, which oblig'd him to retire out of the Fight to a neighbouring Height; and the Commanders of his Troops perceiving, by his making no Anſwers to any thing they ſpoke about, that he was ſo weak, as he had not long to live, unanimouſly reſolv'd to defend themſelves to the laſt, to avoid being expos'd to the ill Treatment of *Zingis Chan*, in caſe they fell into his Hands. With this Reſolution they return'd to the Fight, and left their *Chan* dying in that Place.

Adviſes his Men to ſubmit to Zingis Chan.

After Numbers had been kill'd on both ſides, *Taijan Chan* ſent to tell the Chiefs of his Troops that he deſir'd them to ſurrender at Diſcretion to *Zingis Chan*; that they had done their Duty ſufficiently, and he was fully ſatisfy'd with the Services they had already done him: but ſeeing it was in vain to ſacrifice themſelves to oppoſe the happy Star of *Zingis Chan*, he exhorted them to provide for their Safety; but they continually refus'd to come to any Agreement, and perſiſted in the Reſolution of Fighting to the laſt Man, as they really did. The wounded *Chan*, finding nothing could divert them from ſuch a deſperate Reſolution, ſtrove to ſave himſelf by Flight with his Son and the few Men he had to guard his Perſon, but he died on the Road. However his Son *Kutſhluk* happily retreated towards *Bairak Chan*, who was his Father's eldeſt Brother.

Dies, and his Son Kutſhluk *flies to* Bairak Chan.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Reduction of the Tribe of the Markatts *under* Zingis Chan, *and of the Conqueſt of the Town and Kingdom of* Tangut.

IN regard the Seaſon was already much advanced at the time that *Zingis Chan* went in queſt of *Taijan Chan*, he return'd immediately after the Battle with his Troops, to take up their Winter Quarters in the Lands belonging to him. In the Spring following he enter'd the Country of the *Markatts*; the *Chan* of this Tribe called *Tochtabegi*, had on ſeveral Occaſions openly declar'd himſelf againſt the Intereſts of *Zingis Chan:* he was alſo preſent at the Battle which *Zingis Chan* fought the Autumn before with *Taijan Chan*; but foreſeeing from the beginning of the Action that *Taijan Chan* would be defeated, he knew ſo well how to ſhift for himſelf, that eſcaping with his Men from the Rout, he retir'd towards *Bairak*, another *Chan* of the *Naimanns*.

Zingis Chan returns.

Invades the Markatts.

Zingis Chan having beaten the *Markatts*, and reduc'd that Tribe under his Obedience, choſe a great Number of Men out of them to reinforce his Troops, and march'd from thence towards the Capital of the Country of *Tangut*. Upon the News of this March, the *Chan* of that Country, who was a very aged Prince, ſhut himſelf up in his Metropolis, which gave name to the whole Country, and reſolv'd to defend himſelf to the laſt. *Zingis Chan* being arriv'd before the Town, ſummon'd the *Chan* to ſurrender; who refuſing, he beſieg'd it in Form: and

Subdues them.

Invades Tangut.

Beſieges and takes Tangut.

Puts the Chan *to death.* and having taken it after a Siege of ſeveral Weeks by a general Aſſault, he caus'd the *Chan* to be put to death, and the Walls of the

Raiſes the Walls of Tangut. Town to be thrown down. Then having conquer'd ſome other Towns thereabouts, he put ſtrong Gariſons into them, and return'd to his own Dominions.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Death of Bairak Chan *of the* Naimanns, *and of* Tochtabegi *Chan of the* Markatts.

Bairak Chan *of the* Naimanns *taken and killed.* *Zingis Chan* having return'd from the Expedition of *Tangut*, and reſted during the Winter in his own Territories, went in the Spring following in queſt of *Bairak Chan*; but arriving at the Place of his ordinary Reſidence, he underſtood he had gone a hunting ſome days before. Upon this Advice he follow'd him with all the haſte he could, and having taken him Priſoner, order'd his Head to be cut off.

Kutſhluk *and* Tochtabegi *fly the Country.* In the mean time, one of the Retinue of *Bairak Chan*, having eſcap'd out of the Hands of the *Mogulls*, went to find out *Kutſhluk*, the Son of *Taijan Chan*, and *Tochtabegi*, *Chan* of the *Markatts*, and his Sons, who thought themſelves perfectly ſafe, and told them of the Misfortune which had happen'd to *Bairak Chan*; whereupon they all betook themſelves to flight and retir'd towards the Banks of the River *Irtis*. *Zingis Chan* for his part return'd to his Dominions, carrying with him the Wives, the Children, and in general all that belong'd to *Bairak*

Chan. He paſs'd the Winter at home, and took the Field about Spring with a good Body of Troops in ſearch of *Kutſhluk* and *Tochtabegi*, who had ſettled themſelves upon the Banks of the *Irtis*.

Settle themſelves on the River Irtis.

Zingis Chan *purſues them.*

In his Approach to that River, he arriv'd in the Neighbourhood of the Habitations of the *Dſoigerats* and the *Carliks*, the firſt of which had a Chief called *Conacabegi*, and the latter a *Chan* named *Arſlan:* Theſe two Princes not ſeeing themſelves in a Condition to try their Forces with thoſe of *Zingis Chan*, put themſelves under his Subjection, and led him towards the Habitations of *Kutſhluk* and *Tochtabegi*, who getting News of the Approach of *Zingis Chan* fled as faſt as they could: but he purſued them ſo cloſe that *Tochtabegi* fell into his Hands, whom he inſtantly cauſed to be put to death. As for *Kutſhluk*, he happily eſcaped for this time alſo, and took ſhelter in *Turkeſtan*, with *Cavar Chan* of *Carakitay*, who at that time reign'd in *Turkeſtan*. *Cavar Chan* receiv'd that unfortunate Prince with all the Diſtinction imaginable; and not only gave him his Protection, but alſo his Daughter in Marriage, and look'd upon him as his own Child. In the mean time *Zingis Chan* having no more to do on that ſide, return'd to his own Dominions.

Goigerats *and* Carliks *ſubmit.*

Tochtabegi Chan *of the* Markatts *taken and killed.*

Kutſhluk *flies to* Cavar Chan *of* Turkeſtan.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Reduction of the Kergis *under the Obedience of* Zingis Chan, *and of the Death of* Zamucha Zizen.

Kergis *ſubmit to* Zingis Chan.

ZIngis Chan, on his Return from the Expedition againſt *Tochtabegi*, ſent two Embaſſadors, called *Altai* and *Taramiſh*, to the *Kergis*, to ſummon them to ſubmit to him. The Chief of the *Kergis* called *Uruſſinall*, ſeeing himſelf in no Condition to refuſe with Impunity ſo powerful a Prince, accepted the Propoſal, and diſpatch'd one of his principal Officers to *Zingis Chan* to aſſure him of his Fidelity, and preſent him among other magnificent Preſents, with a very rare Bird, called by the *Turks Shungar*, and by the *Ruſſians Kratzſhet*. This Bird is all over white, having nothing but the Head, Feet, Bill and Eyes of a fine red*.

Shungar, *a rare Bird.*

Zamuca Zizen *deliver'd up to* Zingis Chan.

After the Death of *Aunak Chan* of the *Caraits*, *Zamuca Zizen* retir'd to *Taijan Chan* of the *Naimanns*, and ſome time after the Death of the latter he return'd to his Tribe, which was that of the *Dſoigerats*; but the *Dſoigerats* conſidering that *Zingis Chan* was not only then their Maſter, but alſo of the ſame Blood with themſelves, and that this *Zamuca Zizen* had been the only Cauſe of the Ruin of *Aunak Chan* of the *Caraits*, and of *Taijan Chan* of the *Naimanns*, their former Maſters, they reſolv'd to carry him bound Hands and Feet to *Zingis Chan*, who caus'd him to be put to death by drawing him Limb from Limb. And *in the midſt of his Torments* he declar'd, that if ever

Put to a cruel death.

* *See* Page 37.

Zingis

Zingis Chan had fallen into his Hands, he would have put him to the ſame Death which he then ſuffer'd *.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Voluntary Submiſſion of the Vigurs *to* Zingis Chan.

THE *Vigurs* liv'd under the Protection of *Cavar Chan* of *Turkeſtan*, and annually ſent him magnificent Preſents, tho they had a Prince of their own called *Idikut Chan*. But *Cavar Chan* reſolving to ſend one of the Lords of his Court called *Shuwakom* to the *Vigurs*, with the Character of *Deruga*, or Intendant of the Policy, to take exact Information of the Condition of their Country, the *Vigurs* conſider'd this as an Innovation which might be made a Preſident of; and as on the other hand that Prince exerted his Power with much Violence, they reſolv'd to throw off *Cavar Chan*'s Yoke.

Vigurs *throw off the Yoke of* Cavar Chan *of* Turkeſtan.

Idikut Chan *of* Vigurs.

* *This is the ſame* Zamuca Zizen, *who is pretended to have been the Rival of* Zingis Chan, *with the Daughter of* Aunak Chan, *at the time of his ſuppoſed Retreat to the Court of the Chan of the* Caraits; *and who fired with Diſdain, to ſee himſelf contemned by that Princeſs, for the Love of* Zingis Chan, *leaves no Stone unturn'd to deſtroy that too happy Rival. But as our Author makes no mention of thoſe romantick Adventures, and reports very ingenuouſly the Circumſtances of all theſe Events, one may venture to depend on him on this Occaſion*; *eſpecially ſince he explains himſelf preciſely enough thereupon, aſſuring us that* Aunak Chan *endeavour'd to enſnare* Zingis Chan *by Propoſals of Marriage between his Daughter and the eldeſt Son of this laſt*; *and that he does not put the Daughter of* Aunak Chan, *upon whom all this Intrigue turns, among the Wives of* Zingis Chan; *as may be ſeen,* Chap. XII. *of this ſame Part.*

Kills Cavar Chan's Deruga.

Wherefore having underſtood that *Zingis Chan* was a very formidable Prince, who receiv'd very graciouſly all thoſe who voluntarily put themſelves under his Subjection, they perſuaded *Idikut Chan* to have the *Deruga* kill'd which *Cavar Chan* had ſent among them; after which he ſent Embaſſadors to *Zingis Chan*, with Commiſſion to propoſe to him, that having heard ſo many Wonders about his Perſon and Government, he offer'd to put himſelf with all his Subjects under his Obedience, provided he could be aſſur'd of his Protection againſt the Reſentment of *Cavar Chan*.

Seeks Zingis Chan's *Protection.*

Vigurs *ſubmit to* Zingis Chan.

Zingis Chan having embrac'd this Propoſal with Joy, diſpatch'd one of the principal Officers of his Court with his Embaſſadors to aſſure *Idikut Chan* of his Protection. Whereupon that *Chan* having reſolved to wait on *Zingis Chan* in Perſon with magnificent Preſents, this Prince receiv'd him with ſo many Marks of Affection, that *Idikut Chan* beſought him to receive him among the Number of his Children. *Zingis Chan* having granted him his Requeſt, gave him his Daughter in Marriage, and ever after preſerv'd much Friendſhip for him. I have already obſerv'd, that the Word *Idikut*, ſignifies a *free Man* that is ſubject to no body.

Idikut *marries a Daughter of* Zingis Chan.

CHAP. X

Of Zingis Chan's *War againſt* Altan Chan *of* Kitay.

Zingis Chan *wars on* Altan Chan *of* Kitay.

Zingis Chan having reduc'd to his Obedience the whole Nation of the *Mogulls*, reſolv'd to revenge on *Altan Chan* of *Kitay* all the

Matters

Matters of Complaint which he had on ſeveral Occaſions given, as well to his Father and him as his Anceſtors; and having propos'd this Affair to the Heads of the different Tribes under his dependence, they adviſ'd him to ſend one of his Officers called *Zachiredſa*, in quality of Embaſſador to the Court of that *Chan*. This Miniſter arriving at the Court of *Altan Chan*, gave him to underſtand that God having made *Zingis Chan* Maſter of a vaſt Empire, he was ſent to ſummon him to ſubmit himſelf to his Obedience, and acknowledge him for his Lord and Maſter; that he had Orders to demand a direct Anſwer to the Point, and that without Delay; that in caſe of refuſal he was to prepare for War, and that it would ſoon appear which of the two would be Maſter.

Summons Altan Chan *to ſubmit.*

Altan Chan having heard this Propoſal, fell into a Paſſion both againſt *Zingis Chan* and his Miniſter, ſaying, "You believe perhaps you "have to do with one of your petty *Turkiſh* "Tribes; but if your *Chan* is ſo eager to be "at it, he may come; I ſhall endeavour to have "his Work ready for him." The Embaſſador returning with this Anſwer, carefully obſerv'd all the Rivers, Roads, and Avenues to the Frontiers of *Kitay*, that he might make his Uſe of it in time and place. *Zingis Chan* having heard his Report, took the Field off-hand with very conſiderable Forces: *Altan Chan* having likewiſe on his Part gather'd a numerous Army, advanc'd to meet his Enemy, and encamp'd very advantageouſly about the Frontiers of his Empire.

Embaſſador obſerves the Roads.

Zingis Chan *and* Altan Chan *prepare for War.*

In the mean time *Zingis Chan* entring *Kitay*, took ſeveral Towns in ſight of *Altan Chan*, of which he burnt ſome, and put the beſt part of the Inhabitants to the Sword. *Altan Chan*, to hinder

Zingis Chan *enters* China.

hinder him from making farther Progreſs, detach'd one of his Generals with a conſiderable Body of his Army to oppoſe his Paſſage. This General having learn'd by a Deſerter that *Zingis Chan* had newly taken one of the greateſt Cities of *Kitay*, the Throats of whoſe Inhabitants he had order'd to be cut, march'd immediately on that ſide, in hopes of ſurprizing the *Mogulls* before they got any Tidings of his March, the rather becauſe that Man aſſur'd him, that he fled to them at the very time they were buſy in dividing the Spoil which they had made on that Occaſion; but *Zingis Chan* who put all his truſt in God, came and attack'd him briſkly when he thought him far enough off; and having entirely defeated him, made himſelf Maſter of a great many Towns thereabouts. After which falling unexpectedly upon the grand Army of *Altan Chan*, he ſlew 30000 Men, and oblig'd that Prince to ſhut himſelf up in his City of *Chan Balik* *.

Routs Altan Chan's *General.*

Zingis Chan *ſubdues many Places in* Kitay.

After ſo great a Victory, *Zingis Chan* took, without much Reſiſtance, many of the conſiderable Towns of *Kitay*; mean while *Altan Chan* obſerving that *Zingis Chan* pierc'd farther every day within his Empire, and even drew near the Town of *Chan Balik*, held Council with the principal Lords of his Court, to know what he had to do in ſo tickliſh a Juncture, and whether they judg'd it moſt convenient to continue a War ſo unfortunate in the beginning, or to make Peace with *Zingis Chan*. On this Occaſion one of the prime Lords of his Court call'd *Dſing-Dſang*, gave his Opinion for Peace, by reaſon that as ſoon as it was concluded *Zingis Chan* would return into his Dominions, and that then they

[* *Tis a* Tatar *Name, ſignifying the City of the* Chan, Balik *is a Town, ſo is* Bally *in* Iriſh.]

would be at full liberty to aſſemble the States of the Empire, and conſider deliberately what they had to do in ſo nice a Situation. This Council was approv'd by *Altan Chan*, who having quickly diſpatch'd an Embaſſador to *Zingis Chan*, order'd him to propoſe Peace, and his Daughter in Marriage. *Zingis Chan* having accepted theſe Propoſals, eſpouſed the Daughter of *Altan Chan*, and retir'd after the Concluſion of the Peace into his hereditary Dominions.

Altan Chan sues for Peace to Zingis Chan.

Altan Chan finding after the Retreat of the *Mogulls* that all the Northern Provinces of his Empire were ruin'd, left the Government of *Chanbalik* to his Son, and went to reſide in the City of *Namkin*, which his Father had very ſtrongly fortify'd. This Town had a triple Encloſure of Walls, the outmoſt of which was forty Leagues about; it was built by the ſide of a great River, and of ſo vaſt Extent, that one would not be leſs than a Day paſſing by Barge from one end of the City to the other.

Removes his Seat to Namkin.

Namkin *deſcribed.*

Altan Chan having, before his Departure to *Namkin*, cut off the Heads of ſome Lords of *Cara Kitay* for ſome ſlight Faults, it very much diſguſted the *Carakitayans*, and induced ſome of them after *Altan Chan*'s Departure, to take whatever they could lay hold on of the Effects and Cattle belonging to his Son their Sovereign, and retire afterwards to the Countries in Subjection to *Zingis Chan.* Another of the Lords of *Cara Kitay* having ſurpriz'd and ruin'd ſome Towns in the Domains of *Altan Chan*, ſent one of his Men to *Zingis Chan* to ſound whether he ſhould meet with an agreeable Reception from him; and having receiv'd a favourable Anſwer, he went over to him, and in regard he was treated very honourably by that Prince, many great Lords and other People of

Caraki-tayans *leave their Country.*

Several Lords of Carakitay *go over to* Zingis Chan.

Cara

Cara Kitay follow'd his Example upon the leaſt Pretence of Diſcontent.

About five or ſix Months after the Departure of *Altan Chan*, his Son to whom he had given the Command of the Northern Provinces of his Empire, having put the Government of the Town of *Chanbalik* into the Hands of ſome truſty Lords, went himſelf to his Father at *Namkin* to acquaint him with the bad Condition of their Affairs on the Frontiers. In the mean time *Zingis Chan* underſtanding on all Hands, that the Empire of *Altan Chan* was very much rent by Factions, would not neglect ſo good an Opportunity of ſeizing that fine Country. To effect this, he ſent two of his Generals called *Zamuca Bayadur*, and *Maſcan Bayadur*, with a numerous Army on that ſide, with Orders to make a new Irruption into *Kitay*, and to endeavour to make themſelves Maſters of *Chanbalik*. This Army being arriv'd on the Frontiers, was conſiderably reinforc'd by a great Number of Deſerters from *Cara Kitay*. *Altan Chan* on the News of this March, and knowing there was a great Scarcity in the Town of *Chanbalik* and the Country about it, ſent thither ſome thouſand Camels laden with Corn, under the Guard of a great Body of Troops commanded by two of his beſt Generals: But the Troops of *Zingis Chan* coming up with them entirely defeated them, took the two Generals Priſoners, and ſeized all the Camels and Corn of the Convoy. The News of that Misfortune ſo ſenſibly affected *Altan Chan* that he poiſon'd himſelf.

Zingis Chan invades the Northern Provinces of Kitay.

His Army reinforced by Deſerters from Cara Kitay.

Altan Chan poiſons himſelf.

Chanbalik ſurrenders.

At the Approach of the Generals of *Zingis Chan*, *Chanbalik* ſurrender'd without ſtriking a Stroke. Upon this News *Zingis Chan* ſent one of his principal Officers called *Kutuktu Noyan*, accompany'd with two others of his Miniſters,

niſters, to *Chanbalik*, to ſeize the Treaſure of *Altan Chan*, and carry it to the Place of his uſual Reſidence. Arriving afterwards in Perſon at *Chanbalik*, he apply'd all his Care to ſtrengthen and extend more and more his Conqueſts in *Kitay*: For this End he took by degrees the greateſt part of the Cities of that Empire, in the moſt conſiderable of which he put Gariſons and truſty Governors; and having imploy'd five Years in this Expedition, return'd into his hereditary Provinces.

Zingis Chan *five Years in his Expedition to* Kitay.

CHAP. XI.

Of the Reduction of the Town of Akaſhin, *the quaſhing ſome Seeds of Rebellion, and of the Death of* Kutſhluk.

Zingis Chan in his Return from his Expedition of *Kitay*, went and beſieged the Town of *Akaſhin* in the Country of *Tangut*, and having ſubdued it, as well as all the neighbouring Country, he reſolved to go and finiſh the Conqueſt of *Kitay*, by reducing the Towns which remain'd yet untaken in that Empire; but he was diverted from the Execution of that Deſign by the Advice he receiv'd, that the Tribes which had refuſed till then to acknowledge him for their Maſter, had ſubmitted to *Kutſhluk* the Son of *Taijan Chan*, and had made him their *Chan*. That afterwards *Kutſhluk* ſeeing himſelf in a Condition to ſupport himſelf by his own Forces, by the Advice of *Sultan Mahamet Shah* of *Charaſ'm*, and on ſome Pretence of Diſcontent ill enough grounded, had unawares

Kaſhin, *or* Caſhin *in* Tangut *taken.*

Cavar Chan *deprived of half* Turkeſtan, *by* Kutſhluk.

unawares attack'd *Cavar Chan* his Father-in-Law, and had depriv'd him of the better half of his Dominions.

Naimanns *in Motion.*

To this News was joined another Piece, *viz.* That a Brother of *Tochtabegi*, *Chan* of the *Markatts*, called *Kudath*, was arriv'd with his two Nephews, the Sons of *Tochtabegi Chan*, among the *Naimanns*, and began to make the Subjects of *Zingis Chan* in thoſe Quarters uneaſy, by reaſon that the *Naimanns* being People newly ſubdued, could not as yet accuſtom themſelves to the Government of *Zingis Chan.*

Markats *ſubdued.*

Theſe Tidings having changed the Reſolution of *Zingis Chan*, he reſolv'd not to be abſent from his hereditary Dominions in ſo delicate a Juncture. At the ſame time he ſent two of his Generals called *Suida Bayadur*, and *Camu Tuſhazar*, with a conſiderable Body of his Troops againſt *Kudath* and his adherents; who coming up with them at the River *Dſam Muran*, killed a good Number of them, and took the reſt Priſoners. This Defeat put an End entirely to the Sovereignty of the *Markatts*, which happen'd in the Year 613.

Gam-Muran.

An. Dom. 1216.

Tumats *ſubdued.*

As the *Tumats* in like manner had committed Hoſtilities on the Lands of *Zingis Chan*, while he was imployed in *Kitay*, he alſo detach'd one of his Generals called *Burgu Noyan* with ſome Troops to bring them to reaſon, which he did with a great deal of Rigour, having cauſed a great Number of them to be kill'd, and treated the reſt exceeding ill. Againſt *Kutſhluk*, who appear'd a more formidable Enemy, he ſent the moſt experienc'd of his Generals, called *Zena Noyan*, with a numerous Army, ordering him to go and attack him where-ever he could meet him. *Kutſhluk*, far from hiding himſelf, advanced to meet *Zena Noyan* with an Army

Zena Noyan *ſent againſt* Kutſhluk.

Army ſuperior to that of the *Mogulls*; but *Zena Noyan* charg'd him ſo briſky, notwithſtanding the Superiority of his Troops, that he was conſtrain'd to fly, follow'd by a ſmall Number of his Men; all the reſt of his Army having been cut to Pieces. *Zena Noyan*, not content with ſo great a Victory, ſtuck cloſe to *Kutſhluk*, and purſued him ſo briſkly, that he even kill'd all the Men that accompany'd him; inſomuch that not above three beſides himſelf reach'd the Country of *Sarekoll*, and the Neighbourhood of the City of *Badagſhan*. Sarekoll.

Mean while *Zena Noyan*, who never ceaſed purſuing him, meeting a Countryman in his way plowing, aſk'd him if he had not ſeen Strangers paſs by? and the Countryman telling him that four were newly paſs'd by who took the Road to *Badagſhan*; *Zena Noyan* redoubled his Speed, and coming up with *Kutſhluk* at laſt in the Country of *Sarekoll*, before he could get to *Badagſhan*, he order'd him immediately to be put to death. After which he went back with his Army into the Dominions of his Maſter, who was ſo pleaſed with the good Services he had done him on this Occaſion, that he rewarded him magnificently at his Return. Kutſhluk *taken and killed.*

CHAP. XII.

Of the Wives and Children of Zingis Chan.

Zingis Chan had ſo great a Number of Wives and Concubines, that they reckon above five hundred. All his lawful Wives were Daughters Zingis Chan *had* 500 *Wives and Concubines.*

ters of Chans or Princes; among which were five whom he lov'd beyond the reſt. The firſt was called *Borta Cuzin*, by whom he had four Sons; the ſecond *Kizu*, the Daughter of *Altan Chan* of *Kitay*; the third *Carizu*, who was the Widow of *Taijan Chan*; the fourth was called *Milu*, and the fifth *Singan:* Theſe two laſt were deſcended of a *Tatar* Family, and were two Siſters; the laſt of which he eſpouſed after the Death of the firſt.

His five favourite Wives.

The four Sons which *Zingis Chan* had by *Borta Cuzin*, were called, 1. *Zuzi*, 2. *Zagatai*, 3. *Ugadai*, and 4. *Taulai*. I have already obſerv'd, that the word *Zuzi* ſignifies *a Gueſt*. Theſe four Brothers had each of them his particular Imployment. *Zuzi* govern'd the Œconomy of his Father's Court; *Zagatai* adminiſtred Juſtice, and heard the Complaints of his Subjects; *Ugadai* had the Management of the Treaſury, and receiv'd the Accounts of the Governors of Provinces; and *Taulai* had the Care of all that related to the Affair of War.

Zingis Chan's *four favourite Sons, who had the Management of Affairs.*

Beſides theſe four Sons, *Zingis Chan* had five others by his other Wives. Among theſe laſt, and his other neareſt Relations, he diſtributed the principal Governments of *Kitay*, when he had made himſelf Maſter of all that Empire as far as the Country of *Almak*; but he divided the Sovereign Lordſhip of his hereditary Provinces, and in general of all his Conqueſts, among his four eldeſt Sons, exhorting them always to live in amity with one another as became good Brothers: and having aſſembled them all four on that Occaſion, he gave them a Bundle of Arrows, bidding them break it in the Condition it was; which none of them being able to do, he unfaſten'd the Bundle and gave them the Arrows one by one: then being able eaſily

His five other Sons made Governors of Kitay.

His Dominions divided among the four eldeſt.

This Paſſage is reported of ſeveral Princes.

eaſily to break them, he ſhew'd them it was the ſame with them, and that as long as they liv'd in Union among themſelves, no neighbouring Power would dare meddle with them; but when once they came to be divided, it would be an eaſy Matter to bring them under: That laſtly, he was deſirous they ſhould chooſe one from among themſelves while he was yet living, to ſucceed him in the Empire after his Death, with the ſupreme Authority over the reſt; each of whom ſhould nevertheleſs be Maſter in the Dominions which fell to his Share.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Commencement of the War between Zingis Chan, *and Sultan* Mahamet Shah *of* Charaſs'm.

Zingis Chan having eſtabliſh'd Peace in his Dominions, and completed the Reduction of all the Tribes of the *Turkiſh* Nation under his Obedience, ſent an Embaſſador called *Makinut-Jalauzi*, to Sultan *Mahamet Shah* of *Charaſs'm*, to propoſe on his Behalf, that having become Maſter of all the neighbouring Dominions from the Eaſt to the Frontiers of his Empire, he earneſtly deſir'd that he would acknowledge him for his Father, as he on his Part was ready to conſider him as his Son; becauſe it appear'd expedient for their mutual Advantage, that the good Underſtanding which then ſubſiſted between the two Em-

Zingis Chan ſends an Embaſſy to Sultan Mohammed Chowarazm Shah.

pires ſhould be carefully cultivated for the time to come.

Sultan Mohammed's Diſcourſe with the Embaſſador.

Upon this Propoſal, Sultan *Mahamet Shah* of *Charaſs'm*, having taken the Embaſſador aſide, ſaid to him, "I have one Queſtion to "aſk you, provided you tell me the Truth; "Is it true that your *Chan* has conquer'd *Kitay?*" and at the ſame time took a magnificent Scarf adorn'd with Jewels, which he actually wore at that time, and made him a Preſent of it, to induce him to diſguiſe nothing from him. Whereupon the Embaſſador anſwer'd him, "I pro-"teſt before God that all which my *Chan* has "order'd me to tell you is true, and that you "will ſoon find I tell Truth, in caſe you "come to have any Difference with him." At this Anſwer the Sultan fell into a great Paſſion, ſaying, "I know not what your *Chan* means "by ſending me word he had conquer'd ſo "many Provinces? do you know of how great "Extent my Empire is? or upon what ground "your Maſter pretends to be greater than I, "expecting I ſhould honour him as my Father, "and be content to be treated as his Son? has "he then ſo many Armies?"

Offended with the Embaſſador's Anſwer.

Embaſſador's Flattery.

The Embaſſador perceiving by this Diſcourſe that the Sultan was angry, began to flatter him, ſaying, "I know very well that you are more "powerful than my Maſter; for there is as "much Difference between you two, as there "is between the true Sun and a mock one: "but you know on the other hand that he is "my Maſter, and that I muſt execute his Or-"ders: Nevertheleſs I can aſſure you his In-"tentions are very good." This Flattery having mollify'd the Sultan's Temper, he conſented at laſt to every thing which the Embaſſador propos'd,

propos'd, and ſent him back very well ſatisfy'd with his Negotiation.

Makinut-Jalauzi having given *Zingis Chan* an Account of the Succeſs of his Commiſſion, this Prince reſolv'd thence forward to live in good Underſtanding with the Sultan *Shah* of *Charaſ'm*, and not to attack him unleſs he gave him ſome great Provocation; and tho the Calif of *Bagdat*, called *Naſir* *, wrote to *Zingis Chan* to induce

Zingis Chan *reſolves to live in amity with Sultan* Mohammed.

H 2

* *The Califs of* Bagdat, *in quality of Succeſſors of* Mahomet, *ought ſolely to have poſſeſſed the ſupreme Power among the* Mahometans, *as well in Temporals as Spirituals; but there ſprung up by degrees new Houſes, which at length drew all the temporal Power from them, and left the Califs no more than an empty Shadow of Superiority.*

Such was, among others, the Houſe of the Shahs *of* Charaſ'm, *which puſh'd things ſo far, that Sultan* Mahomet, *who is ſpoken of in this Place, after having ſeized all* Perſia, *and ſeveral other conſiderable Provinces, preſumed to expect that the Calif* Naſir *ſhould receive a Gariſon of his Troops into the City of* Bagdat, *and permit him to come and live there whenever he thought fit: And upon being refuſed, he omitted nothing to obtain by force, what he could not get voluntarily yielded to him; which obliged the Calif, who was not in a Condition to make head againſt the Forces of Sultan* Mahomet, *to apply himſelf to* Zingis Chan, *as the only Prince in* Aſia *at that time, who did not fear the Power of the* Shah *of* Charaſ'm.

[*This was the 8th Race of Kings in* Perſia *which threw off the Yoke of the Chalifs: They had raiſed themſelves upon the Ruin of the* Selgukians, *to whom they owed all their Greatneſs, the firſt of them being a Slave of* Gelalaldin Malek Shah, *the third and greateſt Sultan of that Family, whom he made his Governor of* Chowarazm. *The Son of this Slave taking Advantage of the Diſtractions which enſued in* Perſia *upon the Death of* Gelalaldin, *aſſumed the Title of King of* Chowarazm, *and his Succeſſors proved the greateſt Enemies the* Selgukians *had.* Togrul *the laſt of them being taken in Battle by* Tacaſh *the Father of Sultan* Mohammed, *was hang'd by him. It was in abhorrence of this Ingratitude, among other Reaſons, that the Chalifs would never admit the Shahs of* Chowarazm *to the Enjoyment of thoſe Honours in* Bagdad *which the* Selgukians *poſſeſſed.*

The

Calif of Bagdad *writes to him to invade the Sultan.*

induce him to declare War againſt Sultan *Mahamet* *, he never would do it; inſomuch that for a long time there was ſo great a Harmony between the two Empires, that one might have carry'd Gold or Silver in his Hands from one Empire to the other without any Hazard: and this Union continued till ſuch time as *Gagir Chan*, by the Order of Sultan *Mahamet*, cauſed the Embaſſadors and Merchants, *Zingis Chan*'s Subjects, to be maſſacred; which happen'd after this manner.

Mogulls *no Towns or Caſtles.*

The *Mogulls*, who were properly the Subjects of *Zingis Chan*, have neither Towns nor Caſtles, being accuſtom'd to live in wooden Hutts, which they remove from Place to Place as they ſee proper; and in regard the Merchants of the neighbouring Countries could gain conſiderably by them, when they could go there with ſafety, they reſorted from all Parts with great Quantities of Merchandizes into the Dominions of *Zingis Chan*; becauſe on account of the good Order which he had eſtabliſh'd there, they could carry on their Traffick with perfect Security. Thoſe of the Country of *Ma-urennar*, who were under the Dependance of Sultan *Mahamet*, being inform'd of it, went thither alſo

Zingis Chan *ſettles a Trade between the two Empires.*

[* *The Embaſſador ſent by the Chalif to* Zingis Chan, *being to paſs thro' Sultan* Mohammed's *Dominions; therefore to prevent the Conſequence of having his Letters ſeized, the Chalif order'd the Envoy's Head to be ſhaven, and his Credentials impreſs'd upon it with Needles, after the Manner that the Arms of Pilgrims are mark'd at* Jeruſalem, *and ſo ſent him towards the* Tatar *Court: Where having deliver'd his Meſſage, and being demanded to ſhew his Authority, he deſired his Head might be ſhaven, and ſaid it would then appear.*

Hiſtæus, *Prince of* Miletus, *when at the Court of* Darius, *King of* Perſia, *made uſe of the ſame Device, to ſtir up* Ariſtagoras *his Son-in-Law to a Revolt; as we find in the Fifth Book of* Herodotus.]

with

with abundance of valuable Merchandizes. Upon their arrival, *Zingis Chan* having ſent for ſome of them, with the beſt of their Goods, they ſet ſo exorbitant a Price upon them, that he was enrag'd; and having ſhewn them above a thouſand Cheſts with all ſorts of valuable Commodities, you may ſee by this, ſays he, "That "it is not the firſt time that I have cheapen'd "ſuch like Merchandizes; but ſince you durſt "exact upon me with ſo much Aſſurance, I "intend to pay you in your kind;" and without more Ceremony, he made them take what they had, without paying them for any thing. After which, having ſent for other Merchants of *Ma-urennar* with the ſame ſorts of Merchandizes, he began in like manner to cheapen ſeveral Parcels of them. But they, who were before inform'd of what had happen'd to their Countrymen, ſaid to the *Chan*, "We do not "pretend to aſk more for our Merchandizes "than they are worth; that if they are to your "liking, you need only take them and give us "what you think reaſonable; that even if you "have a mind to take them, and give us no-"thing for them, we ſhall nevertheleſs reſt ſa-"tisfy'd."

Extortion of the Merchants of Mawaralnahr, *provokes* Zingis Chan.

Zingis Chan *pleaſed with the Conduct of other Merchants.*

This Anſwer pleaſing *Zingis Chan*, he not only order'd them to be paid double the Value of their Merchandizes, but alſo gave them free liberty to ſell the reſt of them in his Camp, without preſenting the chief Men with the leaſt Trifle. *Zingis Chan* perceiving that Trade might bring conſiderable Advantage to his Subjects, at the Departure of thoſe Merchants, ſent 450 Merchants of his own Subjects with them, to go and trade in the Sultan's Dominions: he order'd theſe Merchants to be accompany'd by three Officers of his Court, called,

Sends Embaſſadors with his Merchants into Sultan Mohammed's *Dominions.*

1. *Mahamet* of *Charaſs'm*, 2. *Ali Chodſa* of *Buchara*, and 3. *Juſſuf* of *Otrar*, whom he ſent in Quality of Embaſſadors to Sultan *Mahamet Shah* of *Charaſs'm*; and on this Occaſion he wrote to him a very obliging Letter, importing, "That he had uſed his Merchants "ſo well during their Stay in his Dominions, "that he believ'd he might with reaſon flatter "himſelf that he would do the ſame with re- "gard to his Subjects which went to traffick in "his Empire; that he gave him his Word he "would always act the Part of a good Father, "and reckon'd he would on his ſide continue "to be a good Son to him; which being per- "form'd by both Parties, it could not chooſe "but contribute powerfully to the aggrandizing "of their Empires, and the Augmentation of "their common Glory."

Arrive at Otrar. Theſe Embaſſadors being arriv'd at the Town of *Otrar*, went to ſalute the Governor of that Town, who was Couſin-Germain to Sultan *Mahamet*'s Mother. He formerly went by the Name of *Inallzik*, but the Sultan had conferr'd on him the Name of *Gagir Chan*; the Merchants on their Part paid him alſo their Compliments, and offer'd him ſome Preſents: but there happen'd to be among them a Merchant, who having been formerly an intimate Friend of *Gagir Chan*'s, thought fit, without any Deſign, to call him by his former Name *Inallzik* *. *Gagir Chan* was ſo ſenſibly provok'd with that Familiarity, that without more ado he cauſed the Embaſſadors as well as the Merchants to be arreſted, and diſpatch'd a Courier to the Sultan to inform him, that there were arriv'd at *Otrar* Strangers, who pretended ſome of them to be Embaſſadors, and others Merchants; but that having ſtrong Reaſons to ſuſpect them of ſome

Gagir Chan, Governor of Otrar.

Arreſts the Embaſſadors and Merchants.

* *See* Pag. 32.

ſome ill Deſigns, he had cauſed them to be arreſted, expecting his Orders. Whereupon the Sultan without taking any farther Information of the Matter, having order'd that they ſhould be immediately put to death, *Gagir Chan* executed that Order *according to the Letter*, and confiſcated all their Effects for the Sultan's Uſe.

Puts them to death by the Sultan's Order.

Nevertheleſs one of the aforeſaid Merchants having had the good Fortune to eſcape the Maſſacre, went and inform'd *Zingis Chan* of that villainous Action. At ſo unexpected a Piece of News, that Prince fell into an extreme Rage, and having forthwith given the neceſſary Orders for aſſembling his Troops, he ſent to tell the Sultan, that ſeeing by an Action ſo odious to all Nations he had broken all the Engagements that were between them, he declar'd himſelf from that Inſtant his mortal Enemy, and that he would make a moſt rigorous War upon him. After which he detach'd his Son *Zuzi* with a good Body of the Army on the ſide of *Turkeſtan*, in order to diſlodge the reſt of the Friends of *Kutſhluk* who were eſtabliſh'd there.

Zingis Chan *declares War againſt Sultan* Mohammed.

Sultan *Mahamet* as ſoon as he heard this Declaration of War from the Mouth of *Zingis Chan*'s Envoy, aſſembled likewiſe all his Troops and march'd towards *Samarkant*, and from thence to *Chodſan*, to go meet *Zingis Chan:* but being inform'd at this laſt Place, that *Zuzi* the eldeſt Son of *Zingis Chan*, was marching from *Turkeſtan*, he chang'd his Deſign, and took the ſame Road with all his Army, in hopes that he would be able to give a good Account of this part of the Army of *Zingis Chan.* To that effect, having purſued his March by great Journeys till he arriv'd on the Frontiers of *Turkeſtan*, he turn'd off towards the River *Cabli*, in order to cut off *Zuzi*'s Retreat: but arriving

Sultan Mohammed *marches to meet* Zingis Chan.

Chogan, *or* Chogand.

Cabli *and* Camzi *Rivers.*

between the Rivers *Cabli* and *Camzi*, he found there a great Number of Men newly ſlain, and cauſing Search to be made among the dead Corps for any who diſcover'd ſome Signs of Life, they found by chance a Man, who tho much wounded, was yet able to ſpeak. Upon which the Sultan having demanded who it was had handled them ſo ill, he gave him to underſtand that it was *Zuzi*; who having encounter'd them the Day before, as they were going to join his Army, had kill'd part of them and carry'd the reſt into ſlavery, returning the ſame way he came.

Sultan Mohammed *overtakes* Zuzi.

Upon this News the Sultan ſet forwards, and made ſuch haſte that he overtook him next Morning. *Zuzi* ſeeing the Enemy draw near, held Council with the Generals that accompany'd him, about what was to be done on this Occaſion; and they were unanimouſly of Opinion that he ſhould retire in good Order, ſeeing *Zingis Chan* had not order'd him to fight with the whole Army of the Sultan, and that he was not ſtrong enough to undertake an Action of that Conſequence without expoſing himſelf to evident Danger. That ſuppoſing alſo the Sultan ſhould purſue him in his Retreat, he could only do it by making ſmall Detachments, againſt which they might eaſily defend themſelves; and that if he did not purſue them they ſhould proceed on their way in Peace. *Zuzi* alone was of Opinion contrary to this Advice, ſaying, "What will my Father and Brothers ſay if I return and fly in ſight of the Enemy? it would upon all Accounts be better for us to ſtand our Ground, and fight bravely with the Enemy, than to be ſlain in flight: you have done your Duty in admoniſhing me of the Danger we are in, I am now

" now going to do mine by trying to bring " you out of it with Honour." After which, having rang'd his Troops in order of Battle, he led them chearfully to the Charge. In the height of the Confuſion, *Zuzi* pierc'd two or three times thro' the Ranks of the Enemy, and having encounter'd Sultan *Mahamet*, gave him ſeveral Strokes with his Sword, which the other parry'd with his Buckler. The *Mogulls* animated by the Example of their Prince, did Wonders that Day, and charg'd their Adverſaries with ſo much bravery, that notwithſtanding the great Superiority of Sultan *Mahamet*'s Army, it was upon the Point of flying, if the Sultan perceiving that his Example was not ſufficient to revive the Courage of his Soldiers, had not called out to them to ſtand their Ground only for a few Minutes, ſeeing that the Night which advanced a-pace would be ſure to put an end to the Conflict. That Reſolution ſaved him the Shame of ſeeing his whole Army fly before a ſmall Part of that of the *Mogulls*. *Come to a Battle.*

Night having ſoon after ſeparated the Combatants, *Zuzi*, who thought he might be content with the Honour which he had acquir'd that Day, cauſed great Fires to be lighted in ſeveral Places of his Camp, and retir'd without Noiſe. Next Day the Enemy imagining that he ſtill waited for them on the Field of Battle, march'd out again to renew the Fight: but finding he had decamp'd, they retir'd likewiſe on their ſide. *Zuzi* having rejoin'd his Father with the Troops which were under his Command, afforded him much Joy by the Relation of this Battle: and *Zingis Chan*, to let him ſee how well pleaſed he was with the Conduct he had ſhewn on this Occaſion, loaded him with Praiſes and Preſents. *Night parts them, and both Armies return.*

Mean

Sultan Mohammed *returns to his Capital.*

Mean while Sultan *Mahamet*, who had learned by this Sample, that he had to do with rough Gameſters, diſtributed his Troops into the Gariſons, ſaying, " If *Zingis Chan* has a " Deſire to make War upon me, he may come " and look for me." After which returning to his uſual Reſidence, he gave himſelf up to Debauchery; and on this Occaſion, one Day getting drunk, he caus'd to be maſſacred one *Sheich Magededien Bayadi*, whom he ſuſpected of having a ſcandalous Commerce with his Mother *Turcan Chatun*; for which being much troubled the next Day when he had ſlept off his Wine, becauſe that *Sheich* paſs'd for a holy Man, and of an unblamable Life, he ſent a great Baſon full of Gold and Jewels to another holy Man called *Sheich Naſmudien*, praying him to grant him pardon for that Murder. But the Saint having refus'd this Preſent, let him know in Anſwer that it was not in his Power to pardon him that Crime; that with Gold and Jewels, the Life of ſo holy a Man, more precious in the Eyes of God than his own, and that of many thouſands of other Men, was not to be purchas'd; that therefore he return'd him all again, and left the Vengeance to God.

Kills Sheich Magededdin *in his Debauch.*

Chalif of Bagdad *depoſed by Sultan* Mohammed.

Sultan *Mahamet* did alſo very ill in depoſing the Calif of *Bagdat*, called *Naſirdien Abulajar**, and

* *'Tis the ſame Chalif of which our Author ſpeaks,* Page 99, *who endeavoured to draw* Zingis Chan *to make War on Sultan* Mahomet Shah *of* Charaſs'm: *That Deſign not taking effect, and Sultan* Mahomet *being informed of it, he cauſed a general Aſſembly to be held of all the Men of the Law throughout* Perſia *and the neighbouring States, who profeſſed the Worſhip of* Mahomet; *in which, upon the Complaints of that Prince, that the Chalif inſtead of labouring to propagate the true Faith, entertained ſecret Intelligence with Infidels againſt the Intereſt of the* Muſulmans, *the Chalif was depoſed in form, and another to whom our Author gives*

the

and putting in his Place one *Atilmulk* of the Tribe of *Termiskiſegid*; without mentioning his giving Credit ſo eaſily to the falſe Report of *Gagir Chan*, and which was the Cauſe of his ordering the Embaſſadors and Merchants of *Zingis Chan* to be maſſacred, which coſt him his Crown and his Life, as we ſhall ſoon find. Many other bad Actions of the Sultan might be alledged here, but we will confine our ſelves at preſent to thoſe we have mention'd.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the Expedition of Zingis Chan *into the* Great Bucharia.

IN the Year 615, *Zingis Chan* took the Field with a powerful Army, in order to penetrate into the *Great Bucharia*: In his March, *Arſlan-Chan* of the *Carliks*, *Idikut Chan* of the *Vigurs*, who inhabited the Country of *Biſhbalik*, and *Saknak*, Lord of the Country of *Amalik*, came and joined him with all their Forces: He march'd at firſt on the ſide of the Town of *Otrar*, but underſtanding that Sultan *An. Dom.* 1218. Biſhbalik, *perhaps* Almaleg.

the Name of Atilmulk *put in his Place, at the Recommendation of Sultan* Mahomet: *after which that Prince immediately ſet about executing the Decree of that Aſſembly, and to that effect march'd at the Head of a powerful Army towards* Bagdat, *which was the Reſidence of the Chalifs. But as the Seaſon was already far advanced when he took the Field, all he did there was to ruin his Army, and the War which afterwards followed between him and* Zingis Chan, *ſerved to ſecure the Chalif againſt the Ill-will of Sultan* Mahomet.

[*The Chalif is much cenſured by the* Mohammedan *Doctors, for endeavouring to ſtir up an Infidel Prince, to deſtroy a* Mohammedan *one.*]

Mahamet

Mahamet had left the open Country to him, and had diſtributed his Army into the Places of Strength, he detach'd his two Sons *Ugadai Chan* and *Zagatai* with a good Body of the Army to lay Siege to *Otrar*, and his Son *Zuzi* with another Part towards the Town of *Nadſan*. He alſo order'd two of his Generals, one called *Alan Noyan*, the other *Suktu-buka*, with 50000 Men towards *Pharnacant* and *Chodſan*; reſerving with himſelf the Groſs of his Army, with which he continned his March, accompany'd with his Son *Taulai*, towards the *Great Bucharia*.

Nagan.

Chogend.

Etymology of Bucharia.

It is to be obſerv'd here, that the word *Buchar*, ſignifies, in the *Mogull* Language, *a learned Man*; becauſe all thoſe who have a mind to be inſtructed in the Languages and Sciences go into *Bucharia*. The firſt Town that *Zingis Chan* found in his Paſſage was *Sarnuc*, under the Walls of which he encamp'd, with ſo terrible an Outcry on the Part of his Soldiers, that the Inhabitants in a Fright ſhut the Gates of the Town, and put themſelves in a Poſture of Defence. But *Zingis Chan* ſent one *Hadſip*, a very eloquent Man, into the Town, to let them know that the wiſeſt Courſe they could take on that Occaſion, was to open the Gates to him, becauſe there was no likelihood of their being able to reſiſt a Prince who had conquer'd ſo many Towns and Provinces: Theſe Remonſtrances having chang'd the Reſolution of the Inhabitants of *Sarnuc*, they flock'd in Crouds out of the Town, loaded with Preſents, to receive *Zingis Chan*, and put themſelves under his Obedience. *Zingis Chan* having receiv'd them very graciouſly, treated them with all imaginable Clemency, and chang'd the Name of their City, ordering that for the future it ſhould be called *Kutluk-balik*. After which, having

Sarnuc *beſieged.*

Surrendered.

Sarnuc, *called* Kutluk-ablik.

ving choſen out all the young Men from among the Inhabitants for his Service in that Expedition, he permitted the old ones to return and dwell in the Town.

From thence he march'd to the Town of *Nur*; the Inhabitants of which, after having been ſeveral times ſummon'd to ſurrender, reſolv'd at laſt to ſubmit and open their Gates to him: But *Zingis Chan*, to puniſh them for daring to form even a Thought of reſiſting him, order'd Publication to be made that the Inhabitants of the Town ſhould ſet a-part the Cattle which they made uſe of in their neceſſary Affairs, as well as the Corn and other Pulſe which they could not be without; which having executed off-hand, he gave all the reſt for Pillage to the Soldiers. After which, he continued his March towards the Province of *Buchara*, and arriv'd the 1ſt of the Month of *Rebbi Achir*, in the Year 616, before the Town of *Buchara*, Capital of the *Great Bucharia*. *Nur ſurrender'd.* *An. Dom.* 1219.

Sultan *Mahamet* had left in that Town a very numerous Gariſon, under the Command of three General Officers, whoſe Names were *Kuk Chan*, *Siuntz Chan* and *Kutſhluk Chan*. At the Approach of *Zingis Chan* theſe three Generals made a Sally, in the Night, upon the *Mogulls* with all the Gariſon, which conſiſted of 20000 Men; but being repulſed with great Loſs, their Courage failed them, and they paſſed out of the Town by the oppoſite Gate with their Families, and almoſt all their Soldiery, in order to retire into the Towns of the Country of *Charaſ'm*, in hopes the Darkneſs of the Night would conceal their Retreat from the *Mogulls*; but their Deſign having been diſcovered, *Zingis Chan* detached a great Body of Horſe in purſuit of them, which overtaking them *Siege of* Buchara. *The Generals and Gariſon fly.*

them on the Banks of the River *Amu*, cut them almoſt all to pieces. In the mean time the Inhabitants of *Bucharia* ſeeing themſelves, by the Retreat of the Gariſon, left at the Diſcretion of the Enemy, all the religious and learned Men went out of the Town next Morning, accompanied by the moſt conſiderable Citizens, and preſented the Keys of their City to *Zingis Chan*. That Prince entring on Horſeback into the great Moſke of the City, aſked merrily, if that was the Sultan's Palace. Upon his being anſwered, that it was the Houſe of God, he lighted off his Horſe, and giving it the principal of the Magiſtrates and learned Men, who accompanied him in, to hold, he mounted the Gallery where the Mullhas, or Prieſts, uſually place themſelves; and taking up the *Alcoran*, threw it under the Feet of his Horſes; which one of the chief Inhabitants of the Town, of *Mahomet*'s Race, called *Seigit*, perceiving, he ſaid, What a great Sin that is? But another holy Man made anſwer, Hold your Tongue; 'tis a Puniſhment which God in his Anger has ſent upon us. As ſoon as *Zingis Chan* had ſeated himſelf in the Gallery, his Soldiers began to drink and eat in the very Middle of the Moſke, without the leaſt regard to the Holineſs of the Place. At his going out of the Moſke, he ſent to the Place where the Inhabitants uſed to aſſemble on great Feſtivals, and placing himſelf again in the Gallery appointed for the Prieſts, he ordered all thoſe of the *Mahometan* Worſhip to meet together; and repreſenting to them the perfidious Behaviour of their Sultan towards him, in cauſing his Merchants and Embaſſadors to be aſſaſſinated, he added, That God had ſent him to revenge that Perfidiouſneſs upon them: That for

Bucharia ſurrendred.

Zingis Chan enters the great Moske on Horſeback.

Throws the Alcoran under his Horſes Feet.

Speech to the Mohammedan Inhabitants.

for their Goods which were to be found in the Town, his Soldiers ſhould not meddle with them; but for thoſe which they had hidden, they muſt give them up of their own Accord into his Hands; or, That he knew the way of coming at them by force of Torments. Whereupon they carried to the Officers which he had commiſſioned for that Purpoſe, as well all their Goods which they had buried, as what they kept in their Houſes; which ſeemed to ſatisfy him for that time: But underſtanding, afterwards, that many of the Sultan's Soldiers ſtill remained hid in the Town, he ordered it to be ſet on fire, which intirely conſumed the whole Town, almoſt all the Houſes of which were built of Wood; inſomuch that there remained nothing of that great City but the Palace of the Sultan, built of Stone which they called *Ark*, and ſome few of the private Houſes which were built with Brick. *Zingis Chan*, having afterwards ſent to ſearch all the Houſes which remained ſtanding, and eſpecially the Palace of the Sultan, cauſed all the Soldiers that were there found hid to be put to the Sword. The City of *Bochara* continued ſome Years in this Condition, until *Zingis Chan* at laſt ordered it to be rebuilt a little before his death.

They deliver up their Goods.

Bochara *burnt to the Ground.*

Rebuilt by Zingis Chan.

Sultan *Mahamet* had left *Gagir Chan* with 50000 Men near the Town of *Otrar*, to oppoſe *Zingis Chan* if he turned on that ſide: And underſtanding afterwards that he had detached two of his Sons to reduce that Town, he ſent a farther Reinforcement of 10000 Men, under the Command of one of the Lords of his Court, called *Caraza-hadſip*. With theſe 60000 Men *Gagir Chan* ſhut himſelf up in the Town, and made all the neceſſary Preparations for a vigorous Reſiſtance. In the mean time, the Sons of *Zingis*

Otrar *beſieged.*

Chan arriving before *Otrar*, immediately began the Siege with all poſſible Vigor, and omitted nothing which might haſten the Conqueſt of it. After the Siege had continued five Months, *Caraza-hadſip* told *Gagir Chan* it was time to think of capitulating, ſeeing it was impoſſible to hold out much longer againſt the Efforts of the Beſiegers; and that it was to be feared, if they deferred a Surrender too long, the Enemy would not then hearken to any Agreement. But *Gagir Chan*, who was conſcious to himſelf of being the only Cauſe of that unfortunate War, abſolutely rejected that Propoſal, reſolving to defend himſelf to the laſt Extremity. *Caraza-hadſip* finding he had made himſelf liable to Suſpicion by this Step he had taken, in the night time cauſed the Gate called *Darvaſey-Soſi*, of which he had the Guard, to be opened; and retired with the 10000 Men under his Command into the Quarters of the Sons of *Zingis Chan*. But the Princes, upon reflection that a Man who was capable of betraying his natural Lord, would make no Scruple of betraying them alſo upon occaſion, ordered him to be ſlain with all his Men. After which they entred into the Town by the ſame Gate thro' which the others went out.

Otrar betray'd.

The Traitor juſtly rewarded.

Gagir Chan ſeeing the Town taken retired with 20000 Men into the Caſtle: All the reſt of the Gariſon, having been driven out of the Town, was put to the Sword. *Gagir Chan* finding the Caſtle too little for ſuch a number of Men, endeavoured to free himſelf by continual Sallies which he made upon the Enemy, which incommoded them extreamly for ſome time; but the Princes redoubling their Efforts as the Defence of the Beſieged became more obſtinate, took the Caſtle at laſt with Sword in Hand,

Gagir Chan with 20000 Men flys to the Caſtle.

Caſtle taken, and the Gariſon put to the Sword.

Hand, and cut the Throats of all the Gariſon. *Gagir Chan* ſeeing all was loſt, retired with two Men into his Apartment, and defended himſelf there deſperately. Thoſe two Men alſo being killed, and *Gagir Chan* finding himſelf in want of Arrows to ſhoot at thoſe who ſtrove to get up to the Place where he was, ſtill defended himſelf a long time with great Stones, which his Wife brought him for that purpoſe; but having been at laſt taken Priſoner, he was brought before the Princes, who ordered him to be loaded with Chains, and ſhut up in a cloſe Priſon, till *Zingis Chan* ſhould give Orders how he ſhould be diſpoſed of. After this Expedition, the Princes underſtanding that their Father had ſeized the Town and Province of *Buchara*, they marched towards that ſide to go join him with their Troops, and being arrived at a Place called *Kuk-ſerai*, they cauſed *Gagir Chan* to be put to Death, purſuant to the Orders they had received from *Zingis Chan*.

Gagir Chan taken.

Province of Buchara taken.

Gagir Chan put to Death.

Zuzi Chan, having left his Father's Army, marched towards *Signac*. As ſoon as he was arrived before that Town, he ſent a Man of the *Mahometan* Profeſſion, called *Aſſan-Hadſi*, to ſummon the Inhabitants to ſurrender, with a Promiſe of being well treated; but they put to death this Envoy, inſtead of receiving his Propoſals. *Zuzi*, upon the News of this Aſſaſſination, fell into a violent Paſſion, and never ceaſed aſſaulting the Town till he had taken it. He cauſed the Throats of above 10000 of the Inhabitants of *Signac* to be cut upon this Occaſion, to revenge the Death of his Envoy; and having conferred the Command of that Place on the Son of the aforeſaid *Aſſan-Hadſi*, whom thoſe of *Signac* had ſlain, he marched towards *Uſgan*.

Siege of Signac.

Inhabitants put the Mogull Envoy to Death.

Uskant.

Uskant *ſurrenders.* The Inhabitants of that Town, made wiſe by what happened to thoſe of *Signac*, came out to meet him with magnificent Preſents, and delivered up their Town to him; whereupon he forbid his Soldiers under ſevere Penalties to offer them the leaſt Inſult, or take any thing that belonged to them. From thence he marched towards the Town of *Aſtaſh*, which daring to defend it ſelf, *Zuzi*, after taking it, cauſed a great number of the Inhabitants to be put to the Sword. The Governor of the Town of *Nadſan* ſeeing it was his Turn next, abandoned the Place in time, and retired with his Gariſon towards the Towns of the Country of *Charaſ'm*; but the Inhabitants of *Nadſan* loſt not their Courage for all that, refuſing to enter into Capitulation with the *Mogulls*; they were alſo very near killing the Envoy which *Zuzi* ſent to ſummon them to ſurrender: This Conduct having conſtrained him to apply Force, he ordered the Town to be attacked with all poſſible Vigor, and having carried it, cauſed to be put to death all thoſe who had any Hand in the Violence offered to his Envoy; the reſt of the Inhabitants were ordered to be driven out of the Town, after he had cauſed them to be ſpoiled of all they had. After which he placed there a good Gariſon, under the Command of one of his Officers named *Ali Chodſa Gezdivony*.

Aſtaſh *reſiſts.* *Great Slaughter.* Nadſan *or* Nagan *reſiſts.* *Taken.* *Great Slaughter.*

I have obſerved above, That *Zingis Chan* had detached two General Officers, named *Alan-Noyan* and *Suktu-Buka*, with 50000 Men, towards the Cities of *Pharnacant* and *Chodſan*. The firſt of theſe Places was taken after a Siege of three Days, and the two Generals of *Zingis Chan*, after putting the Gariſon to the Sword, made all the Inhabitants Captives, and went and

Farnacant *and* Chogand.

and laid Siege to the Town of *Chodſan*. The Governor of that Town, call'd *Timur-Malik*, was reputed a Man of great Courage; and, that he might not be unlike himſelf on this Occaſion, he omitted nothing which might ſerve for the Defence of the Town.

Chogand deſcribed.

The City of *Chodſan* is ſituate upon the ſide of a River, which forms an Iſle right before the Town; and in regard there was at that time a Caſtle extremely ſtrong upon that Iſle, *Timur-Malik* poſted himſelf there with 1000 choice Men; and having provided four covered Boats with Port-holes on both ſides, they ſerved him to ſhoot continually upon the *Mogull*'s Quarters, which incommoded them dreadfully. The two Generals of *Zingis Chan* having taken a View of the Town, and finding it in ſo good a Poſture of Defence, were mightily puzzled how with Honour to get off an Enterprize which appeared to them ſo difficult. At laſt, after they had well conſidered the Situation and Condition of the Place, they determined to employ that number of captive Inhabitants of *Pharnacant* to throw Stones into the River, in order to form a Jettee which might be of Uſe in attacking the Fort of the Iſle. The Governor, on the other hand, oppoſed this Enterprize by all ſorts of Contrivances, and ſtrove to diſpute with the *Mogulls* the Paſſage of the River as long as poſſibly he could; but finding, in ſpight of all his Efforts, that the Bank was finiſhed, he got into the Boats with all his Men, and let himſelf be driven by the Current of the River.

The brave Retreat of Timur-Malik.

The two *Mogull* Generals being apprized of his Retreat, ordered him to be purſued by a great Detachment of their Troops, who contented themſelves with obſerving his Motions

from the Banks of the River, imagining he could not eſcape them, a Chain having been drawn a-croſs the River at *Pharnacant:* But *Timur-Malik* being arrived there, found means to cut the Chain, and paſs ſafely. Nevertheleſs, at length coming to a Place where the River was extremely narrow and ſhallow, he was obliged to quit his Boats, and try to eſcape by Land. But the *Mogulls* eaſily coming up with him, becauſe they were on Horſeback and *Timur-Malik*'s Men on Foot, they ſlew all his Followers; ſo that with much ado he eſcaped ſingly out of their Hands. On this Occaſion *Timur-Malik* ſeeing himſelf hotly purſued by three *Mogulls*, and having but three Arrows left, of which only two were pointed with Iron, he let fly the third which had no Point at all, againſt the *Mogull* who preſſed him moſt, and having wounded him in the Eye, his Companions were ſo ſcared at it that they all three ſtopp'd, and let him go his way. Coming in this manner alone to a neighbouring Town, where there was a Gariſon of the Troops of Sultan *Mahamet*, he gathered in haſte a ſmall Body of Men, and went and ſurprized *Pharnacant*; and having cut the Throats of the *Mogulls* who were there in Gariſon, he returned towards his Maſter Sultan *Mahamet*, who amply rewarded his Fidelity, and gave him leave to go paſs the remainder of his Days quietly in the Town of *Sham*.

Cuts the Chain at Farnacant.

Eſcapes from his Purſuers.

Returns and ſurprizes Farnakant.

Sultan Mohammed *ſends* 110000 *Men to reinforce* Samarkant.

The two Generals of *Zingis Chan* having happily ended that Expedition, went alſo to rejoin their Maſter. In the mean time Sultan *Mahamet* having had Advice, That *Zingis Chan* prepared to lay Siege to the Town of *Samarkant*, ſent thither an Army of 110000 Men, with a great number of Elephants, under the Command

mand of 30 Generals, tho there were already an infinite number of People in the City. On the Arrival of ſo powerful a Reinforcement, they drew round the Town a broad Ditch, which they dug till they came to Water, and cauſed the Troops to encamp behind this Ditch, which ſerved them for an Intrenchment. *Zingis Chan* having been rejoined in his March from *Bucharia* towards *Samarkant* by his Sons and Generals, who had all ſucceſsfully executed the Commiſſions with which they had been charged, learned on the Road, that the Enemy had aſſembled very conſiderable Forces at *Samarkant*, and had very ſtrongly fortified that Town; but that did not hinder him from purſuing his March. Upon his Approach the Enemy made a furious Sally upon him; but having been driven back to the City after a very bloody Action, he went and encamped the next Day under the Walls of the Town; and finding the Enemy had no deſire to engage with him without their Walls, he gave a general Aſſault which laſted from Morning till Evening, without being able to gain an Inch of Ground from the Enemy; but the Night following, the Head of the Law and the Cady of the City, who were fallen out with the Commanders of the Troops of Sultan *Mahamet*, having ſubmitted themſelves to *Zingis Chan*, and been well received by him, cauſed one of the Gates of the City to be opened to him, which were not accuſtomed to be opened but on great Feſtival Days, of which they had the Keys in their keeping; and the *Mogulls* having entred by that Gate, went immediately and ſeized the other Gates, to let the whole Army into the Town. *Zingis Chan*, in this manner becoming Maſter of *Samarkant*, cauſed all the Troops

Samarkant beſieged.

Betray'd to the Mogulls.

Gariſon put to the Sword, and Town pillaged.

which compoſed the Gariſon to be put to the Sword, *Aloub Chan* being the only Perſon who had the good Fortune, with 1000 Men, to eſcape this Maſſacre. After this proſperous Event he cauſed the Town to be pillaged, and made a Preſent to his Generals of 30000 of the Inhabitants with their Wives and Children. After which he pardoned the reſt, whom he permitted to live in the City as before, paying him a Tribute of 300000 Dixars of Gold yearly. All this happened in the Year 616.

An. Dom. 1219.

CHAP. XV.

Of the Expedition of the three Sons of Zingis Chan *into the Country of* Charaſs'm, *and of the Reduction of many Towns on the Frontiers of the* Indies *under the Obedience of that Prince.*

Mogulls *invade* Chowarazm.

AFTER the Conqueſt of the *Great Bucharia*, and the taking of *Samarkant*, *Zingis Chan* ſent his three Sons, *Zuzi*, *Ugadai*, and *Zagatai*, with a numerous Army towards the Capital of the Country of *Charaſs'm*, where four of the principal Lords of Sultan *Mahamet*'s Court, *viz. Chamar*, *Mogull*, *Hadſip*, and *Phiriduni Geri* had ſhut themſelves up: but *Chamar*, as being a near Relation of the Sultan's, commanded in chief, and having with him a good Body of Troops for the Defence of the Town, he reſolv'd to ſell it very dear to the *Mogulls* in caſe they came to attack it. Notwithſtanding as he had no News of their March, and believ'd them ſtill at a great diſtance, he had given the Inhabitants leave to let their Cattle graze in the Meadows near the Town, which gave the Vanguard of the *Mogulls*

Urgens *at that time the Capital, called alſo* Chowarazm.

gulls Army an Opportunity on their Arrival to ſurprize the greateſt Part of them. The Townfolks, at the Sight of this, made a Sally upon the *Mogulls* with 10000 Men, as well Horſe as Foot, and coming up with the Vanguard, which retir'd leiſurely near a Garden belonging to the Town, they attack'd them briſkly: but the *Mogulls*, who had placed a good Number of Troops in Ambuſcade on both ſides of that Garden, ſeeing the Enemy ſo far engaged as not to be able to get back, charg'd them ſo hotly in Front and in Rear, that ſcarce a hundred of them eſcaped. After which they march'd as far as the Suburbs of the City, where they put to the Sword all they found in Arms, and ſet Fire to it after they had ſufficiently plunder'd it: Next Day the whole *Mogull* Army came before the City, and laid Siege to it in Form.

Siege of the Capital of Chowarazm. Urgens.

The three Sons of *Zingis Chan*, underſtanding that *Phiriduni Geri*, one of the afore mentioned General Officers, had poſted himſelf with 5000 Men at one of the Gates of the City, they gave him to underſtand, that if the Troops which compos'd the Gariſon would come to a Reſolution to ſurrender the Town, they ſhould be allowed the Liberty to retire with their Wives and Children wherever they pleaſed. But *Phiriduni Geri* having imparted this Propoſal to *Chamar*, and the other Chiefs of the Gariſon, they abſolutely refuſed it. The Siege having laſted ſeven Months, the *Mogulls* detach'd 3000 Men to turn the River * *Dſayhun* away

Gayhun *or* Gihun.

* *As our Author does not mention the Name of the Capital of the Country of* Charaſs'm, *which is ſpoken of in this Place, 'tis not amiſs to obſerve, that what is ſaid on this Occaſion of the River* Dſayhun, *or* Amu, *which paſſes before the*

away from the Town, in order to cut off their Water: but the Inhabitants having had timely Notice of it, ſent againſt them a greater Body of Troops, who put to the Sword the 3000 *Mogulls* employ'd in that Work.

As the Diſſenſion which happen'd among the three Sons of *Zingis Chan*, was the greateſt Obſtacle which hinder'd the good Succeſs of the Siege, inaſmuch as the one continually croſs'd the Deſigns of the other: *Zingis Chan*, upon Advice thereof, order'd that for the future *Ugadai* ſhould have the chief Command at that Siege; and he to merit the Confidence of his Father, having immediately order'd a general Aſſault to be given, took the City and ſet it on Fire; above 100000 Souls were put to the Sword in the firſt Fury of the Vanquiſhers: After which the reſt of the Inhabitants were order'd to go out of the Town, and with their Wives and Children were condemn'd to Slavery. The Number of which was found to be ſo great, that in the Diſtribution which *Ugadai* cauſed to be made of them among the Soldiers of his Army, each Soldier had twenty four to his Share. They tell you, that on this Occaſion *Ugadai* ſent to tell a holy Man, named *Sheich Haſreti-cubru*, who was in the City, that unleſs he came out and put himſelf under his Protection, it would be impoſſible to hinder him from periſhing with the other Inhabitants of the Town; but that the *Sheich* let him know in Anſwer, that he was bound to follow the

Capital taken and fired. Great Slaughter.

Bravery of Sheich Haſreti-cubru.

the Town, ſhews plainly that 'tis the Town of Urgens *which is meant, becauſe that River at that time run by the Walls of that City; and 'tis but within theſe eighty Years that it has taken another Courſe, as we have obſerved in the Deſcription of that Town, Part* II. [*This would be no convincing Reaſon, if we did not know by other Authorities that* Urgens *was then the Capital, becauſe it was not the only Town the* Gihun *run before.*]

Fate

Fate of the Town, by Ties too ſtrong to be ſo eaſily broken; inſomuch that he periſh'd with the reſt, after he had defended himſelf with the utmoſt Bravery.

Nachſhap taken by Zingis Chan.

In the mean time *Zingis Chan*, who ſtaid all the Spring after the Conqueſt of *Samarkant* in his Quarters about that City, march'd toward *Nachſhap* at the ſame time that he had ſent his three Sons towards the Capital of the Country of *Charaſ'm*, and having made himſelf Maſter of that Town without meeting the leaſt Reſiſtance, he march'd from thence to the Town of *Termis*, which put it ſelf in a Poſture of Defence; but being taken by Aſſault, all the Inhabitants were put to the Sword, except an old Woman who offer'd a great Pearl to ſave her Life: But being aſk'd where ſhe had that Pearl, and confeſſing ſhe had ſwallow'd it, they immediately rip'd open her Belly, and finding the Pearl there, the *Mogulls* rip'd the Bellies of all the other dead Bodies, imagining they would likewiſe find Jewels.

Termed taken by Aſſault, and the Inhabitants put to the Sword.

Balck Beſieged.

From thence *Zingis Chan* led his Army before the City of *Balck*, which was at that time ſo large, that there were reckon'd to be in it 1200 great Moſks, beſides ſmall Chapels, and 200 publick Baths for the foreign Merchants and other Strangers. Upon his Approach the Town offer'd to capitulate, but *Zingis Chan* would not conſent to it; being of Opinion, that while Sultan *Mahamet* lived, he could not depend upon the Inhabitants of the Town, and for that Reaſon he choſe rather to take it by Force, to the End he might diſpoſe of the Fate of the Inhabitants at his Pleaſure; and in regard the Town was none of the ſtrongeſt, he took it with eaſe by a general Aſſault: After which he put all the Inhabitants to the Sword, and levell'd the Walls of the Town with the Foundations.

Offers of a Surrender refuſed by Zingis Chan.

Balck deſtroyed.

After

After this he ſent his Son *Taulai*, accompany'd with many Officers of Merit, with a numerous Army towards the Town of *Choraſſan*, and after he had ſubdued all the other Towns in thoſe Quarters, he went in Perſon to lay Siege
Tallchan. to that of *Tallchan*; which being a Town extremely ſtrong by its advantageous Situation, defended it ſelf above ſeven Months very vigorouſly. In the mean time *Taulai* having taken
Choraſan *Town.* *Choraſſan*, with ſeveral other Towns thereabouts, return'd and join'd his Father before *Tallchan*; which putting him in a Condition to make a general Attack, the Town was taken at laſt, and all put to the Sword. The Town
Anderab. of *Anderab* having been in like manner taken after the Reduction of *Tallchan*, was treated
Bamian. much after the ſame manner; from thence he went and beſieged *Bamijan*, which defended it ſelf with much Obſtinacy. Among ſeveral other Perſons of Diſtinction, who were kill'd at this Siege, there having been a Son of *Zagatai*'s, whom *Zingis Chan* lov'd much, it threw him into ſuch a Rage that he inſtantly order'd a general Aſſault to be given to the Town; and having taken it by that means, he caus'd them all to be ſlain without excepting one Perſon, and afterwards raz'd it to the Ground; ordering the Place where that Town was ſituated for the time
Bamian *called* Maubalik; to come to be called *Maubalik*, which in the *Mogull* Language ſignifies *an unlucky Town.*

CHAP. XVI.

Of ſome Actions of Sultan Dſalaludin, *Son of Sultan* Mahamet.

Zingis Chan before he decamp'd from about the Town of *Samarkant*, detatch'd *Zena Noyan*, *Suday Bayadur*, and *Togazar Kantaret*, three

three of his moſt faithful Generals with 30000 Horſe, in Search of Sultan *Mahamet*, who had paſs'd the River *Amu* to retire farther within *Perſia*. After ſeveral Marches and Countermarches, theſe three Generals of the *Mogulls* arriving before the Town of *Herat*, *Sultan-Chan-Malik**, who commanded there, ſent to tell them, that he was a Servant of *Zingis Chan*, and that he had nothing to diſpute with them: Whereupon *Zena Noyan* and *Suday Bayadur* continued their March in queſt of Sultan *Mahamet*; but *Togazar Kantaret*, being of Opinion that the fair words of Enemies were not to be confided in, gave an Aſſault to the Town. This Enterprize coſt him very dear, for not only his Men were repuls'd with much Loſs, but he was alſo himſelf wounded with an Arrow in the Head, of which he died immediately. To complete his Joy, Sultan *Chan-Malik* learn'd ſhortly after, that Sultan *Dſalaludin*, the Son of Sultan *Mahamet*, was arriv'd at the City of *Gaſmien*; whereupon he ſent him word, that if he was willing, he would go join him with all the Troops he could gather, in order to give the *Mogulls* Battle. Herat. Gaſnehen. Gaſna.

Zingis Chan had almoſt at the ſame time detach'd one of his principal Officers, called *Ugar*, ſurnamed *Kalſhan*; which ſignifies in the *Mogull* Language, *a pleaſant Companion*, with four other Generals, *Shangi*, *Kutuktu Noyan*, *Tabazik*, and *Malkaw*, at the Head of 30000 Men, to cut off the Communication between *Gaſmien*, *Sagil* and *Cabul*, and the reſt of the Dominions of Sultan *Mahamet*. Theſe Generals of the *Mogulls* thought it proper to divide their Detachments into different Bodies, thereby to be in a better Condition to watch the Motions of the Enemy in thoſe Quarters. *Kutuktu Noyan*, who with a Party of thoſe Troops was

[* *Three great Titles united in one Name.*]

was advanced towards *Herat*, underſtood by the way that Sultan *Chan-Malik* had left *Herat*, with a Body of Troops, in order to join Sultan *Dſalaludin*, and that he was encamp'd not far from him, upon which he reſolv'd to go and attack him early next Morning; but Sultan *Chan-Malik* getting Intelligence in the Night, that there were *Mogull* Troops in the Neighbourhood of his Camp, decamp'd immediately and went to join Sultan *Dſalaludin*.

Sagill. *Tabazik* and *Malkaw* on their ſide, had advanc'd with ſo little Noiſe to the Town of *Sagill*, that it was very near being ſurpriz'd by them, in regard the Inhabitants believing the *Mogulls* yet at a great Diſtance from their Walls, took no care to ſend out for Intelligence. The *Mogull* Generals having miſs'd ſo fair a Hit, beſieged the Town in Form, and employ'd all their Efforts to conſtrain it to capitulate; but Sultan *Dſalaludin* being reinforc'd by the Troops which Sultan *Chan-Malik* had brought him, fell upon them ſo unexpectedly, that he obliged them to fly, and go join *Kutuktu Noyan*, after they had loſt above 1000 Men in that Rencounter. Not ſatisfy'd with this firſt Advantage, he purſued *Kutuktu Noyan*, and never ceaſed provoking him, till he obliged him to make a Stand and come to a Battle with him. The *Mogulls* ſeeing no way left to avoid the Battle, prepar'd themſelves for it with all the Reſolution imaginable; and Sultan *Dſalaludin* on his ſide, having truſted the Left Wing of his Army to the Conduct of Sultan *Chan-Malik*, and the Right to one of his Father's old Generals, named *Sephudin Malik*, put himſelf in the Center, and in this Order charg'd the *Mogulls* with ſo much Vigor, that after a very obſtinate Fight, which laſted from Morning till almoſt Evening, they were at laſt conſtrain'd to fly,

Sagill *beſieged.*

Siege raiſed by Sultan Gelal-al-din.

and leave the moſt Part of their Dead on the Field of Battle.

Stratagem of Kutuktu Noyan.

Kutuktu Noyan, in this Battle, made uſe of a Stratagem which had like to have given him the Victory; for having order'd a truſty Officer to get all the Felt Bonnets and Clokes that were in the Camp to be ſtuff'd with Straw, and to range them a little behind upon the Horſes and Camels of the Baggage, as a kind of ſecond Line; that Officer executed his Orders ſo dextrouſly, that the Enemy believing it to be a Reinforcement which came from the *Mogulls*, were ſeiz'd with Fear, and had ſhamefully fled, if Sultan *Dſalaludin*, ſuſpecting it a Trick of *Kutuktu Noyan*, had not animated them by his Example and Speeches, aſſuring them that it was no more than a Stratagem of the *Mogulls* to frighten them; which having rous'd their Courage, they fell a-freſh upon the *Mogulls* with ſo much Impetuoſity, that only a very few eſcaped, beſides the three General Officers.

Mogulls defeated with great Slaughter.

Zingis Chan hearing the News of this Diſaſter was much incenſed, and prepar'd to march immediately on that ſide with all his Forces. In the mean time Sultan *Dſalaludin*, before he turn'd back, divided the Spoil among his Troops upon the Field of Battle: upon which Occaſion a Quarrel happen'd between Sultan *Chan-Malik*, and *Sephudin Malik*, about a Horſe, which went ſo far that Sultan *Chan-Malik* gave *Sephudin Malik* a Laſh in the Face with his Whip. *Sephudin* did not fail to complain to Sultan *Dſalaludin* of this Inſult; but finding no hopes of obtaining ſuch a Reparation as would ſatisfy him, he quitted that Prince in the Night with all thoſe of the Tribe of *Kanklis*, which were under his Command, and retir'd into the Mountains of *Kir-*

Quarrel between Sultan Gelal-al-din's Generals.

Kirman. Sultan *Chan-Malik*, on the other hand, return'd ſoon after to his Government of *Herat.*

River Indus. Sultan *Dſalaludin*, upon Tidings that *Zingis Chan* was coming upon him with all his Forces, went and gained the River of *Sirr-Indi*; but *Zingis Chan* made no Delay in following, and appear'd ſo unexpectedly before the Gates of *Gaſmien*, that the Inhabitants loſt their Courage, and let him enter their Town without any Reſiſtance. That Prince was content for that time to place a Governor there; and being inform'd by the Inhabitants of *Gaſmien*, that it was but fifteen days ſince Sultan *Dſalaludin* decamp'd from before their Town, he continued to purſue him by great Marches, endeavouring to come up with him before he could paſs the River; and arriving at length near that Prince's Camp, he went in the Night and poſted himſelf between the River and him, in order effectually to cut off the Paſſage of it. Sultan *Dſalaludin* perceiving at Day-break that he was ſurrounded on all ſides by the *Mogull* Troops, reſolved to fight, tho there was no Proportion between his Handful of an Army and the great Forces of the *Mogulls.*

Gaſna *ſurrenders to* Zingis Chan.

Zingis Chan *overtakes* Gelal-aldin, *at the* Indus.

Battle at the River Indus.

Before the Engagement, *Zingis Chan* order'd two of the braveſt Officers of his Army, named *Cugur Kalſhan*, and *Kotur Kalſhan*, to obſerve as much as poſſible the Perſon of Sultan *Dſalaludin*, and to endeavour to take him alive. But after the Fight had laſted from Sun-riſe till Noon, Sultan *Dſalaludin* finding himſelf too hardly preſs'd by the *Mogulls*, and ſeeing no more of his Army left, made a laſt Effort to break thro' the *Mogulls*, and having happily gained the Bank of the River, he ſpurr'd his Horſe, which being very vigorous, carry'd him ſound and ſafe thro' the Stream to the other ſide in view of the Enemy.

Gelal-aldin *paſſes the* Indus *on Horſeback.*

my. This Action pleaſed *Zingis Chan* extremely, and he ſaid on this Occaſion, that one might juſtly give the Title of *Happy*, to the Father who had ſuch a Son. Notwithſtanding he did not fail to ſeize the Treaſure of the Sultan, and to condemn to Slavery the few Men who were not kill'd in the Battle. After which he detached *Dubay Noyan* and *Bala Noyan*, two truſty Officers, to purſue the Sultan; who having follow'd him in vain as far as the Frontiers of the *Indies*, were obliged to return to their Maſter, without being able to give him any certain Tidings relating to the Perſon of Sultan *Dſalaludin*. Hubbe.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the Expeditions of the two Mogull *Generals into divers Provinces of* Perſia, *and of the Death of Sultan* Mahamet.

WE have obſerv'd before, that *Zingis Chan* before he decamp'd from the Neighbourhood of *Samarkant*, had detach'd *Zena Noyan*, *Suday Bayadur*, and *Togazar Kantaret*, three of his beſt Generals, each with a Body of 10000 Men, in purſuit of Sultan *Mahamet*, upon the News he had receiv'd of that Prince paſſing the River *Amu*, in order to retire farther within *Perſia*. On diſpatching theſe three Generals, *Zingis Chan* enjoin'd them, "To treat "all thoſe Towns kindly which ſhould open "their Gates to them; but entirely to plunder "ſuch *Three Generals ſent in queſt of Sultan* Mohammed.

" ſuch as ſhould make Reſiſtance and carry the " Inhabitants with them Captives; adding, I " hope you will find leſs Difficulty in executing " your Orders than you imagine, and that I " ſhall ſee you return ſafe into our native Coun- " try; for I don't intend to ſtay long in theſe " Provinces."

Herat *opens its Gates to them.*

Togazar Kantaret having been ſlain before the City of *Herat*, in the manner related in the preceding Chapter, the reſt of the Detachment which were under his Command went and joined *Zena Noyan* and *Suday Bayadur*, giving them an Account of the Misfortune which had befallen him. Whereupon they march'd immediately that way, but the Inhabitants of the City coming out to meet them with many Preſents, and declaring they had no hand in what happen'd between the Troops of *Togazar Kantaret* and thoſe of Sultan *Chan Malik*, they contented themſelves with exacting ſome Proviſions for the Suſtenance of their Troops, and turn'd of a ſudden towards the City of *Neſhabur*.

Sultan Mohammed *retires to* Irak.

Sultan *Mahamet* being inform'd that *Zingis Chan* had detach'd 30000 Men in purſuit of him, reſolv'd by the Advice of the Lords of his Council, with a very ſmall Attendance, to take the Road of the Province of *Irak*, and ſend the Sultana his Conſort, with his Son *Kijaſudin* to the Town of *Carender*. At his Departure from *Neſhabur* he left the Government of that City, and the neighbouring Provinces in the Hands of four principal Lords of his Court, *Taſher-Ulmulk*, *Neſamudin*, *Abulmahalicatip*, and *Shaulmulk*, not to mention many other Perſons of Diſtinction who ſhut themſelves up with them in the Town of *Neſhabur*. As for himſelf, he went deſigning to reach the Province of *Irak*, and the City of *Caſwin*, in which

Carender. Niſhabur, *or* Iran Shaher, *and* Aber Shaher.

Caſwin.

which his Son Sultan *Ruknudin* had the Command with a Body of 30000 Men. At his Approach Sultan *Ruknudin* went out to meet him with a Detachment of his Troops, and conducted him into the City with all the Marks of Reſpect imaginable.

Niſhabur *ſummon'd to ſurrender.*

Zena Noyan and *Suday Bayadur* being arriv'd at the Town of *Neſhabur*, ſent to ſummon the Lords who commanded there for Sultan *Mahamet* to ſurrender the City to them; whereupon they let them know in Anſwer, that they need only purſue Sultan *Mahamet* briſkly, and that when they had happily executed that Part of their Commiſſion, they would not fail to deliver up the Town to them at their Return. This Anſwer having been accompany'd with very magnificent Preſents, *Zena Noyan* and *Suda Bayadur* judg'd it proper to reſt ſatisfy'd, and ſent them a Copy of the Orders they had to treat kindly all the Towns which opened their Gates to them, and to deſtroy all ſuch as made Reſiſtance. After which, having taken Guides from *Neſhabur*, they march'd towards the City of *Maſanderan*; and that Place having been carry'd by force, they cut the Throats of all the Inhabitants without giving Quarter to any one. Then underſtanding that Sultan *Mahamet* was at *Caſwin*, they took the Road of the Province of *Irak*, and in the way they treated with much Kindneſs all the Towns which opened them their Gates; but ſhewed no Mercy to thoſe which conſtrain'd them to make uſe of Force.

Makes Conditions.

Maſanderan *City taken by Storm.*

Ilan *Town.*

The Town of *Ilan*, where the Mother of the Sultan, with the youngeſt Children of that Prince were ſhut up, being very ſtrong by its Situation, and appearing reſolv'd to defend it ſelf vigorouſly, they would not meddle with it, tho it lay in their way; but the Town of *Rudin* did not come off ſo cheaply, for it was plundered and all the Inhabitants ſlain, for offering to defend itſelf.

Rudin *Town plundered.*

Sultan Mohammed *eſcapes to* Carender.

Upon the News of the Approach of the *Mogulls*, Sultan *Mahamet* reſolved to retire to the Town of *Carender*, but falling in the way among ſome *Mogull* Troops, he narrowly eſcaped being made Priſoner: For the *Mogulls* having at the firſt diſperſed his Guards, preſs'd him ſo vigorouſly on all ſides, that it was by the beſt Luck imaginable that he eſcaped their Hands and got to the Town of *Carender*, after having his Horſe ſhot under him by an Arrow. But being informed ſome time after, That the *Mogulls* were coming alſo to *Carender* to look for him, he went into the Country of *Gilan*; ſo that *Zena Noyan* and *Suday Bayadur*, who were actually on the March towards *Carender*, did not find him in that Town on their Arrival: Wherefore they were content to leave ſome Troops about *Carender*, and purſue him with reſt; but the Sultan arriving in the Country of *Gilan* went to *Iſtadura*, and in the way he loſt his Money and all his Equipage. From *Iſtadura* he embarked on the *Kulſum*, and arrived in the Country of *Abaſcum-Caſira**. The *Mogulls* perceiving he had eſcaped them returned and beſieged the Town of *Carender*, and this Place being taken after a very vigorous Reſiſtance, the Sultana, Wife of Sultan *Mahamet*, and his Son *Kiaſudin*, fell into their Hands. From thence they went, and laid Siege to the Town of *Ilan*, which was ſituated in ſo rainy a Climate that tho there were neither Wells in the Town, nor River in its Neighbourhood, yet it had never been in want of Water till that time, inaſ-

Retires to Iſtadura.

Caſpian *Sea.* Aboſcun Geſira.

Ilan *beſieged.*

[* *The* French *Editor ſuppoſed this to be the Country of the* Abaſſes, *a People in the Mountains of* Caucaſus *near the* Black Sea; *but by* Abaſcum Caſira, *or rather* Aboſcun Gezira, *which ſignifies the Peninſula or Iſle of* Aboſcun (*the* Arabs *having but one word to expreſs thoſe two things*) *is to be underſtood a Place, whether Iſland or Peninſula, in the* Caſpian Sea *near* Aſtrabat.]

much as the frequent Rains which fell in thoſe Parts conſtantly furniſhed it with Plenty of it. Nevertheleſs, from the Inſtant the *Mogulls* came before the Town, it ceaſed raining for the Space of 40 Days, which reduced the Inhabitants of the Town to ſuch Diſtreſs, that out of a Perſuaſion that ſo extraordinary an Accident could be no other than a viſible Sign of the Wrath of Heaven upon the Family of Sultan *Mahamet*, they obliged their Commander *Nazurdin* to repair to the Camp of the *Mogulls* to capitulate for them: Which was no ſooner done than it began to rain ſo plentifully that all the Streets of the Town were overflowed.

Ilan ſurrenders.

The Generals of *Zingis Chan* becoming Maſters of the Town of *Ilan* in this manner, and having found there a vaſt Quantity of Jewels and other valuable Goods, they ſent them immediately to their Maſter, with the Mother and Children of Sultan *Mahamet* who were found in this Town, and *Zingis Chan* cauſed them all to be ſlain upon the Spot. Sultan *Mahamet* was ſo overcome at ſo afflicting a Piece of News that he fell down dead; and of all the great Riches which he poſſeſſed before, there was not enough left at his Death to bury him honourably, ſo that they were obliged to inter him in the Clothes he died in; which happened in the Year 617, called *Gilan* or the Serpent, after he had reigned 20 Years.

The Mother and Children of Sultan Mohammed ſlain.

Mohammed falls dead at the News.

An. Dom. 1220.

After the Reduction of *Ilan*, *Zena Noyan* and *Suday Bayadur* marched towards the Provinces of *Aran* and *Adirbeindſan*, and having reduced all the Towns in thoſe Parts under the Obedience of *Zingis Chan*, they turned at length towards the City of *Shamakie*, and that Place having been obliged to ſurrender after ſome Reſiſtance, they treated the Inhabitants with much Rigor to puniſh them for their Raſh-

Provinces of Aran and Aderbagan ſubdued.

Shamaky taken.

Mogulls *march to* Derbent.

neſs. After which they took ten Guides to ſhew them the ſhorteſt Road to the City of *Derbent*, and to frighten them, cauſed one of them to be ſlain in preſence of the reſt, threatning to ſerve them all the ſame ſauce if they did not bring them the right Road. But, notwithſtanding that Precaution, the Guides conducted them by another Rout, where they knew the *Kipzaks* and *Alans* lay in Ambuſcade to ſurprize them. The *Mogull* Generals perceiving the Danger they were in, ſent one of their Officers with magnificent Preſents to the *Kipzaks*, and to tell them, That they were very much ſurprized to ſee that thoſe who were of the ſame Blood with the *Mogulls* ſhould join themſelves with the *Alans*, who were a People intirely Foreigners to them, to make War againſt their Relations and Allies who had never offended them, and with whom it would be far more honourable for them to live in Amity. The *Kipzaks* ſhaken by this Meſſage ſeparated themſelves from the *Alans* without joining however with the *Moguls*, and in the mean time theſe laſt fell with ſuch fury upon the *Alans*, that after killing a great number of them, they made Slaves of all the reſt.

Kipzaks *and* Alans *join to oppoſe their Paſſage.*

Kipzaks *deſert the* Alans.

Alans *defeated.*

Kipzaks *join with the* Ruſſians *againſt the* Mogulls.

The *Kipzaks* on their ſide being ſeized with their firſt Surprize, and beginning to diſtruſt the fair Words of the *Mogulls*, retired towards the Frontiers of the *Uruſſes*, and being joined by them returned to ſeek the *Mogulls*, whom they eaſily found becauſe they had no deſire to ſhun them. At the Approach of the *Uruſſes* and the *Kipzaks*, the *Mogulls*, pretending to be afraid, retired before them the Space of ten Days; till having drawn them at length into the Country of *Zerkaſs*, in a Place very advantageous for them, they faced about, and

Country of Zerkaſs *or* Circaſſia.

charged them very briſkly. After they had fought ſtoutly for ſeven Days, the *Kipzaks* and *Uruſſes* were intirely defeated, and the *Mogulis* having ſlain the greateſt part of them carried all the reſt into Slavery, and returned joyfully thro' the Country of the *Kipzaks* to join *Zingis Chan*, whom they met upon the Frontiers of great *Bucharia*. That Prince having heard their Account, and ſeen the great number of Captives which they preſented him, was much ſatisfied with their Expedition; and not content with giving them publickly great Commendations, he heaped on them Honours and Favours in abundance.

Kipzaks *and* Uruſſes *defeated.*

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the Expedition of Taulai *Son of* Zingis Chan *into the Province of* Choraſſan.

WE have obſerved in the fifteenth Chapter, that *Taulai* was detached by his Father, with a numerous Army, to reduce the Province of *Choraſſan*; but in regard we have there ſpoken of that Expedition too ſuccinctly, we ſhall here relate ſome Circumſtances of it.

The City of *Choraſſan* was at that time very fair, and its Inhabitants ſo wealthy, that they preſerved themſelves in a ſort of Independency, without ſubmitting themſelves to any abſolute Government. The City of *Meru*, which was near it, was alſo very powerful; and in this laſt Sultan *Mahamet* had placed a Governor called *Maſar Ulmulk*, but his Father having long be-

Choraſſan *City near* Meru.

City Meru.

fore been in diſgrace with the Sultan, *Maſar Ulmulk* had been diſmiſſed from the Government of *Meru*, and *Bacha Ulmulk* put in his Place. At the Approach of *Taulai*, and while he was buſied about the Town of *Choraſſan*, Sultan *Mahamet* let the Commander of *Meru* know, that he ought not obſtinately to contend againſt the *Mogull* Army, but endeavour to obtain good Terms from *Taulai* for the City. Upon theſe Orders *Bacha Ulmulk* intirely abandoned the Town, and retired to *Waſir :* One part of the Gariſon diſperſed themſelves in the neighbouring Towns, and the reſt remained in *Meru* by the conſent of the Inhabitants. *Taulai* being informed of what paſſed in the City of *Mern*, detached two General Officers with a good Body of Troops to take poſſeſſion of that Place. At their Approach the Sheich *Uliſlan*, Father of *Bacha Ulmulk*, came forth to meet them with a numerous Train and magnificent Preſents, and preſented them with the Keys of the Town.

Waſir.

Meru *ſubmits.*

Bucha Turkmann, *made Governor of* Meru *by his Party.*

The *Mogull* Generals, ſatisfied with this Submiſſion of the City, turned their Arms another way. In the mean time one *Bucha Turkmann*, who had formerly been Head of the Guides in the Service of Sultan *Mahamet*, and who at the time of the Commander of *Meru*'s Retreat, had retired into the neighbouring Foreſt with the *Turkmanns*, who made part of the Gariſon of that Town, returned not long after the Departure of the *Mogulls* to *Meru*, followed by *Tadſiks*, *Turkmanns*, and all other Partiſans of the Sultan, who had fled at the Approach of the *Mogulls*. Theſe Men unanimouſly conferred the Government of *Meru* upon *Bucha Turkmann*, and obliged all the Inhabitants of the City to acknowledge him in that Quality. About

Tajiks.

the ſame time *Maſar Ulmulk* being informed, in the Country of *Irak*, where he reſided ſince the time he loſt the Government of *Meru*, That Sultan *Mahamet* was dead in the Country of *Abaſcum-Caſira*, mounted a Mule which ran exceeding ſwift, and made all the haſte he could to *Meru*; but *Bucha Turkmanu* refuſed him admittance into the Town. Nevertheleſs *Maſar Ulmulk* having found means, ſome Days after, to get in by ſtealth, *Bucha Turkmanu*, upon Advice of it, aſſembled immediately all the Inhabitants; and having informed them that *Maſar Ulmulk*, who had been formerly their Governor, was arrived in the City, he declared, that for the love of Peace and publick Good, he was content to give up the Command to him, and to live among them as a private Man, which was accepted of with a great deal ſatisfaction by the Inhabitants.

Aboſcum Gezira.

Maſar Almulk *choſen Governor of* Meru *by the Inhabitants.*

The Country of *Charaſ'm* had already ſubmitted to the Obedience of the *Mogulls*, and *Zingis Chan* had eſtabliſhed there an Intendant, to take care of what concerned the Polity and the Revenue of the Country. He that had the Management of the Revenue at *Meru*, held a ſecret Correſpondence with the aforeſaid Intendant of the Country of *Charaſ'm*; but the Vanguard upon the Road to *Charaſ'm*, having one Day intercepted the Meſſenger who was charged with theſe Letters, ſent him with the ſaid Letters to *Maſar Ulmulk*, who immediately cauſed the Correſpondent of the Intendant of *Charaſ'm* to be put to death.

Chowarazm *ſubdued.*

While theſe things paſs'd at *Meru*, the *Mogull* Generals, who reckoned themſelves from thenceforth ſecure of that Town, were gone to take in the Towns of the Province of *Maſanderan*; but upon their Approach to the Capital of

Mogull *Generals march to* Maſanderan.

the Country, *Bacha Ulmulk*, who from the Town of *Waſir* was come to that of *Maſanderan*, came forth to meet them, and related to them what had happened at *Meru* in their Abſence, adding thereto, That provided they would give him ſome Troops, he would do his beſt to bring the City of *Meru*, without delay, into ſubjection to the *Mogulls*; and, that if the Inhabitants would ſurrender without Reſiſtance, he would only lay a large Tax upon them; but if they made Oppoſition, he would treat them with all the Rigor they deſerved.

Maſanderan *City.*

Purſuant to theſe Offers, the *Mogull* Generals having given him 700 Men, he marched towards *Meru*: But being informed on the Road, that *Maſar Ulmulk* had augmented his Forces in the City to 80000 Men, he durſt not paſs farther; but ſent to him two Officers with a Letter, importing, That inaſmuch as he was not in a Condition long to hold out againſt the Arms of the *Mogulls*, he ſummoned him to deliver up the Town, becauſe he was ſent for that Purpoſe with proper Troops by the *Mogull* Generals: But *Maſar Ulmulk* having ordered thoſe two Officers to be ſlain, prepared for a vigorous Defenſe, and fortified in the beſt manner he could the Avenues by which the *Mogulls* might come at him. This News being ſpread among the *Mogull* Troops which were under the Command of *Bacha Ulmulk*, they killed their Commander and turned back.

Bacha Ulmulk *baulked in his Deſign againſt* Meru.

Is ſlain by the Mogulls *under his Command.*

Maſar Ulmulk being informed of the Death of *Bacha Ulmulk* was ſo overjoy'd at it, that he gave a magnificent Treat upon that Occaſion to the principal Inhabitants of the Town of *Meru*. But this Joy did not laſt long, for the Governor of the Town of *Amuya*, who was a Chief of the *Turkmanns*, went to him the Day after the

Amuya *Town.*

the Feaſt with ſome *Turkmann's* of his Gariſon, to inform him that the *Mogulls* were on their March towards the Town of *Meru* with a powerful Army, and he did not doubt but their Vanguard was already arrived at *Amuya*. Tho this News was not very pleaſing to *Maſar Ulmulk*, he did not loſe his Courage, but that Moment ordered it to be publiſhed, that every one ſhould provide what was neceſſary to make ſtout Reſiſtance againſt the Enemy, which were expected every Minute. In the mean time the Commander of *Amuya* having aſſembled a ſmall Body of *Turkmanns*, went and poſted himſelf upon the Banks of a River which was between *Meru* and the *Mogulls*, in order to diſpute the Paſſage of it as long as they could: but the Vanguard of the *Mogulls* having fallen upon them unexpectedly, he and Part of his Men there loſt their Lives, and thoſe who were not ſlain were made Slaves by the Conquerors.

Maſar Ulmulk *prepares for a vigorous Defence.*

Governor of Amuya *ſlain.*

It was *Taulai* himſelf, who having ſubdued the Province of *Choraſſan*, came in Perſon with his whole Army to make a Viſit to *Meru*: He arriv'd the 1ſt of the Month of *Maharem*, in the Year 618, before that City. The People of *Meru* try'd at firſt to keep him at a diſtance from their Town by a vigorous Sally; but having loſt above a thouſand of their Men in leſs than an hour's time, they return'd faſter than they went out. That Siege having laſted above three Weeks, *Taulai*, who began to be impatient, order'd his whole Army to be drawn out, and having commanded that thoſe who were arm'd with Bucklers ſhould place themſelves in the Front, he divided the reſt of his Army into two hundred Troops, and led them in Perſon to the Aſſault; but juſt as he was going to give it, *Maſar Ulmulk* deſir'd to capitulate, and came

Taulai *inveſts* Meru.

An. Dom. 1221.

Maſar *capitulates.*

came himſelf with grand Preſents to make his Submiſſion to *Taulai*. This Prince after he had ſeiz'd the Treaſure, and all that could be there found of any Value in the Town, gave Orders for all the Inhabitants to go out without exception; and that City was ſo populous at that time, that they were four days about it. After which he cauſed all the Tradeſmen to be ſeparated from the reſt, and ſpared them, but put all the Remainder to the Sword: And having order'd one of his Secretaries to take an exact Account of the Number of thoſe who were ſlain on that Occaſion, he found them to be above 100000. After that he gave the Government of the City to one *Amiriſia Udin*, and the Management of the Revenue to *Jarmiſt*, ordering them to make a ſtrict Search after the Inhabitants, who might ſtill have lain concealed in the Town, and to put them in Poſſeſſion of their Lands again in order to cultivate them. This was the fourth time that *Meru* had been plunder'd, and each time above 50 or 60000 Inhabitants were ſlain.

Plundering of Meru.

100000 *of the Inhabitants ſlain.*

Niſhabur *beſieged and taken.*

All the Inhabitants ſlain.

Herat *beſieged.*

Taulai decamping from about *Meru*, went and laid Siege to *Neſhabur*; and having taken the City, cauſed all the Inhabitants to be put to the Sword. From thence he turn'd towards the City of *Herat*, whereof *Melik Shamſudin Mahomet* had taken the Government by his own Authority, and had arm'd near 100000 Men for the Defence of the Place. *Taulai* as ſoon as he was arriv'd before that Town, ſent and ſummon'd the Governor to ſurrender, but he cauſed the Envoy to be kill'd: After which he made a furious Sally upon the *Mogulls*, which he continued to do regularly for ſeven days ſucceſſively, with ſo great Havock on both ſides, that the Blood ſtream'd on all hands like Rivers, and

Taulai

Taulai loſt in that time above 1700 Officers, beſides private Soldiers: But the eighth Day, after a long and obſtinate Fight, *Melik Shamſudin Mahamet* was mortally wounded with an Arrow, which having ſunk the Courage of thoſe of *Herat*, they retir'd in Confuſion into the City; but the *Mogull* Troops entring pell-mell with them, *Taulai* who headed them took off his Helmet, calling out to the Inhabitants to ſurrender, that he was the Son of *Zingis Chan*, and promis'd they ſhould be well treated, and that they ſhould pay to his Father but half the Taxes which they till then paid to Sultan *Dſalaludin*. Theſe Propoſals having bred Diſſenſion among thoſe of the Town, the Inhabitants who accepted of the Offers of *Taulai* rang'd themſelves on one ſide, and the Soldiers who refus'd them, rang'd themſelves on the other. But *Taulai* having cauſed theſe laſt to be diſarm'd off-hand, put them all to the Sword and punctually perform'd his Word to the Inhabitants. After which he made *Malik Abubeker* Governor, and truſted the Management of the Revenue of the City to one named *Mengetei*; which done, he return'd and joined his Father before the Town of *Tallchan*.

Bravely defended.

Herat taken and ſpared.

The People of *Herat* were at firſt very well ſatisfy'd with their Governor and Intendant, who at the bottom were Men of Merit: But ſome time after the Departure of *Taulai*, the Generals of *Zingis Chan* having loſt the aforeſaid Battle againſt Sultan *Dſalaludin*, the Inhabitants of the City of *Herat*, as well as thoſe of the Provinces of *Ma-urenner* and *Choraſſan*, believ'd that Fortune was going from thenceforth to turn her Back upon *Zingis Chan*, ſince the Arms of Sultan *Dſalaludin* had once begun to get the Advantage of him: and in this Imagination

Herat revolts.

Slays the Mogull *Governor.* tion thoſe of *Herat* ſlew the Governor and Intendant which *Taulai Chan* had given them, and elected one *Melik Mobariſudin* for their Governor; not at all doubting that all the neighbouring Towns would immediately do as much towards ſhaking off the Yoke of the *Mogulls*. At this News *Zingis Chan* chid his Son *Taulai*, for not having put to the Sword the Inhabitants of *Herat* when he had taken that City, which had given them the Boldneſs to commit that Murder, and order'd one of his Generals named *Ilziktei Noyan* forthwith to march on that ſide with 80000 Men, ordering them not to ſpare one living Soul in *Herat*. *Ilziktei Noyan* being arriv'd before *Herat*, divided his Army into four Bodies, each of 20000 Men, and never ceaſed aſſaulting the City at four different Places, till he had taken it after ſix days Attack. Of all that liv'd in the Town, they left but fifteen Perſons, the reſt having been put to the Sword. After which the *Mogulls* razed the Walls of *Herat* to the Ground, and went to join their Maſter in the Country of *Choraſſan*. This happen'd in the Year 619.

Herat *taken, and all but fifteen Perſons put to the Sword.*

Walls of Herat *ras'd.*

An. Dom. 1222.

CHAP. XIX.

Of the Return of Zingis Chan *into his hereditary Provinces, and of his Death.*

Inſurrection in Kitay. *Zingis Chan* having brought all the Country of *Iran* under his Obedience, and put to death all thoſe who ſeem'd inclinable to a Revolt, receiv'd Tidings that the *Kitayans* began to riſe; upon which he reſolv'd, by the Advice of

of his Sons and moſt truſty Officers, that his Son *Zagatai* ſhould march towards *Gilan* in queſt of Sultan *Dſalaludin*, upon the Report which was current that that Prince was lately return'd into *Perſia*; that his third Son *Ugadai* ſhould march with another Army towards *Gaſmien*, to oppoſe the Deſigns of one of the Lords of the Court of the late Sultan *Mahamet*, named *Subuktagin*, deceaſed, and to puniſh the Town of *Gaſmien* which favour'd him underhand; and that for himſelf he ſhould march in Perſon, accompany'd by his Son *Taulai* towards the Country of *Turan*, ſo to be nearer hand to obſerve what paſs'd on the ſide of *Kitay*.

Gaznehen. Turan.

Ugadai having ſoon put an end to his Expedition, immediately follow'd his Father towards the Country of *Turan*, after he had deſtroy'd the City of *Gaſmien*, and put all the Inhabitants to the Sword. *Zagatai* having enter'd the Province of *Gilan* after ſome Reſiſtance from the Inhabitants, took the Town of *Mangara*, and all the other Towns of that Province, in which he caus'd a great Number of the Inhabitants to be kill'd; and not having been able to learn any thing of Sultan *Dſalaludin* in theſe Parts, he march'd alſo towards *Great Bucharia*.

Gaſmien *deſtroyed and its Inhabitants.* Gilan *ſubdued.* Mangara *Town.*

It was in the Spring of the Year 620, when *Zingis Chan* ſet forward in his March towards the Country of *Turan*, after he had placed good Gariſons, and Commanders of approv'd Fidelity, in all the Cities of Defenſe, which were upon the Entrances into the Country of *Iran*. Shortly after his Arrival in the Country of *Great Bucharia*, his two Sons *Zagatai* and *Ugadai* came to join him with the Troops under their Command, after they had executed their Commiſſions in the manner as has been related.

An. Dom. 1223.

During

Zingis Chan's *Diſcourſe with two learned* Buchars.

During the Stay which *Zingis Chan* made in that Country, he aſk'd to ſpeak with ſome learned Perſon among the *Buchars*, becauſe he had a mind to diſcourſe him about ſeveral important Matters; whereupon two of the firſt Learning in *Great Bucharia*, of which one was the Cady *Aſhraf*, and the other named *Woaaſis*, being come before him, he inquir'd of them what was the meaning of the Name of *Mahometans* which they aſſumed, and in what their Worſhip truly conſiſted? The two learned Men anſwer'd him thereupon, 1. We are *Mahometans*, that is to ſay, Servants of one omnipotent God, to whom nothing is to be compar'd, and we honour the Prophets whom God has ſent to teach us the Good, and to forbid us the Evil: Upon which he was pleas'd to reply, *A Deiſt.* I agree with you that nothing is comparable to God. 2. We are obliged to give yearly to the Poor the 40th Part of our Income, and whatever elſe we are able to get by our Induſtry or Traffick: This *Zingis Chan* likewiſe approv'd of. 3. We are commanded, with regard to God, to pray five times a Day, which we muſt punctually perform: This he allow'd to be very good alſo. 4. We are permitted during eleven Months of the Year to eat what we pleaſe, and at what Hour we pleaſe, but the twelfth Month we are obliged to faſt; inſomuch that during that Moon, we can eat nothing till after Sun-ſet, which he did not diſapprove of. 5. A Command is laid on thoſe whoſe Health will permit them, at leaſt once in their Life, to perform a Voyage to *Mechka* to worſhip God there. *Zingis Chan* did not reliſh this laſt Article at all, who, perſuaded that God is preſent every where, and that all the World belongs to him, maintain'd that every Place is equally proper to offer

Diſlikes Pilgrimages and Set-places for Worſhip.

offer up Prayers to him, and thought it ridiculous for any one to ſay, that one Place ſhould be fitter than another to adore God. After this Converſation he diſmiſs'd them.

Buchars freed from Taxes by Zingis Chan.

In the mean time the *Buchars* making uſe of ſo favourable an Opportunity, obtain'd Letters Patent from him, that for the time to come they might not be charg'd with any Impoſts, without an expreſs Command from the *Chan*.

A hunting Match propoſed by Zingis Chan.

Departing from the *Great Bucharia*, *Zingis Chan* went to *Samarkant*, and ſent from thence a Meſſenger to his Son *Zuzi Chan*, who had ſettled his Abode in *Daſhté Kipſak*, to acquaint him, that being inform'd there were great Numbers of Fallow Beaſts towards the Confines of *Turkeſtan* and *Daſhté Kipſak*, he deſir'd he would order them to be hunted by the People under his Government towards the Frontiers of *Turkeſtan*, and that he on his ſide would cauſe the ſame to be done by his People, to the end he might divert himſelf for ſome time by hunting in thoſe Quarters. I have obſerv'd above, that *Zingis Chan* had given an Army to his three Sons *Zuzi*, *Zagatai*, and *Ugadai*, to go and ſubdue the Capital of the Country of *Charaſ'm*, and that the Diſcord which happen'd among the three Brothers having prolong'd the Siege, *Zingis Chan* had conferr'd the chief Command in that Expedition on *Ugadai*. This Preference touch'd *Zuzi* ſo ſenſibly, as being the eldeſt Brother, that he retir'd into *Daſhté Kipſak*, where he was receiv'd with open Arms by the Inhabitants of the Country, who becoming acquainted with his Merit, afterwards voluntarily ſubmitted to his Obedience; and in that Country he made Hunting, which he paſſionately lov'd, his chief Exerciſe.

Daſhté Kipzak ſubmits to Zuzi.

As

Zuzi's Preſents to his Father.

As ſoon as *Zuzi* had receiv'd his Father's Meſſage, he immediately order'd as much People to be aſſembled as could be, to rouze a great deal of Game and chaſe them towards the Frontiers of *Turkeſtan*; knowing alſo that the Cavalry of his Father was in bad order, he ſent him 100000 Horſes to remount them, *viz.* 20000 white Horſes, 20000 Dappled-greys, 20000 Brown-bays, 20000 black Horſes, and 20000 ſpotted Horſes; and at the ſame time he ſent a great Quantity of Preſents of all ſorts to his Brothers. After which coming in Perſon to meet his Father, he was receiv'd with much Tenderneſs.

Zingis Chan *and his Sons hunt in* Turkeſtan.

Zingis Chan having for ſome time taken the Diverſion of Hunting with his Children, in the Country of *Turkeſtan*, return'd from thence into his hereditary Dominions; but he was ſcarce arriv'd, before he was inform'd that the Governor of the Country of *Tangut*, called *Shidurku*, had revolted againſt him. At this News he march'd immediately that way with a numerous Army. *Shidurku* had the Raſhneſs to meet him with an Army almoſt equal to that of *Zingis Chan*; but having been entirely defeated, he ſhelter'd himſelf in the City of *Tangut*. In the mean time *Zingis Chan* having deſtroy'd every thing with Fire and Sword in the Country of *Tangut*, return'd into his Dominions with a great Number of Captives, and was follow'd immediately by an Envoy of *Shidurku*, who was commiſſion'd to propoſe on his behalf to *Zingis Chan*, that provided he would pardon him what was paſt, he was ready to come and wait upon him. *Zingis Chan* receiv'd this Envoy with much Civility, and diſmiſs'd him with all ſorts of good words, without putting himſelf under any poſitive Engagement with regard to *Shidurku*. But this Envoy was no ſooner depart-

Shidurku *Governor of* Tangut *revolts, and is defeated.*

Shidurku *ſubmits himſelf.*

ed

ed than *Zingis Chan* fell into a great Diſorder, and perceiving that it increaſed every Day, he called to mind a certain Dream which he had formerly in his *Kitayan* Expedition; whereby being ſenſible that his End approach'd, he order'd his Sons, and the Children of his eldeſt Son *Zuzi*, who was then dead, with all the prime Officers of the Court, to be called, and after he had earneſtly exhorted his Children to Union, and to lay aſide all Animoſity and Ambition, not to be allow'd of among Brethren and Relations, he preſented *Ugadai* to them as his Succeſſor in the Empire; ordering that all the Subjects of the Empire of the *Mogulls* ſhould acknowledge and obey him in that Quality, immediately after his Death. This he deliver'd to them at the ſame time in writing, enjoining them moreover to conceal his Death, till ſuch time as they had puniſh'd *Shidurku*, and entirely deſtroy'd the Town of *Tangut*. After which having embrac'd them ſeparately, he diſmiſs'd them, and died a few Minutes after.

Zingis Chan *falls ſick.*

Makes Ugadai *his Succeſſor in the Empire.*

Zingis Chan's *Will.*

His Death.

The Princes his Sons, conformable to the laſt Orders of their Father, kept his Death cloſely concealed; and having aſſembled a great Army, went and beſieged *Tangut*, which falling into their Hands after a very obſtinate Reſiſtance, they put to death *Shidurku*, with a good Number of his Soldiers who were in the City, and carry'd the reſt into Slavery. After this Expedition they publiſh'd *Zingis Chan*'s Death thro' all the Provinces of the Empire, and caus'd his Corps to be interr'd in the Place which he had choſen for that Purpoſe: for being one day a hunting, and perceiving a Tree exceeding tall and ſtrait, he order'd that they ſhould inter him under it after his Death; which his Sons having executed with all the requiſite Ceremony, there

Tangut *taken and waſted.*

Place of Burial.

Burchan-caldin, *where* Zingis Chan *was buried.*

grew in time ſuch fair Trees about the Tomb, and in ſuch Numbers, that an Arrow ſhot from a Bow could hardly find a Paſſage thro' them. From that time they have given to that Place the Name of *Burchan-caldin*, and all the Princes of the Poſterity of *Zingis Chan*, who ſince then died in thoſe Provinces, have been interr'd in the ſame Place.

An. Dom. 1163.

Zingis Chan was born in the Year 559, called *Tongus*, or the *Hog*; was proclaim'd *Chan* the ſame Year of the *Hog*, and died in the Year 624, which the *Mogulls* call *Tauch*, or the *Hen*, having lived 65 Years, and reigned 25 Years, in Quality of *Chan*. After the Publication of his Death, his Sons employ'd three Months in Mourning his Death, and all the neighbouring Princes who were the Allies of their Father, came to teſtify to them the Concern which they ſhar'd in ſo great a Loſs.

An. Dom. 1226.

Character.

Zingis Chan was a Prince of a great Genius, which partly appears by the Diſcipline which he eſtabliſh'd among his Troops, which he divided into ſeveral Bodies of 10000 Men, and each of theſe Bodies had its particular Commander called *Tuman Agaſi*; *Aga*, ſignifies a Commander, and *Tuman*, 10000. Theſe Bodies were ſubdivided into Batallions of 1000 Men, having each its chief called *Miny Agaſi*, or Commander of a Thouſand. Theſe Batallions were likewiſe divided into Companies of 100 Men, having each its Captain, called *Gus Agaſi*, or Commander of a Hundred: and theſe Companies were yet ſub-divided into Platoons of ten Men, having each its Officer called *Un Agaſi*, or Commander of Ten: but all theſe Diviſions were ſubordinate one to the other, and receiv'd their Orders from the Commander in chief of the whole Body. When he was

Diſcipline eſtabliſh'd by Zingis Chan *in his Army.*

was about taking the Field, every one of his Subjects knew how much he was to furniſh towards the Equipage of the Army: He never let a commendable Action go without its Reward, and Virtue without Commendation; but he puniſh'd as rigorouſly Vice and Crimes. He was not ſatisfy'd to chooſe ſtrong Men for the Wars, 'twas neceſſary alſo that they ſhould diſcover ſome Parts, and out of the braveſt of thoſe he made his Officers. He uſually appointed the beſt Footmen among the Captives to take care of the Horſes, and employ'd the dulleſt among them to look after the Sheep. So many good Regulations gave him an eaſy Conqueſt over the neighbouring Countries and Kingdoms where there was not the like Diſpoſition. He was alſo accuſtom'd once a Year to aſſemble all his Officers, as well Civil as Military, and examine if they had the Capacity requiſite for the well diſcharge of their Employments; never failing to give large Praiſes to thoſe who appear'd to have diſcharg'd the Duties of their Poſts. In ſhort he put every thing in ſo good order, that it is impoſſible to recount all the Meaſures he took for that Purpoſe.

His Conqueſts owing to this Diſcipline among his Troops.

PART IV.

Which contains the Hiſtory of *Ugadai Chan*, third Son of *Zingis Chan*, and of his Succeſſors in the Empire of the *Mogulls* of the Poſterity of *Zingis Chan*.

CHAP. I.

Of the Reign of Ugadai Chan.

Ugadai *declines the Succeſſion as ſettled by* Zingis Chan's *Will.*

TWO Years after the Death of *Zingis Chan*, his Sons *Zagatai Chan* and *Taulai Chan*, as alſo the Children of *Zuzi Chan* his eldeſt Son, being aſſembled in Preſence of all the great Officers of the Empire of the *Mogulls*; *Belgatai-Noyan* and *Ilziktei-Noyan*, two of the principal Lords of the Court of their deceaſed Father, cauſed the laſt Diſpoſitions of that Prince to be publickly read, and following the Tenor of thoſe Diſpoſitions, they requir'd *Ugadai Chan* to accept of the Empire; but he excuſed himſelf on the Score, that having an Uncle by the Father's ſide, and two Brothers living, he deſir'd from his Heart that one or other of them would take the Charge upon himſelf, and that he would take care not to envy him that Honour.

Afte

After that Aſſembly had ſpun out forty days without being able to unfix the Reſolution of *Ugadai Chan*, his Brothers, who were willing to comply with the Diſpoſition of their Father at any rate, laid hold of him, the eldeſt by the right, and the youngeſt by the left Arm, and placed him, in ſome meaſure whether he would or no, in the Throne of the Empire. *Ugadai Chan* having been obliged in this manner to ſubmit to the officious Zeal of his Brothers, and all the Grandees of the State, gave a great Feaſt to all the Aſſembly; and upon that Occaſion diſtributed magnificent Preſents to thoſe who were at it. After which he apply'd himſelf effectually to remedy all the Irregularities which had crept into the Government during the two Years Interregnum. It was in the Year 627, that *Ugadai Chan* attain'd to the Empire of the *Mogulls*.

His Brothers conſtrain him to accept of it.

An. Dom. 1229.

In the mean time Sultan *Dſalaludin*, who had fled to the *Indies* after the laſt Battle which he loſt againſt the *Mogulls*, being inform'd of the Death of *Zingis Chan*, was return'd into the Country of *Iran*, and had taken the Cities of *Kirman* and *Shiras*; and from thence was gone into the Province of *Adirbeindſan*, where he had taken the City of *Tauris*, and almoſt all the other Cities in thoſe Parts, which *Zingis Chan* at the time of his Expedition into the Country of *Iran*, had brought under the Power of the *Mogulls*. But *Ugadai Chan*, upon the Intelligence he had receiv'd thereof, ſent thither two of his Generals with 30000 choſen Men, who defeated the Army of Sultan *Dſalaludin*, and forced him to fly for ſhelter into the Country of *Baker* and *Curdiſtan*, where at length he ended his unhappy days; for the Inhabitants of thoſe Countries, not ſatisfy'd with having robb'd him of

End of Sultan Gelal-al-din.

Perſia *at large.*

Diarbekr.

all, ſlew him with all his Men; and with him expir'd the Family of Sultan *Mahamet Shah* of *Charaſs'm.*

Progreſs in Kitay.

After *Ugadai* had remedy'd the Diſorders within his Dominions, and ſent, as we have before related, a good Body of Troops into the Country of *Iran*, he reſolv'd to defer no longer putting in order the Affairs of *Kitay*; and for that end, he went thither in Perſon, at the Head of a powerful Army, the ſame Year that he aſcended the Throne of the *Mogulls*. At his Arrival in *Kitay*, he laid Siege to a great City which was ſituate on the River *Cara-Muran:* This Place defended it ſelf for forty days with much Vigor; but having at laſt been taken by Aſſault, 12000 of the principal Inhabitants eſcaped by help of their Boats: All the reſt were put to the Sword, or made Slaves of.

Altan Chan *ſends* 100000 *Men againſt* Taulai Chan.

After this Expedition, *Ugadai Chan* advanc'd farther into *Kitay*, and ſent his Brother *Taulai Chan* before with a Body of 10000 Men. *Altan Chan* having receiv'd Advice of this Advance of the *Mogulls*, cauſed 100000 Men to march againſt *Taulai Chan*, under the Command of ſome of his beſt Generals; who having ſurrounded *Taulai Chan*, and his Troops on all ſides, had infallibly cut them in Pieces, if it had not come into that Prince's Head to command one of the Magicians which accompany'd him to make the *Dſada*; that is to ſay, to produce a boiſterous Winter Seaſon in the midſt of Summer, which theſe Men know how to bring to paſs by their Sorceries; and 'tis from thence that theſe Magicians are called *Dſadadatzi.* The Magician, in obedience to his Maſter's Orders, having continued his Inchantments for three days, there fell at laſt ſo much Snow and Hail, and

Taulai *eſcapes by the Aſſiſtance of Magick.*

Dſadadatzi, *Magicians.*

and the Weather became on a ſudden ſo cold, tho it was then in the height of Summer, that the Soldiers of the *Chan* of *Kitay*'s Army, with their ſilken Clothes, and other thin Stuffs, could not ſtir Hand nor Foot. Then *Taulai Chan* falling upon them, cut the Throats of all but 5000 Men, who were happy enough to ſave themſelves by flight from ſo ſtrange a Misfortune. *Kitayans overthrown by Inchantments.*

At this News *Altan Chan* made away with himſelf, tho it is not known for certain what became of him: However, 'tis believ'd that he threw himſelf in deſpair, into a great Fire which he order'd to be made for that Purpoſe. *Altan Chan makes himſelf away.*

Taulai Chan, having inform'd his Brother *Ugadai Chan*, of the happy Succeſs of the Battle which he gave the Enemy, and of the Report which ran with regard to the Fate of *Altan Chan*, that Prince haſten'd towards him by great Marches; and having afterwards taken in moſt of the Towns of *Kitay*, he eſtabliſh'd a Governor there, named *Machmut Delauzi*. Theſe Tranſactions detain'd *Ugadai Chan* for ſome Years Space in *Kitay*; but having at length finiſh'd all his Affairs on that ſide to his ſatisfaction, he return'd into his Dominions; having loſt in this Expedition his Brother *Taulai Chan*, who died of Sickneſs in *Kitay*. *Kitay almoſt wholly ſubdued. A Governor placed by* Ugadai *in* Kitay. *Taulai Chan dies.*

In the Year 634, *Ugadai Chan* ſent his Son *Kajuk*, with *Batu* the Son of *Zuzi Chan*, *Mangu* the Son of his Brother *Taulai Chan*, and *Baidar* the Son of his third Brother *Zagatai Chan*, with conſiderable Forces towards the Country of the *Uruſſes*, the *Zerkaſs*, the *Bulgars*, of *Tura*, and of the *Baſhkirs*; but he himſelf continued to reſide in the Country of *Carakum*, where he built a magnificent Palace for his Reſidence, and ſent for thither the moſt able Painters in *Kitay* to add the Ornaments ſuitable to it. At *An. Dom.* 1236. *Expedition againſt the* Uruſſes, Zerkaſs, Baſhkirs, *and* Bulgars. Carakum. *Painters in* Kitay.

Palace and City built in Carakum. the ſame time he injoin'd all the Princes of his Houſe, and the other great Officers of the Empire to build handſom Houſes about this Palace. He alſo order'd a fine Fountain to be made there, which he adorn'd with a Tiger in full proportion, caſt in Silver, which ſpouted the Water out of its Mouth. At ſome diſtance from the ſaid Palace, he cauſed a Park to be made two days Journey in compaſs, which he ſtock'd with all ſorts of Fallow Deer, and other Game; in order to take therein from time to time the Pleaſure of Hunting, and incloſed it with Pales two Fathom high. He cauſed alſo the City of *Herat* to be rebuilt, which had been intirely deſtroy'd by his Father's Orders.

Fine Fountain.

Vaſt Park.

Herat *rebuilt.*

Uruſſes, &c. *ſubdued.*

After ſeven Years Abſence, his Son *Kajuk*, and his Nephews return'd from their Expedition into the above-mention'd Countries, which they had intirely brought under the Subjection of the *Mogulls*. On account of the glorious Succeſs of that Enterprize, and the great Advantages which he had obtain'd himſelf in *Kitay*, *Ugadai Chan* aſſembled all the Heads of Families among his Subjects, and gave them a Feaſt more than ordinarily magnificent: and we are aſſur'd that the Number of thoſe who were at that Feaſt, was ſo great, that it was impoſſible to reckon them. Not long after *Ugadai Chan* was ſeized ſuddenly with a grievous Sickneſs, which carry'd him off in a few days, to the great Regret of all his Subjects. This happen'd in the Year 642.

Ugadai's *Death.*

An. Dom. 1244.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Concerning ſome memorable Actions of Ugadai Chan.

Ugadai Chan was a Prince of great Judgment, and withal very charitable. I ſhall relate ſome remarkable Inſtances of it. A Man of the Tribe of *Virats*, who hated the *Mahometans* exceedingly, having come to acquaint him that *Zingis Chan* had appear'd to him in a Dream, and commanded him to order *Ugadai* from him to put to the Sword all the *Mahometans* in his Dominions: The *Chan* aſk'd him if *Zingis Chan* had ſpoken to him himſelf, or only by an Interpreter? Whereupon that Man having aſſur'd him that he had ſpoken in Perſon; the *Chan* aſk'd him if he could then ſpeak in the *Mogull* Language? And having reply'd that he could not, *Ugadai Chan* ſaid to him, "My Father "ſpoke no other Language but that of the "*Mogulls*; how durſt you then come to tell "me that he ſpoke to you, ſeeing you under-"ſtand not the Language which he ſpoke; and "that he underſtood not that which you ſpeak?" And having in this manner detected him in a Lye, he order'd that his Impudence ſhould be immediately puniſh'd with Death. *Ugadai Chan's Charity.*

Another time, *Ugadai Chan* having cauſed an Ordinance to be publiſhed, forbidding all his People for the time to come, to kill Sheep any other way than by ſtriking a Knife into the Breaſt; it happen'd one Day, that a *Mahometan* having bought a Sheep, ſhut the Door of his Houſe that no body might ſee what he was going to do, and then cut the Head off. In the mean *Another Inſtance.* *Law about killing Sheep.*

mean time a *Mogull* ſuſpecting the Deſign of the *Mahometan*, from the Care he had obſerv'd him take to ſhut the Door after he had carry'd the Sheep in, it came into his Head to get upon the Houſe; and having by that means been a Spectator of the Action of the *Mahometan*, he went and ſeiz'd him by the Collar, and carry'd him faſt bound before the *Chan*; who having well conſider'd the Affair, order'd the *Mogull* to be put to death, and the *Mahometan* ſet at liberty. For this reaſon, that the laſt by taking all poſſible Care not to be ſeen by any body, had obey'd his Law; but that the firſt had violated the Law, by getting a-top of his Neighbour's Houſe without his Knowledge.

Another Inſtance. A poor Farrier having made ſix Iron Bodkins, went to the Market to ſee if he could ſell them; and obſerving *Ugadai Chan* to paſs by, he held up his Bodkins that he might ſee them: whereupon the *Chan* having ſent to aſk what he meant by it; the Farrier anſwer'd, that they were ſix Bodkins he had a mind to make him a Preſent of; and the *Chan* having accepted the Bodkins, gave him a Dinar of Gold for each of them.

Another. A poor old Man, who had neither Wives nor Children, having likewiſe come to ſee *Ugadai Chan*, gave him to underſtand that he had a great Inclination to fall into ſome little way of Trade, but he wanted Money for carrying it on. Upon which the *Chan* having order'd 200 Dinars of Gold to be given him out of his Treaſury, to be employ'd in ſome advantageous Buſineſs; ſome of the Lords of his Court, who were then preſent, endeavour'd to diſſuade him from it, by reaſon that that Man having neither Wives nor Children, the Money which he gave him would of courſe paſs after his Death into

the Hands of Strangers: But the *Chan* perſiſted in his firſt Reſolution, ſaying, "Since this "Man has implor'd my Aſſiſtance, it would "be unjuſt in me to ſend him away empty-"handed, when it is in my Power to help "him;" and thereupon he commanded that the 200 Dinars which he had promis'd him ſhould be given him immediately; adding, that after that he might dy when it pleaſed God: But the old Man had ſcarce handled the Money, before he fell ſtone dead.

Another poor Man called *Muſlies*, having come to make his Complaint to *Ugadai Chan*, that he had not wherewithal to ſupport Life; he order'd 500 Dinars of Gold to be given him. After he had eaten out that Money, he came again to ſee the *Chan*, and receiv'd 500 Dinars of Gold more. Thoſe being ſpent like the reſt, he came a-new to implore the Aſſiſtance of the *Chan*; but the Lords who were about *Ugadai*, chid him much for daring ſtill to importune the *Chan*, after having already received ſo much Money; ſaying it was unjuſt to give ſo much Money to one Man; and that after the manner which that went, all he was able to give him would not laſt long with him. The *Chan* having taken Occaſion thereupon to inquire what he had done with his Money, and underſtanding that he employ'd it in clothing and feeding himſelf well, he declar'd he could find no Cauſe to chide the Man ſo much; and at the ſame time order'd 500 Dinars of Gold more to be given him; recommending to him nevertheleſs, to be a little better Manager for the time to come of them, than he had been of the 1000 Dinars which he had receiv'd before. *Another.*

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

Of the Reign of Kajuk Chan, *Son of* Ugadai Chan; *and of the Poſterity of thoſe Princes.*

Ugadai's *Wives.*

Ugadai Chan had four lawful Wives, and ſixty Concubines: His four Wives were called, 1. *Burakzin*, 2. *Turagana*, whom ſome would affirm to have been of the Tribe of the *Markats*; and others pretend to have been the Wife of a Chief of the Tribe of the *Virats*; and that falling into the Hands of *Ugadai Chan*, with many other Captives, after the Defeat and Death of her Huſband, that Prince marry'd her afterwards, and loved her more than all his other Wives and Concubines, tho ſhe was not over handſom. The third was called *Zazin*, and the Name of the fourth is not known to us.

His Children.

Turagana brought five Sons to *Ugadai Chan*; but he had none by his other lawful Wives. The firſt Son of *Ugadai Chan* was called *Kajuk*, and reſided, while his Father lived, in the Country of *Pamak*; but he was always in a very languiſhing State of Health. This was he who ſucceeded his Father in the Empire, conformable to his laſt Diſpoſitions. The ſecond Son of *Ugadai Chan*, was called *Kutan*; the third *Kuku*, who was a promiſing Prince, but died before his Father; the fourth *Carazar*, the fifth *Kaſhi*, to whom that Name was given, becauſe he was born juſt at the time that *Zingis Chan* conquer'd the Country of *Tangut*: but in regard he gave himſelf up exceſſively to drinking, he died in the Flower of his Age.

Pamak *Country.*

This ſhews it is alſo called Kachin.

Kajak

Kajuk Chan, at his coming to the Throne of the *Mogulls*, diſtributed ſuch magnificent Preſents among all the Lords and other Perſons of Diſtinction throughout his Empire, that he outdid all that his Predeceſſors had done on the like Occaſions; but in regard he was very ſickly, he held the Scepter but one Year, and died in the Year 644*. He left three Sons, of which the firſt named *Chodſa Ogul*, and the ſecond *Bagu*, were born of the ſame Mother, called *Chamiſh*: *Bagu* had a Son named *Oku*, who had likewiſe ten Sons. *An. Dom.* 1246.

* *The Monk* Rubruguis *reports, that Brother* Andrew *who was ſome time before him in* Grand Tartary, *had aſſured him that* Kajuk Chan, *whom he calls* Ken Chan, *died of a certain Drink which had been given him, and that* Batu, *his Couſin-German, was accuſed as the Author of that Miſchief; but that he had learned ſince upon the Place, from ſeveral Perſons, that* Kajuk Chan *having order'd* Batu *to haſten to his Court to do Homage to him as his ſovereign Lord, he indeed ſet forward immediately with a very great Equipage, and all the Magnificence imaginable to obey the Orders of the* Chan; *but that under the Apprehenſion he was in of not being well received at Court, he ſent one of his Brothers, whom* Rubruquis *calls* Stichen, *before, to obſerve how Matters ſtood; and that* Stichen *being one Day to wait on* Kajuk Chan *at Table, took Occaſion to quarrel with him at a time when only they two were in the Tent, and that this Quarrel run ſo high that they ſlew each other on the Spot, which deliver'd* Batu *from a Voyage which made him very uneaſy in his Mind.*

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Reign of Mangu Chan, *Son of* Taulai Chan.

Doubt about a Succeſſor.

AFTER the Death of *Kajuk Chan*, it was a Doubt for a long time on whom to confer the Government, conſidering the great Number of *Zingis Chan*'s Deſcendants: But foraſmuch as the favourite Widow of *Taulai Chan*, named *Siurchochtny-begi-Gehan*, had gained the Hearts of all the Subjects of the Empire by her Charities, every one wiſh'd that ſuch an Honour might light on one of her Sons.

Batu *declines the Succeſſion.*

Batu, Son of *Zuzi Chan*, who reſided in the Country of *Daſht Kipzak*, ſeem'd to be the Perſon whom the Succeſſion to the Empire naturally had an Eye to, but he had no deſire to take the Trouble upon him: And having invited all the Princes of the Houſe of *Zingis Chan* to come to him, to regulate among themſelves the Succeſſion to the Empire, ſome of them reſolv'd to go thither, and others refus'd to do it; alledging, that the Election ought to be made in the Place where the *Chans* uſually reſided: but the aforeſaid Widow of *Taulai Chan* perſuaded her Sons to go there, ſeeing that as *Batu* was very much diſtemper'd in his Feet, it was but fit they ſhould go pay him a Viſit, a thing which they might very conveniently do upon that Occaſion, and thus kill two Birds with one Stone.

Summons the Princes to an Election.

Mangu, *Son of* Taulai, *choſen.*

The Names of the five Sons which *Taulai Chan* had by *Siurchochtny-begi-Gehan*, were, 1. *Mangu*, 2. *Halaku*, 3. *Artokbuga*, 4. *Coplai*, 5. *Moka-*

Moka-ogull. Theſe five Brothers having then gone to ſee *Batu* by their Mother's Advice, he receiv'd them with all the Honours imaginable; and the Day of Meeting being come, he repreſented to all the Princes of the Houſe of *Zingis Chan*, that in his Opinion they could not make a better Choice for filling the vacant Throne, than in the Perſon of *Mangu*, eldeſt Son of *Taulai Chan*; that nevertheleſs he left it intirely to themſelves; who, as being on the Spot, ſhould better know the Neceſſity of the Empire, than he who was at ſome diſtance. This Propoſal having met with a general Approbation, they agreed to put off his Inauguration till the end of the current Year; and at the beginning of the next, they aſſembled all the great Officers and Heads of the Tribes of the Nation, that they might acknowledge *Mangu* in quality of Succeſſor to the Empire of the *Mogulls.*

Purſuant to this Reſolution, *Mangu* having been ſolemnly proclaim'd *Chan* in a general Aſſembly of all the Lords of the Empire, which was held in the beginning of the Year following; he treated very magnificently for ſeven days together all thoſe who met at that Ceremony. At that Feaſt were conſumed every Day eight Chariot Loads of Wine, two of Brandy, and twenty of Kumiſſe for Drink, and three hundred Horſes, with three hundred Cows, and two thouſand Sheep for the Kitchen. This happen'd in the Year 648. *Proclaimed Chan.* *An. Dom.* 1250.

Shortly after *Shiramun*, one of the Grand Sons of *Ugadai Chan*, perſuaded the other Princes of the Poſterity of that *Chan*, that they ought to rid themſelves of *Mangu Chan*, who uſurp'd in prejudice to them the Throne of the Empire; and that ſuch a blow might be ſtruck with *Shiramun's Plot to kill Mangu Chan.*

with very little Riſk, becauſe he miſtruſted nothing. This Propoſal having been reliſh'd by all the Parties concerned, *Shiramun* march'd before, with a Detachment of 500 Men, and ſome Chariots loaded with Arms: but one belonging to *Mangu Chan*, who was in ſearch after ſome of the *Chan*'s Camels, by chance paſſing by a Place where *Shiramun* with his 500 Men and his Chariots had halted, expecting Night-Fall, ſuſpected they might have had ſome ill Deſign in hand, and went immediately and told the *Chan* of it, who ſent off-hand 1000 of the principal Officers of his Troops who were at that time about him, with 2000 Soldiers, to know the meaning of it. Theſe having ſoon met with *Shiramun*, demanded at once where he was going; and receiving for Anſwer, That he was going with his Company to pay his Court to the *Chan*, they brought them along with them Chariots and all. *Mangu Chan* regaled them, very handſomely for three days; but the fourth Day, having examin'd very ſtrictly ſome of *Shiramun*'s Men to what End they had been aſſembled; and underſtanding by their own Confeſſion that their Intention was to revolt, he put to death eighty of them; but he pardon'd *Shiramun* and the Children of *Kajuk Chan*, as well as the remaining 420 Men who were in the Plot *.

Shiramun *pardon'd.*

* *The Monk* Rubruquis *reports, that* Shiramun *was* Kajuk Chan*'s Brother, and that he undertook this Plot by the Advice of his Wives and his Vaſſals; but that his Deſign having been diſcovered in the manner our Author relates,* Mangu Chan *put him to death with his eldeſt Son, and* 300 *Gentlemen who followed him on that Occaſion; that the Wives of* Shiramun *were whipp'd with Rods till they had diſcovered all the Particulars of that Conſpiracy, and that afterwards they were likewiſe put to death; but that* Mangu Chan *pardon'd the youngeſt Daughter of* Shiramun, *becauſe ſhe was too young to have had a Hand in that Treaſon.*

He

He had ſo much Gratitude towards *Batu*, the Son of *Zuzi Chan*, who had contributed moſt to his Elevation to the Throne, that he yielded to him in every thing, and rely'd upon him in all Affairs of Conſequence; he alſo chang'd his Name *Batu*, into that of *Sagin Chan*. Batu *called* Sagin Chan.

Mangu Chan, perceiving on ſeveral Occaſions that all his Neighbours, as well on the Eaſtern as the Weſtern ſide of him, were forming Deſigns againſt his Empire, ſent his Brother *Coplai* with an Army Eaſtward, and his Brother *Halaku*, with another Army into the Weſt, marching himſelf towards *Zinumazin*; and having ſubdued all the ſmall Towns of that Country, he went and laid Siege to the Capital named *Zinu*. This Siege began in the Winter, and having laſted till the Spring, a great part of his Army periſh'd by Sickneſs, the *Mogulls* not being uſed to the unwholeſomeneſs of the Air of that Climate; which giving his Generals Cauſe to fear, leſt the Plague had got into the Army, they ſtrove to perſuade him to raiſe the Siege and renew it at the end of the Summer, ſeeing their Men could better bear the Inconveniencies of the Winter, than the great Power which the Air has in that Country in the Spring. But he would by no means hearken to that Council, inſomuch, that obſtinately perſiſting to continue the Siege, he fell ill himſelf of the ſame Diſtemper, and died after a Sickneſs of eight days, which happen'd in the Year 655. Mangu Chan *ſends out three Armies.* *Perhaps* Machin. *The ſame as* Dſurdfut, *p.* 14. *Sickneſs in the* Chan's *Army.* Mangu Chan *dies before* Zinu. *An. Dom.* 1257.

CHAP. V.
Of the Reign of Coplai Chan, *fourth Son of* Taulai Chan.

Coplai *proclaimed* Chan *by the Army.*

AS ſoon as the News of the Death of *Mangu Chan* was known in the Army, which was in the Field towards *Kitay*, under Command of *Coplai*, they proclaimed him *Chan*, in the room of his deceaſed Brother. On the other ſide *Artokbuga*, who was alſo a Brother of *Mangu Chan*, and on whom that *Chan* had conferr'd the Regency of the Empire in his Abſence, being inform'd of the Death of his Brother, got himſelf alſo proclaim'd *Chan*. *Coplai Chan* having had Intelligence of this Matter, diſpatch'd a Meſſenger to diſpoſe him to quit his Pretenſions; but *Artokbuga* put to death that Envoy, which highly enrag'd *Coplai Chan*.

Artokbuga *the Regent proclaim'd* Chan.

Artokbuga *attacks* Burga Chan.

In the mean time, *Batu-Sagin-Chan*, who reign'd over the Country of * *Daſht-Kipzak*, happening to die, and his Subjects having elected his Brother *Burga* in his ſtead, *Artokbuga* made War upon him: But having been beaten, he was conſtrained to fly into the Provinces neighbouring on *Carakum*. Upon theſe Tidings *Coplai Chan* went to find him in thoſe Parts at the Head of his Army; but he ſav'd himſelf by flight, and found means ſometime after to make his Peace with *Coplai Chan*, and obtain his Favour. *Halaku* being wiſer, ſent to make his Compliments to his Brother *Coplai Chan* upon his Advancement to the Empire; who granted him,

Is beaten.

Submits to Coplai Chan.

Diviſion of the Empire.

[* *It is every where in the* French *Tranſlation* Daſhtè Kipzak; *but as it is written* Daſht *by Dr.* Hyde *and all other Authors, I have thought fit to leave out the final* e.]

upon

upon that Conſideration, the Property of all which the *Mogulls* poſſeſs'd at that time *beyond* the River *Amu**. *Burga Chan* remained in Poſſeſſion of *Daſht Kipzak*; and *Algu*, Grandſon of *Zagatai Chan*, had for his Share all the Country lying between the *Altai*, and the River *Amu* †.

At length *Coplai Chan* died full of Glory, ſhortly after he had taken the Town of *Zinu*; having lived ſeventy three Years, and reigned thirty five ‡. Zinu *taken.*

[* *With regard to us it ſhould be on this ſide the River; but it muſt be conſidered, the Author, when he wrote, was beyond it.*]

† *The part of* Mount Caucaſus *which runs directly Eaſt from the River* Irtis *to the Sea of* Japan, *and which the* Tatars *call* Tugra Tubuſluk, *ſends forth two Branches which run along on each ſide of the* Irtis *as far up it as the Lake* Sayſſan, *and bear the Name of the Great and Little* Altai; *ſo that 'tis eaſy to ſee that by all the Country ſituate between the River* Amu *and the* Altai, *which* Coplai Chan *granted on that occaſion to* Algu, *Grandſon of* Zagatai Chan, *muſt be underſtood the Country which is known to us at preſent by the Name of* Great Bucharia, Charaſs'm, Turkeſtan, *and the weſtern part of the Country of the* Call-mucks.

‡ Coplai Chan *was one of the greateſt Princes that have reigned over the* Tatars: *'Twas this Prince who accompliſhed the Reduction of* China *under the Power of the* Tatars *about the Year* 1278; *for* Zingis Chan *conquer'd only what lies to the North of the River* Hoangſo; Ugadai Chan *afterwards ſubdued what is ſituate between the River* Hoangſo, *and that of* Kiang; *but* Coplai Chan *compleated that fair Conqueſt by the Reduction of all the Southern Part of* China *beyond the* Kiang.

As our Author ſays nothing of the Poſterity of Coplai Chan, *altho we know from others that he had ſeveral Sons; I ſhall add here, that his Deſcendants reigned after him in* China, *ſo long as the* Tatars *kept Poſſeſſion of it; and as after they had been driven out of* China, *thoſe of them who went and ſettled towards the Shores of the Sea of* Japan, *continued always to have*

have Chans: *It is probable that the preſent Emperors of* China *are deſcended from the Poſterity of* Coplai Chan; *ſeeing there are no other Princes of the Houſe of* Zingis Chan *among that Part of the fugitive* Tatars *from* China, *but thoſe of the Poſterity of* Coplai Chan, *and that the* Tatars *preſerve too great a Veneration for the Memory of* Zingis Chan, *willingly to obey other* Chans *of their Nation, while there remained among them Princes of his Race. But whether the* Chans *of the* Mogulls *of the Weſt be likewiſe ſprung from the Poſterity of* Coplai Chan, *is a Point a little difficult to determine; tho there is much Probability for the Affirmative.*

PART.

PART V.

Which compriſes the Hiſtory of *Zagatai Chan*, ſecond Son of *Zingis Chan*, and of the Princes of his Poſterity who have reigned over the Cities of the Kingdoms of *Caſhgar*, *and Maurenner*.

CHAP. I.

Of the Life and Reign of Zagatai Chan.

Zagatai's Share.

Zagatai Chan had ſomething very ſevere in his Countenance, inſomuch that every one was afraid to look at him; but he had a vaſt deal of Wit, and it was on that account that *Zingis Chan* gave him for his Share all the Country of *Ma-urenner*, and half of what belong'd to the Towns of the Country of *Charaſs'm*, as well as the *Vigurs* and the Cities of *Caſhgar*, *Badag ſhan*, *Balck* and *Gaſmien*, with their Dependences, as far as the River *Sirr-Indi*: but he always reſided with his Brother *Ugadai Chan*, and conferr'd the Government of

Indus.

the Provinces of his Dominions to Officers of conſummate Prudence.

Story of a Sorcerer. He had at his Court a Sorcerer, who knew ſo well how to dazzle the Eyes of thoſe he had a mind to deceive, that they thought they ſaw whole Armies march before them; tho at the ſame time they ſaw nothing at all of it. *Zagatai Chan* having likewiſe had the Curioſity once to ſee ſome ſuch Repreſentation, conceiv'd a ſtrong Averſion for the Man; and upon ſome Complaints which one of the Lords of his Court made againſt that Sorcerer ſome ſhort while after, he order'd him to be bound Hand and Foot and caſt into Priſon, where he died; but *Zagatai Chan* did not ſurvive him long, for he was ſeized ſoon after with an incurable Diſeaſe, which carry'd him off in the Year 640.

Zagatai Chan's *Death.*

An. Dom. 1242. *His Wives.* Among a great many Wives and Concubines which he had, he diſtinguiſh'd two above all the reſt, who were two Siſters, Daughters of *Caba Noyan*, Chief of the Tribe of *Kankratts*; the firſt of whom called *Buſſulun*, bore him many Sons, which he loved beſt of all his Children: And the ſecond was called *Tarchan Chatun*, whom he eſpouſed after the Death of the firſt. Theſe are the Names of the Sons of *Zagatai Chan*; 1. *Mutugan*, 2. *Muzi*, 3. *Balda Shah*, 4. *Sagin-lalga*, 5. *Sarmans*, 6. *Buſſumunga*, 7. *Baidar*.

His Sons.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of the Princes of the Poſterity of Zagatai Chan, *who have reigned in the Country of* Ma-urenner *after the Death of* Zagatai Chan.

Cara-Halaku, Son of *Mutugan*, reign'd in the Country of *Ma-urenner* after the Death of his Grandfather *Zagatai Chan*, and that Prince was ſucceeded by his Son *Mubarak Shah*; but in regard he was very young at his Father's Death, his Mother *Argata Chatun* took the Title of Regent, till her Son had attain'd the Age which qualify'd him for reigning by himſelf. After the Death of *Mubarak Shah*, *Algu* Son of *Baidar* came to the Crown, and had for his Succeſſor a Grandſon of *Mutagan*, named *Barak Chan*, the Son of *Jaſuntu*; who after he had reigned two Years, embraced the *Mahometan* Profeſſion, and took the Name of Sultan *Gelaſudin:* He was the firſt of the Poſterity of *Zagatai Chan* who profeſs'd *Mahometiſm.* After his Death, the Dignity of *Chan* was conferr'd on *Begi*, the Son of *Sarmans*, who had a great Grandſon of *Mutagan*, called *Buga Timur*, for his Succeſſor. Cara-Halaku. Mubarak Shah. Algu. Barak Chan *turns* Mohammedan. Begi. Buga Timur.

After the Death of *Buga Timur Chan*, *Doizi Chan*, Son of *Barak Chan*, held the Scepter; and had for Succeſſor his Son *Conza Chan*. *Conza Chan* dying, *Baliga* who was alſo a Grandſon of *Mutugan*, ſucceeded him. After *Baliga Chan*, *Iſan Boga* *, ſecond Son of *Doizi Chan*, held the Scepter of the Country of *Ma-urenner*, Doizi Chan. Conza Chan. Baliga. * *or* Amul Chodſa.

[* *Upon* Iſan Boga's *being called to reign in* Caſhgar, *I ſuppoſe he left the Throne of* Mawar-al-nahr *to his Brother* Dui-Timur. *See* p. 176.]

Dui Timur. and was ſucceeded by his Brother *Dui Timur*. *Dui Timur Chan* was follow'd in the Throne by his Brother *Tarmaſhir*, who again embrac'd the *Mahometan* Religion: for tho *Barak Chan* and his Subjects had already embrac'd and carefully preſerv'd in their time the Worſhip of *Mahomet*, it nevertheleſs came to paſs, that the ſucceeding Generations had by degrees ſo far loſt it, that there was hardly to be found any Footſteps of that Religion in the Countries of *Maurenner*, and the Provinces dependent thereon, when *Tarmaſhir Chan* undertook to reſtore it.

Tarmaſhir. Mohammediſm *loſt and reſtored.*

Butan Chan. Zangſhi Chan. *Tarmaſhir Chan* was ſlain by his Brother *Butan Chan**, who afterwards ſeiz'd the Throne, and had for his Succeſſor his Nephew *Zangſhi*, the Son of his Brother *Ulugan*. *Zangſhi Chan* had a Brother, called *Jaſun-Timur*, who envying him the Throne he poſſeſs'd, reſolv'd to make him away without Diſturbance: but the Widow of *Ulugan*, who was Mother of them both, ſuſpecting his Deſign, adviſ'd *Zangſhi Chan* to be upon his Guard, who immediately took the Field againſt his Brother; but he had the Misfortune to loſe the Battle, with his Life, on that Occaſion; after which *Jaſun Timur* cauſed his Mother's Belly to be rip'd up, in Revenge for having appriz'd *Zangſhi Chan* of the Deſign which he had form'd againſt his Life.

Jaſun Timur, *another Nero.*

Aly Sultan. During his Reign, there was a Prince of the Poſterity of *Ugadai Chan*, called *Aly-Sultan*; who became ſo formidable, that *Jaſun Timur*, and the other Princes of the Poſterity of *Zagatai Chan* were not able to make head againſt him; inſomuch that after the Death of *Jaſun Timur*, he brought the Country of *Ma-urenner*

* [Turmaſhirin, 16 *from* Zagatai, *died in* 1336. Tim. Bec, *pag.* 18.]

under

under Subjection to him: but after his death, *Caſan Sultan*, Son of *Jaſur*, Son of *Urek Timur Chan*, Son of *Cutugai*, Son of *Boſai*, Son of *Mutugan*, Son of *Zagatai Chan*, re-enter'd into the Poſſeſſion of the Patrimony of the Houſe of *Zagatai Chan*; inſomuch that there were in all ſixteen *Chans* of the Poſterity of *Zagatai Chan*, who reign'd without Interruption over the Provinces of *Ma-urenner*; and after them there were indeed other Chans in that Country; but they were ſuch as only bore the Name of *Chan* without having the Power, each Head of a Tribe aſſuming the Liberty of doing what he pleaſed, and obeying the *Chan* as much as he thought fit.

Caſan Sultan.

Power of the Chans *ceaſes in* Mawar-alnahr.

Caſan Sultan was a very cruel Prince; he at firſt maintain'd a War ſucceſsfully enough againſt *Amir Caſagan*, ſeeing that he conſtrain'd him after defeating his Army to ſave himſelf by flight: But *Caſan Sultan* having after that taken up his Winter Quarters in the Country of *Carſhi*, he had the Misfortune to loſe that Winter, which was very ſevere, ſo many Horſes in his Army, that almoſt all his Cavalry was reduced to march a foot: Upon which *Amir Caſagan*, who had good Intelligence of the bad Condition of the Troops of *Caſan Sultan Chan*, return'd immediately, and falling upon him depriv'd him of Life, together with the Scepter of the Country of *Maurenner*, which happen'd in the Year 749. *Caſan Sultan Chan* was the laſt of the ſixteen Princes of the Poſterity of *Zagatai Chan*, who reign'd without interruption during 109 Years in the Country of *Ma-urenner*, with the Power belonging to the Sovereign Dignity with which they were inveſted.

Caſan Sultan *very cruel.*

Slain by Amir Caſagan.

An. Dom. 1348.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

Of divers other Chans *who have reigned in the Country of* Ma-urenner *until* Amir Timur *.

Amir Caſagan. AFTER the death of *Caſan Sultan Chan*, *Amir Caſagan* mounted the Throne of the Country of *Ma-urenner:* This Prince was the Son of *Daniſhmanza*, Son of *Kaydu*, Son of *Kaſhi*, Son of *Ugadai Chan*, Son of *Zingis Chan.* He was ſlain after he had reigned two Years, but it is not known by whom †. After his death

Bayanculi. *Bayanculi* Son of *Surga*, Son of *Doizi Chan*, Son of *Barak Chan*, Son of *Jaſuntu*, Son of *Mutugan*, Son of *Zagatai Chan*, ſeized the Throne tho *Amir Caſagan* left ſeveral Sons, among which there was one called *Abdula*, whom *Bayanculi-Chan* cauſed to be ſlain upon a Suſpicion of having a criminal Correſpondence with his Wife ‡. *Amir Huſſain* was a Nephew to *Abdula*, and one of his Brothers Sons.

Timur Shah. *Timur Shah* ſucceeded *Bayanculi Chan*, he was Son of *Jaſun Timur Chan*, Son of *Ulugan*, Son of *Doizi Chan*, Son of *Barak Chan*, Son of

Adill Sultan. *Jaſuntu*, Son of *Mutugan*, Son of *Zagatai Chan.* After *Timur Shah Adill Sultan* came to the Throne: he was of the Poſterity of *Zagatai Chan*, being the Son of *Mahomet Pulat*, Son of *Conza Chan*, Son of *Doizi Chan*, &c.

[* *'Tis* Amir Timur Chan *in the* French; *but the word* Chan *being put in by the Editor, without any Authority, I have left it out.*]

† *Vide* Timur-bec, p. 13. *ſlain by* Cotluc Timur, *his Son-in-Law.*

‡ *Vide* Timur-bec, p. 15. *where* Abdalla *is ſaid to have ſlain the* Chan *for the ſame Cauſe.*]

Among

Among the Vaſſals of *Adill Sultan*, there were two Heads of Tribes, one named *Amir Timur*, Son of *Taragai* of the Tribe of *Burlaſs*; and the other called *Amir Huſſain*, Nephew of *Abdula* of the Poſterity of *Ugadai Chan*, as we have already related. Theſe two Lords having plotted together againſt *Adill Sultan*, ſeized his Perſon, and having bound him Hands and Feet, afterwards drowned him. They nominated in his room *Cabull Sultan* to bear the Dignity of *Chan:* That Prince was Son of *Dordſi*, Son of *Ilzaktai*, Son of *Doizi Chan*. In his reign the two fore-mentioned Lords ſeized the Town of *Balck*, and ſlew the *Chan* who reigned there at that time, but 'tis not known what his Name was.

Adill Sultan *drown'd by* Amir Timur *and* Amir Huſſain.

Cabull Sultan.

Balk *ſeized by the* Amirs Timur *and* Huſſain.

After *Cabull Sultan Chan* theſe two Lords raiſed *Soiruk-Tamiſh* to the Dignity of *Chan*; he was of the Poſterity of *Ugadai Chan*, being the Son of *Daniſhmanza*, Son of *Kaydu*, Son of *Kaſhi*, Son of *Ugadai Chan*. After the death of *Soiruktamiſh Chan*, *Mahomet Sultan* his Son was inveſted with the Title of *Chan**. All the *Chans* we have mentioned ſince *Caſan Sultan Chan*, have only born the Name of *Chan*, without having any real Power; foraſmuch as each Lord of their Vaſſals, who ſaw himſelf at the head of

Soiruk Tamiſh Chan.

Mohammed Sultan Chan.

The Chans *from* Caſan Sultan *purely nominal.*

* Cabul Chan *was the laſt of the Poſterity of* Zagatai Chan, *and* Mahomet Sultan Chan, *the laſt of the Deſcendants of* Ugadai Chan, *who reigned in* Great Bucharia *after the Death of* Zagatai Chan; *for after that* Tamerlan *cauſed himſelf to be proclaimed* Chan *of that Country, and his Deſcendants poſſeſſed it after him till the end of the* 15*th Century, when* Shabacht Sultan *of the Poſterity of* Sheybani Chan, *Grandſon of* Zingis Chan, *whom our Hiſtorians commonly call* Sheybec, *drove them out of it; and ſince that time all the* Chans *who have reigned in* Great Bucharia, *have been of the Poſterity of* Zingis Chan. [*All the* Chans *at preſent ſprung from* Zuzi. *See Part* 2.]

ſome

ſome numerous Tribe, believed he had right to make a *Chan* according to his own fancy, and to obey him no more than was his pleaſure.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Life and principal Actions of Amir Timur.

Amir Timur *wars on the other Tribes.*

WHILST the Government was upon ſo unſteady a Footing in the Country of *Ma-urenner*, *Amir Timur*, Son of *Tarragai*, of the Tribe of *Burlaſs*, made war againſt all the other Tribes of that Country, getting ſometimes the better, other times the worſt. *Togalak Timur Chan* of the Country of *Caſhgar* *, who was become very formidable during theſe Troubles, perceiving ſo favourable an occaſion to enlarge his Power, enter'd the Country of *Maurenner* with a great Army, and at his approach one part of the Inhabitants of the Country, wearied with Civil Wars which raged among them for ſo many Years, ſubmitted to him, without making any Reſiſtance †. Another part of them which oppos'd that Prince, were put to the Sword, and the reſt retired with *Amir Timur*, and *Amir Huſſain*, into the Country of *Charaſs'm*.

Togalak Timur Chan *ſubdues part of* Mawaral Nahr.

Amir Timur *retires to* Chowarazm.

Togalak Timur Chan, having ſtaid a whole Year in the Country of *Ma-urenner*, gave the Government to his Son *Ilyas Chodſa*, and return'd to *Caſhgar*, where he died a Year after his Return ‡.

[* *Called King of the* Getes, Timur-bec. p. 18. *hence* Caſhgar *and* Gete *ſeem to be the ſame.*

† *Heg.* 761. *A. D.* 1359. Timur-bec. p. 18. *'Tis his ſecond Expedition. Heg.* 762. *A.D.* 1360. *which is here referr'd to. Vide* Timur-bec. p. 28.

‡ *Died A. D.* 2372. Timur-bec. p. 28.]

Upon

Upon the News of his Death, *Amir Timur* and *Amir Huſſain* return'd into the Country of *Ma-urenner*, and conſtrained *Ilyas Chodſa* to retire to *Caſhgar*. Theſe two Lords lived for ſome time in very good Underſtanding together, and divided between them the ſovereign Authority in the Country of *Ma-urenner*; but at length they fell at variance, inſomuch that they came to a bloody Battle in the neighbourhood of the Town of *Balk*; and Fortune having upon this Occaſion decided in favour of *Amir Timur*, *Amir Huſſain* remained dead upon the Field of Battle, and by his Death left his Rival ſole Maſter of the Country of *Ma-urenner*. 'Tis true that the forementioned *Mahomet Sultan Chan* continued always to bear the Title of *Chan*; but it was *Amir Timur* who in fact reigned: And *Mahomet Sultan Chan* was ſo far from envying him, that on the contrary he continually prayed to God to preſerve the Life of *Amir Timur*.

Amir Timur *forces* Ilyas Choga *to return to* Caſhgar.

Huſſain *defeated and ſlain.*

Amir Timur *in effect* Chan.

After *Amir Timur* had reigned in this manner during thirty three Years, he enter'd at the Age of ſixty Years into the Country of *Ruhm*, and fought a bloody Battle with the ſovereign Prince of that Country called *Sultan Bajaſiet*. This Battle laſted with horrible Slaughter from Morning till late in the Night; but at length *Sultan Bajaſiet* found himſelf obliged to betake himſelf to flight, and his Army was entirely deſtroyed. *Amir Timur* perceiving the Battle won, immediately detach'd *Mahomet Sultan Chan* to purſue *Sultan Bajaſiet*; who coming up with him next Day about Noon, put to the Sword the few Followers that were about him, and brought him Priſoner to the Camp *.

Invades Ruhm, *or* Aſia Minor.

Defeats Bajazet, *Sultan of the* Turks.

Amir

* *'Tis not difficult to ſee that 'tis of the famous* Tamerlan *our Author ſpeaks in this Place; and certainly one can't but be*

be highly pleaſed to find him ſo moderate upon the Subject of a Man who had in his time done all the miſchief imaginable to his Anceſtors, and the reſt of the Princes of the Poſterity of Zingis Chan: *and this Moderation is a good Security to us of the Faithfulneſs of the Hiſtory of our Author; ſince we ſee thereby, that as he could not prevail with himſelf to ſay all the good he might of a Man he had ſo much reaſon to hate, he choſe rather to ſay but a few things of him, than fail of the eſſential Duty of an Hiſtorian, by charging him with Falſhoods; and for that reaſon, there is no room to doubt, but what he relates of the Origin of* Tamerlan *is intirely agreeable to truth; for whereas ſome Authors make him deſcend from the meaneſt of the People, and others on the contrary derive his Pedigree from I know not what Emperors and Princes of the* Tartars, *our Author relates very ingenuouſly, that he was Chief of the Tribe of the* Burlaſs, *who deſcended from* Tumana Chan, *great great Grandfather of* Zingis Chan, *by* Cazuli *his ſixth Son; as may be ſeen,* p. 60 *.

But inaſmuch as he ſpeaks only of thoſe Expeditions of this Conqueror, which the Connection of the Hiſtory neceſſarily obliges him to relate, I ſhall add here in a few words, that the Exploits of the grand Tamerlan *far ſurpaſs thoſe of all the Heroes of Antiquity; for after being raiſed from the quality of Subject, to that of Maſter, he carried his Arms with an aſtoniſhing Rapidity thro' all* Aſia, *united all the* Mahometan Tatars *under his Empire, conquer'd the* Indies, *ſubdued* Perſia, *vanquiſhed the* Turks, *penetrated as far as the Straits of* Dardanelles, *ravaged* Egypt, *and cruſh'd to pieces all the Princes who durſt oppoſe him: and as he wanted only* China, *with ſome neighbouring Provinces, to ſee the Dominion of all* Aſia *united in his Perſon, he was actually on the march thither at the head of a prodigious Army, when Death came and put an end to all his Power.*

Tamerlan, *as to his Perſon, was very ill favour'd, as are moſt of the* Tatars; *he was lame of a Wound which he received in ſome of the firſt Actions of his Life, and from thence he had the Name of* Timurlang, *that is,* Timur *the lame, which Cuſtom has ſince changed by corruption into that of* Tamerlan. *He profeſſed the* Mahometan *Religion, as did all the* Tatars *of both the* Bucharia's *and the Country of* Charaſs'm *in his Time, which 'tis probable thoſe Authors were ignorant of, who ſeem to be ſo much aſtoniſhed that he never touch'd any of the* Moskees *of ſo many Towns which he had*

* [I cannot agree with the Editor in this place, for I think the Author's Partiality appears not only by the ſlight Account he gives of *Timur*'s Actions; but alſo by charging him with the Death both of *Bajazet* and *Sultan Mohammed Chan*, contrary to the Fact. See Hiſt. *Timur-bec*, Vol. 2. p. 270, 285.]

deſtroyed

Amir Timur having remained a Year in the Provinces depending on *Ruhm*, return'd into his own Dominions; and at this Juncture he cauſed to be put to death, not only *Sultan Ba-jaſiet* his Priſoner, but alſo thé good *Mahomet Sultan Chan*; after which he cauſed himſelf to be proclaimed *Chan*. He was ſcarce arrived in the Country of *Ma-urenner*, when he reſolved to undertake an Expedition into *Kitay*, but he

Amir Timur *aſſumes the Title of* Chan.

deſtroyed. He had ſome Knowledge of Mathematicks and Philoſophy; he protected the Learned on all occaſions, and was a great lover of the Sciences; as it ſtill appears by the Academy of Sciences, in the City of Samarkant, *which owes its Eſtabliſhment to him. He was ſober, modeſt, wiſe, and as great a Diſſembler as ever Prince was; but above all, he ſhined in the Virtues of War, of which his grand Actions will be everlaſting Monuments.*

The defeat of Sultan Bajazet I. *Son of Sultan* Amurat I. *was the moſt famous of his Victories, ſeeing that Prince had acquired the Reputation of the greateſt Warrior of his Age, by the great Advantages which he had gained at different times over the Chriſtians. That Battle was fought near the Town of* Simiſa, *in* Natolia, *on Friday* July 28, 1402. *'Tis to be obſerved that our Author reports, that* Tamerlan *put Sultan* Bajazet *to death; whereas our Hiſtorians aſſure us, that he daſhed out his Brains againſt the Bars of an Iron Cage, which the Conqueror cauſed him to be incloſed in. 'Tis ſaid* Tamerlan *had the Cuſtom when he beſieged a Town, to ſet up over his Tent the firſt Day white Colours, to notify that then was the time to have recourſe to his Clemency; the ſecond Day red Colours, to ſignify that the principal Inhabitants of the Town ſhould pay with their Blood for their raſhneſs in endeavouring to ſtop the Courſe of his Victories; and the third Day black Colours, to ſhew that the Day of Grace was paſt, and that the Town was thenceforth deſtin'd to be deſtroyed; nevertheleſs, as I don't find any Foundation for advancing this Particular, I think it ought to be look'd upon as an Invention.*

Our Hiſtorians give us but very little Light into the Life of Tamerlan; *and as for the Oriental Writers, they are all to be read with caution in their Hiſtories of illuſtrious Men, becauſe in that ſort of Writings they uſually give ſuch a Latitude to their Imagination, naturally very lively, that they ſeem to be writing a Romance, at the ſame time that they are treating of Facts of great importance, and very true.*

got

Dies at Otrar *in his way to* China. *An. Dom.* 1404.

got no farther than the City of *Otrar*, where he fell ſick and died, after he had reigned thirty ſix Years, and lived in all ſixty three. This happen'd in the Year 807*.

CHAP. V.

Of the Princes of the Poſterity of Zagatai Chan, *who have reigned in the Country of* Caſhgar.

Iſan Boga Chan *called out of* Mawar-al-nahr *to reign in* Caſhgar. *Vide* p. 167.

IN the mean time it came to paſs that the Inhabitants of the Cities of *Caſhgar* and *Jerkeen*, of the Countries of *Alatach* and the *Vigurs*, finding none of the Poſterity of *Zagatai Chan* among them, who was capable of filling the Throne of their Country which was vacant, they found themſelves obliged to call in *Amul Chodſa*, who reigned at that Juncture, under the Name of *Iſan Boga Chan*, in the Country of *Ma-urenner*. This Prince, as we have above obſerv'd, was Son of *Doizi Chan*, Son of *Barak Chan*, Son of *Jaſuntu*, Son of *Mutugan*, Son of *Zagatai Chan*. He had a Wife named *Satiltamiſh*, and as ſhe bore him no Children, he got

* *After the Death of* Tamerlan, *his vaſt Empire which grew up almoſt as ſuddenly as a Muſhroom, diſappeared almoſt as ſoon; for his Deſcendants immediately after his Death, loſt all that he had conquered to the South of the River* Amu, *with the Kingdom of* Caſhgar; *ſo that they only kept the* Indies, *with the greateſt part of his Conqueſts in the North of* Aſia. *Theſe laſt Provinces were alſo taken from them towards the end of the* 15*th Age by a Prince of the Poſterity of* Zingis Chan, *called* Shabacht Sultan; *but the* Indies *remained to them, where they at preſent poſſeſs one of the fineſt Empires of the Earth, which we are wont to call the Empire of the* Great Mogull; *becauſe thoſe Princes are ſprung from the* Mogulls *by* Tamerlan *their Founder.*

one

one of his Slaves with Child, called *Manlagi*: But one Day when the *Chan* was gone a hunting, his Wife, who could not but be very jealous of that Slave, gave her in marriage, with Child as ſhe was by her Huſband, to a *Mogull* named *Shiragol*, and obliged him to carry her off with him immediately into his own Country. *Hiſtory of the Woman Slave Manlagi.*

The Chan at his Return from hunting having enquir'd after the Slave, was inform'd that his Wife had given her to a *Mogull*, and in regard he had no mind to have a Quarrel with his Wife, he reſolv'd to pretend ignorance of the Matter, and ſay not a word to her about it. In the mean time *Iſan Boga Chan* happening to die without Children, the State was all in confuſion, by means of the different Factions which rent it in pieces. In this Extremity one of the principal Lords of the Kingdom of *Caſhgar*, named *Amir Jolauzi*, who knew the Affair of the Slave, ſent off-hand for a Man whoſe Fidelity he had prov'd, named *Taſh Timur*; and having provided all ſorts of Cattle for his Suſtenance, ſent him in queſt of the Slave, ordering him not to return till he could bring him certain Tidings of the Child, with which ſhe was big at the time that the Wife of the deceaſed *Chan* made her depart with the *Mogull*. *Iſan Boga dies.* *Taſh Timur ſent in ſearch of the Slave.*

Taſh Timur, after he had to no purpoſe travell'd thro' many Countries in hopes of finding what he look'd for, came at length to a Place where there were many Habitations of *Mogulls*, and having enquir'd the Name of the Chief of thoſe Habitations, he underſtood not only that his Name was *Shiragol*, but alſo that the Slave *Manlagi* was in the ſame place, and that in reality ſhe had had a Son called *Togalak* by the deceaſed *Chan* of *Caſhgar*: They alſo ſhew'd him the Boy, who was playing with his Brother by the *Togalak, Son of Iſan Boga Chan by the Slave Manlagi, born Heg. 730. A.D. 1329.*

Mother's ſide, called *Timur Malik*. Upon which that Man, having taken his Opportunity when no body obſerv'd him, carry'd off young *Togalak* and brought him to *Amir Jolauzi*; who cauſing him off-hand to be proclaimed *Chan* of *Caſhgar*, gave in his Name all the accuſtom'd Banquets and Rejoycings on theſe ſorts of Occaſions, and made him take the Name of *Togalak Timur Chan*.

Togalak *made* Chan *of* Caſhgar *about* Heg. 748.

This *Chan* was obliged to employ a great part of his Reign in ſuppreſſing the different Factions which oppos'd him in the Towns of *Caſhgar* and *Jerkeen*, and in the Countries of *Alatach* and the *Vigurs*, after which he enter'd with a powerful Army into the Country of *Ma-urenner*, and brought it alſo under his Obedience. After which having left his Son *Ilyas Chodſa* in the City of *Samarkant* to govern in his Name the Country of *Ma-urenner*, he return'd to the Town of *Caſhgar*, where he died ſome time after.

Conquers Mawar-al Nahr. Heg. 762.

Leaves his Son Ilyas Choga *Governor of* Samarkant.

Togalak Timur Chan was the firſt of the Princes of the Poſterity of *Zingis Chan* reigning in *Caſhgar*, which embrac'd the *Mahometan* Religion, which happen'd in this manner. *Togalak Timur Chan* being one day a hunting, perceiv'd ſome foreign Merchants in the Place which he had pitch'd upon for aſſembling the Game, which put him in a great Paſſion; inaſmuch as he had order'd a Decree to be publiſh'd, prohibiting every body to ſhoot or walk in the Places where he was accuſtom'd to hunt, to avoid frighting away the Game; and for that reaſon he order'd thoſe Men to be brought before him bound Hand and Foot; which having been inſtantly executed, he aſk'd them how they came to infringe his Laws? whereupon the moſt conſiderable among them, who was a *Sheich*, named *Sama-*

Togalak *the firſt* Mohammedan *Prince in* Caſhgar.

Samaludin, having anſwer'd, that they were Strangers of the Country of *Kattack*, who knew not there was any ſuch Prohibition in that Country. The *Chan* reply'd, " 'Tis like " you are *Tadſiks*, and conſequently worſe than " Dogs; for I make much more account of a " Dog, than of a *Tadſik*." But the *Sheich Samaludin* made anſwer, " If we were not true " Believers, there would be reaſon for making " no more Account of us than a Dog; becauſe " that with the Reaſon that we have, we ſhould " yet be leſs reaſonable than Beaſts." This Anſwer touch'd the Heart of the *Chan*, who thereupon order'd thoſe Strangers to be detained till he return'd from the Chaſe; and then ſending for the *Sheich Samaludin*, he took him in private and ſaid to him, " What is your Re- " ligion, that you durſt tell me a while ago, " that if you were not true Believers I had rea- " ſon to make no more Account of you than " a Dog?" Upon which the *Sheich* having amply explained all the Articles of the *Mahometan* Faith, the *Chan* was ſo convinced of the Truth of that Religion, that he reſolv'd to embrace it immediately: but in regard divers Conſiderations hinder'd him from undertaking as yet ſo great a Change in the State, he beſought the *Sheich* to return to him ſome time after, to concert together the Means to be employ'd to bring about that Affair.

Tagicks held in Contempt.

In the mean time *Sheich Samaludin* falling ill a little while after his Return, he commanded his Son named *Sheich Raſhidudin* to repair after his Death to *Togalak Timur Chan*, and put him in mind of the Diſcourſe which he had at ſuch a time with him concerning the *Mahometan* Worſhip. Purſuant to theſe Orders the *Sheich Raſhidudin* did not fail to repair to *Caſhgar* immedi-

ately after his Father's Deceaſe; but not being able all he could do to get into the Court to ſpeak to the *Chan*, he bethought himſelf to go one Morning at Day-break and ſay his Prayers upon a Hill a little way from the Caſtle, ſo loud that he awaken'd *Togalak Timur Chan*, who ſending immediately to look for him, would know the reaſon why he bawl'd ſo loud in ſaying his Prayers. Then the *Sheich* having compleatly fulfill'd the Orders of his Father, the *Chan* would no longer defer embracing the *Mahometan* Religion; which he did ſo opportunely, that all the Lords of the Country follow'd his Example, except one only named *Amir Secuabis*, who appear'd and ſaid, "There is one of our People "who has extraordinary Gifts, with whom, if "the *Sheich Raſhidudin* dare wreſtle and throws "him, I will alſo embrace his Religion, but "not otherwiſe." The *Chan* at firſt oppos'd a Controverſy of that nature; but the *Sheich* having preſs'd for liberty to accept of the Challenge, he at length condeſcended: and no ſooner had the *Sheich* advanced up to the *Mogull*, but he laid him flat upon the Ground with a back Stroke of his Hand on the Stomach, inſomuch that it was a good while before he came to himſelf again: After which he fell at the *Sheich*'s Feet, and declar'd he was ready to embaace *Mahometiſm*. The Lord who had ſet them together did the ſame, and all the *Mogulls* who were in ſubjection to *Togalak Timur Chan* follow'd this Example, to the number of 160000 Souls.

Togalak Timur Chan and all the Lords of Caſhgar *embrace* Mohammediſm.

All the Mogulls, 160000 *in number, follow their Example.*

Amir Jolauſi, who had aided *Togalak Timur Chan* to aſcend the Throne, happening to die during his Reign, leaving only one Son ſeven years old named *Amir Chudaidat*; the *Chan* notwithſtanding his Youth, conferr'd on him all

his Father's Employments; whereupon the youngeſt of *Amir Chudaidat*'s Uncles by the Father's ſide named *Camarudin* (for *Amir Jolauzi* had five Brothers) beſought the *Chan* that foraſmuch as it would be a long time before *Amir Chudaidat*, on account of his Youth, would be able to do the Duties of the important Truſts with which he was inveſted, he might officiate for his Nephew till he came of Age, and propoſed then without more ado to give them up to him: But the *Chan* not having thought proper to grant his Requeſt, *Camarudin*, who was a very ambitious Man, and at the ſame time very powerful, took ſuch offence at that Refuſal, that he conceived a mortal hatred againſt the *Chan*. Nevertheleſs he knew ſo well how to hide it during the Life of *Togalak Timur Chan*, that he had no room to miſtruſt him: but after his death he revolted againſt his Son *Ilyas Chodſa*, who ſucceeded his Father in the Throne of *Caſhgar*, and having cauſed him to be maſſacred with all his Family to the number of eighteen Perſons, he ſeized the Government himſelf, and had it publiſhed by a ſolemn Proclamation, that Liberty was given to every body who knew any of the Poſterity of *Togalak Timur Chan*, to ſlay him with Impunity. *Togalak Timur Chan* was born in the Year 730, came to the Crown at the Age of eighteen, embraced *Mahometiſm* at twenty four, and died at the Age of thirty four Years.

Camarudin revolts.

Maſſacres Ilyas Choga and all his Family.

An. Dom. 1329.

Among many other Children which *Togalak Timur Chan* left behind him, there was a Son ſo very young that he was yet in his Mother's Womb, named *Amir Aga Chatun*, at the time of *Camarudin*'s Revolt; and this afflicted Mother not knowing where to hide her Son that he might not fall into the hands of that Tyrant,

Chiſſer Choga, Son of Togalak Timur Chan, eſcapes the Maſſacre.

truſted him to the care of *Amir Chudaidat*, who diſcharg'd his Truſt ſo faithfully, that whatever Applications *Camarudin* made to him to deliver that Child into his hands, he could never perſuade him to it; and War breaking out afterwards between *Amir Timur* and *Camarudin*, *Amir Chudaidat* laid hold of that occaſion to ſend the young Prince, named *Chiſſer Chodſa*, under a Guard of ſome of his People of approv'd Fidelity, and with ſome old Women, to keep him about the Mountains of *Badagſhan*, where the Jaſper is found.

Jaſper.

Amir Timur *invades* Camarudin.

Amir Timur and *Camarudin* waged War together for ſome time with much Fury, and ſo much Equality, that after five bloody Battles it ſeemed yet uncertain which of the two in the end would get the better, when *Camarudin* fell dangerouſly ill, and *Amir Timur* having advanced at the ſame time at the head of a powerful Army, the Troops of *Camarudin*, who ſaw themſelves without a Chief betook themſelves to flight, not daring to ſtay for the Enemy. As for *Camarudin*, he was in this Confuſion carry'd into certain great Deſarts, which lie to the Eaſt of the Town of *Caſhgar*, to the end he might not fall into the hands of the Enemy; but after the Retreat of the Army of *Amir Timur*, *Camarudin* could not by any means be found, whatever care was taken for the purpoſe: they underſtood a great while after * that he reſided with one named *Malik Adſahn*; but 'tis not known who that Man was.

Camarudin's *Army flies.*

Camarudin *not to be found after.*

Chiffer Choga Chan.

Amir Chudaidat not failing to lay hold of this Opportunity to bring back *Chiſſer Chodſa*, cau-

[* *About* 777. *A. D.* 1375. *or* 785. *A. D.* 1383. *See* Timur-bec. *p.* 176 *and* 235. Camareddin *living in* 792. *A. D.* 1390. *See Hiſt.* Timur-bec. *p.* 346.]

ſed

ſed him to be proclaimed *Chan* with all the uſual Solemnities. *Chiſſer Chodſa Chan* was the Son of *Togalak Timur Chan*, the Son of *Iſan Boga Chan*, Son of *Doizi Chan*, Son of *Barak Chan*, Son of *Jaſuntu*, Son of *Mutugan*, Son of *Zagatai Chan*, Son of *Zingis Chan*. This Prince reigned thirty Years over the Country of *Caſhgar*; and all thoſe who have ſince poſſeſſed the Throne of that Country have been of his Poſterity *.

[* *So that when this Author wrote, viz. in* 1665. Caſhgar *was in the hands of the Deſcendants of* Chiffer Chodſa; *and we find by the preſent State of* Bucharia, *printed in* French, 1723. *that it was ſubdued* 18 *years after by* Boſto Chan *of the* Calmucks, *in* 1683.]

PART VI.

Which contains the Hiſtory of *Taulai Chan*, youngeſt Son of *Zingis Chan*, and of his Deſcendants who have reigned in the Country of *Iran*.

CHAP. I.

Of Halaku Chan, *and of the Princes of his Poſterity down to* Abuſait Chan.

Halacu *conquers* Iran.

Taulai Chan happening to die in the Country of *Kitay* during the Expedition of his Brother *Ugadai Chan* into thoſe Parts, *Mangu Chan* his eldeſt Son obtained the Empire of the *Mogulls* after the death of *Kajuk Chan*, the Son of *Ugadai Chan*. That Prince ſome time after his advancement to the Throne, ſent his Brother *Halaku* with a numerous Army to conquer the Country of *Iran*, and at the ſame time nominated a Man of the Tribe of the *Virats*, called *Argun Aka*, for Governor of the Town of *Choraſſan*; who died after he had enjoyed that Government ten Years *.

In

* Zingis Chan *and his immediate Succeſſors in the Empire of the* Mogulls, *were content with ſubduing all* Perſia *under*

In the mean time *Halaku* having penetrated into the very heart of the Country of *Iran*, put to

under the Dominion of the Tatars; *but* Halaku Chan *coming with a powerful Army into* Perſia *about the Year* 1255, *paſſed the* Tigris *and* Euphrates, *conquered all the Provinces about thoſe two Rivers, and advanced even to the Extremities of* Syria *and* Natolia; *ſo that he brought under the* Tatar *Yoke all which the* Romans *were heretofore poſſeſſed of in* Aſia.

'Twas this Prince who put an end to the Empire of the Califfs *of* Bagdat *in the Year* 1258, *by the death of the laſt of the* Abbaſide Califfs, *and of all the Princes of his Houſe.*

Marco Polo *informs us on this Subject, that* Halaku Chan *having carried the City of* Bagdat *by aſſault, tho there was a Gariſon of above* 100000 *Men in it, he ſhut up the* Califf *in a Tower, where that unfortunate Prince kept the immenſe Treaſures which he had gather'd with ſo much Covetouſneſs during his Reign, and let him die with hunger in that place, after he had reproached him with ſuffering himſelf and his Dominions to be loſt for want of uſing that Money ſeaſonably.*

Halaku *put an end alſo to the Tyranny of the famous old Men of the Mountains, by cauſing all the ſtrong places of that petty State to be deſtroyed, after he had put to death the laſt of thoſe Tyrants called* Moadin.

Theſe inhuman Princes poſſeſſed a ſmall Territory incloſed within the Mountains of Libanus, *to the N. E. of the famous Town of* Tyre; *their Subjects pretended to be ſprung from the great* Arſaces, *Founder of the Empire of the* Parthians, *and bore for that reaſon the name of* Arſacians, *which was changed by corruption into that of* Aſſaſſins; *they were all Men of Execution, and breathed nothing but Murders and Robberies: Their Chief was commonly called the old Man of the Mountains, becauſe all their Towns and Caſtles were built upon Rocks, and the moſt inacceſſible Places of the Mountains; and that they always choſe one of the moſt antient and crafty among them to lodge the ſupreme Authority with.*

All our Hiſtorians accuſe theſe petty Sovereigns with having been very dextrous at ridding themſelves of their Enemies by a Stroke with the Hand, and to have had very ſingular Methods to engage the moſt reſolute of their Subjects therein; for they pretend, that when they had pitch'd upon any one of them for ſuch a Buſineſs, they propoſed the Affair he was to act in as an infallible means to gain Paradiſe; and to inſure him in ſome meaſure of it, they promiſed to give him a Foretaſte of the Joys which the Happy enjoy there. Afterwards they cauſed him to be carry'd while aſleep into certain very magnificent

Gardens

to the Sword all the Nation called *Mulahaida* *, with their Chief named *Calif Imotaſim*, and did not lay down his Arms till he had intirely ſubdued all the Provinces thereabouts. *Mangu Chan* happening afterwards to die, and *Coplai Chan* having ſucceeded to the Empire of the *Mogulls*, he made over the Property of all the Country of *Iran* to his Brother *Halaku*, who thereupon went and reſided in the Town of *Sham*, where he died after he had reigned nine Years over thoſe Provinces.

Coplai Chan *beſtows* Iran *on* Halaku.

Sham *the Reſidence of* Halaku.

Abka Chan.

Achmed Chan *turn'd* Mohamedan.

Argun Chan.

After his death, *Abka* his eldeſt Son ſucceeded him in the Sovereignty of the Country of *Iran*, and died after reigning nineteen Years: After *Abka Chan* his Brother *Achmat* was advanced to the Government of thoſe Provinces. That Prince embraced the *Mahometan* Worſhip, but he was kill'd by his Nephew *Argun*, the Son of *Abka Chan*, before he could introduce that Religion

Gardens which they had made upon an exceeding high Mountain, where he wanted nothing which might pleaſe the Senſes while he was there; and after he had been carry'd back in the ſame manner, they gave him hopes of the full Poſſeſſion of that delightful Abode, as ſoon as he had executed the deſigned Blow; which ſo far perſuaded thoſe miſerable Creatures, that there was not any Danger which they would not face with an aſtoniſhing Raſhneſs to obtain that imaginary Paradiſe.

But if what our Hiſtorians advance on this occaſion be true, I wonder they did not employ all their Skill to make away with Halaku Chan, *who extirpated them. Be that as it will, 'tis certain we have borrowed from theſe People the Name of* Aſſaſſins, *which is given at preſent to thoſe who kill any one deſignedly. See* Mezeray.

[* *There was a Race of* Mohammedan *Princes in* Perſia *called* Melahedah, *or* Iſmaelians, *who are the ſame meant by* Mulahaida: *The* Sheich al Gebal, *i. e. the Lord of the Mountain, was chief of thoſe Aſſaſſins, whom the Author confounds with the Chalif of* Bagdad, Almotaſſem, *whom* Halaku *put to death, as well as* Rokn Al-din Chuz Shah, *chief of the* Iſmaelians. Tacaſh, *the Father of* Sultan Mohammed Shah *of* Chowarazm, *purged the Province of* Aderbagan *of part of*

ligion among his Subjects. He reign'd but two Years.

Argun Chan dying after he had reigned ſeven Years, he was ſucceeded by his Brother *Kazeitu*, who was ſlain by *Baydu* after a four Years reign. *Baydu* who was the Son of *Taragai*, Son of *Halaku Chan*, ſeized afterwards the Throne of the Country of *Iran*; but he had ſcarce reigned eight Months, when *Gaſan*, Son of *Argun Chan*, Son of *Abka Chan*, Son of *Halaku Chan*, put him in like manner to death, and ſeized the Scepter.

Kazeitu Chan.

Baydu Chan.

Gaſan Chan.

Gaſan Chan was the firſt of the Princes of *Taulai Chan*'s Race, which reigned in *Iran*, who embraced *Mahometiſm* together with all his Subjects, and to prevent their falling any more into *Paganiſm*, he cauſed all the Idol Temples in his Dominions to be burnt: He died in the Year 701, being not above thirty Years of Age.

Embraces Mohammediſm *An. Dom.* 1301.

Ulſeitu his eldeſt Brother was his Succeſſor in the Throne of the Country of *Iran*, and died after he had reigned with much Glory thirteen Years. After the death of *Ulſeitu Chan*, his Son *Abuſait* came to the Crown: but in regard he was but twelve Years of Age at his Father's death, a Lord, one of his Vaſſals called *Amir Zupani*, chief of the Tribe of *Suldus*, had the Regency during his Minority. *Abuſait Chan* * having afterwards taken the Reins of Government into his own hands, acquir'd much Glory by his great Valour, and extended conſiderably the Frontiers of his Dominions.

Abuſaid Chan.

of them, Hegrah 593. *A. D.* 1196. *He intended alſo to have deſtroyed thoſe of* Choraſan, *but that Work was reſerved for* Halaku. *There remained ſome of them in* Maſanderan *till the time of* Timur-bec, *who rooted them out. See Hiſt.* Timur-bec. *pag.* 395.]

[* *Called by the* Perſians, Sultan Mahámet Chodabenda.]

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of the Civil Wars among the ſeveral Succeſſors of Abuſait Chan, *and of the Reduction of the Country of* Iran *by* Dzanibek Chan.

The Mogulls *Empire in* Perſia *divided by Civil Wars.*

Abuſait Chan dying after he had reigned in all nineteen Years; thoſe of the Tribe of *Suldus*, the Heads of which from Father to Son bore the Name of *Zupani*, put the Scepter into the hands of *Arpa Chan*, who was deſcended from *Artok-buga*, third Son of *Taulai Chan*. During his Reign there was a Chief of the Tribe of the *Virats* called *Aly*, who having much Credit in the City of *Bagdat*, cauſed *Muſa* the Son of *Aly*, the Son of *Baydu Chan*, Son of *Taragai*, Son of *Halaku Chan*, to be proclaimed *Chan* there. After which *Muſa Chan* marching to attack *Arpa Chan*, depriv'd him both of his Life and Scepter, and made himſelf Maſter of all the Cities and Provinces in his Dependence.

Arpa Chan *ſucceeds* Abuſaid.

Muſa-ben-Aly *proclaimed at* Bagdad.

At the ſame time there was in the Country of *Ruhm* a *Sheich* named *Sheich Hadſani Dſalagir*, otherwiſe *SheichHadſani-buſruk*; who underſtanding that the People of *Bagdat* had proclaimed *Muſa Chan*, and perceiving himſelf very powerful in the Provinces belonging to *Ruhm*, he cauſed in his turn *Mahamet*, Son of *Jol Kutluk*, Son of *Timur*, Son of *Anbarzi*, Son of *Mangu*, Son of *Halaku Chan*, to be proclaimed there in the quality of *Chan*. As ſoon as that Prince ſaw himſelf raiſed to this Dignity, he got together a great Army and march'd towards the Frontiers of

Mohammed Ben Jol Kutluk *proclaimed in* Aſia Minor.

Mohammed Chan *invades* Iran.

of *Iran*. At the News of the March of *Mahamet Chan*, *Muſa Chan* advanced to meet him as far as the City of *Tabris*, and the two Armies coming to a Battle in that place, that of *Muſa Chan* was entirely defeated, inſomuch that he was conſtrained to ſhelter himſelf among the *Virats*, after having loſt on that occaſion the ſaid *Aly*, chief of a Branch of the *Virats*, who by his own Intereſt had raiſed him to the Throne. *Defeats* Muſa Chan *at* Tabris.

Sheich Aly, Son of *Amir Aly Coſhzi*, who at that Juncture commanded in the Town of *Choraſſan*, being inform'd of this Defeat of *Muſa Chan*, went immediately to *Baſtan* and proclaimed there in quality of *Chan Tagai Timur*, one of the Deſcendants of *Zuzicar*, the Brother of *Zingis Chan*, who formerly reſided in the City of *Maſanderan*. *Muſa Chan* coming afterwards to join them, they went all three in ſearch of *Mahamet Chan*; but the *Sheich Hadſani Dſalagir*, coming to meet them with a powerful Army as far as a place called * *Jagarmruth*, entirely defeated them. *Muſa Chan* loſt his Life in this Battle, but *Tagai Timur* and *Sheich Aly* fled into the Country of *Choraſſan*. Togai Timur *proclaimed* Chan *at* Baſtan. *Joins* Muſa Chan. *Both defeated by* Mohammed Chan. Sheich

Another *Sheich Hadſani*, whom we ſhall at preſent name *Sheich Hadſani Chodſa*, and who commanded on the Frontiers of *Ruhm* in the time of *Abuſait Chan*, having had Intelligence of the unfortunate Succeſs of that Battle, gather'd in haſte a powerful Army, and took the Field againſt *Mahamet Chan* and the *Sheich Hadſani Dſalagir*. After ſome Rencounters of no moment, they came at length to a deciſive Battle near the Town of *Nacſivan*, and Fortune having declar'd in favour of *Sheich Hadſani Chodſa*, *Mahamet Chan* died in the Field of Hagani Choga *takes the Field.* Mohamed Chan *overthrown and ſlain.*

[* Jagarm Ruth: *I ſuppoſe a River.*]

Battle,

Battle, and *Sheich Hadſani Dſalagir*, was obliged to ſave himſelf in the City of *Sultanya*. Upon this occaſion *Sheich Hadſani Chodſa* conferr'd the Government of the City of *Tabris* on a Woman called *Satibica*, while he went in purſuit of his Enemies. *Sheich Hadſani Dſalagir* perceiving the conquering *Sheich* purſued him cloſe, and ſeeing no Likelihood of eſcaping him, reſolved to implore his Clemency and ſurrender himſelf at diſcretion.

Sheich Hadſani Chodſa returning afterwards to *Tabris*, *Satibica* deliver'd him the Keys of the City after ſhe had govern'd there a whole Year: and the *Sheich* to recompenſe her Fidelity marry'd her to a Lord called *Suleyman*, the Son of *Mahamet*, Son of *Sangu*, Son of *Jaſhmut*, Son of *Halaku Chan*.

Gehan Timur *proclaim'd* Chan *at* Bagdad.

Some time after the *Sheich Hadſani Dſalagir* having found means to eſcape out of the Hands of *Sheich Hadſani Chodſa*, fled to *Bagdat*, and cauſed to be proclaimed there in quality of *Chan*, *Dſahan Timur*, Son of *Alfran*, Son of *Kazeitu Chan*, Son of *Abka Chan*, Son of *Halaku Chan*: After which he went to try his Fortune a-new againſt the *Sheich Hadſani Chodſa*; but having been again beaten, he took Refuge in *Bagdat*; and believing he had reaſon to be diſſatisfy'd with *Dſahan Timur*, he depos'd him, and ſeized the ſupreme Authority himſelf.

Sheich Hagani Galagir *uſurps the Sovereignty.*

Sheich Hagani Choga *killed by his Wife.*

In the mean time the *Scheich Hadſani Chodſa* became every Day more formidable; but as he had an *Arabian* Wife who was great with one *Jacup Shah*, it happen'd one Day that the *Sheich Hadſani Chodſa*, having upon ſome Account or other cauſed the ſaid *Jacup Shah*

Shah to be arreſted, that Woman imagined it was in conſequence of his having come to the Knowledge of the criminal Commerce which ſhe carry'd on with that Man, and under this Apprehenſion ſhe took the Opportunity, while the *Sheich* ſlept ſoundly after hard Drinking, and cut his Throat. The *Sheich Hadſani Chodſa* was Son of *Timur Taſh*, Son of *Amir Zupani* of the Tribe of *Suldus*, who had been Regent during the Minority of *Abuſait Chan*. As powerful as this *Sheich* was, he never aſſumed the Title of *Chan*.

Nau Shirwan *made* Chan.

After his death his Brother *Malik Aſhraf* ſucceeded him in the Uſurpation of the ſupreme Power, and immediately conferr'd the Dignity of *Chan* upon one of the Deſcendants of *Halaku Chan*, called *Nau Shirvan*; but repenting ſoon after, he thruſt him out of the Throne again, to which he had advanced him, and ſeized it for himſelf: but in regard he led a very ſcandalous Life, many among the moſt conſiderable of his Subjects, and among others the Chief Juſtice, went to *Dzanibek Chan*, who reigned in the Country of *Daſht Kipzak*, and complained ſo movingly to him of the ſhameful Actions of *Malik Aſhraf*, that he thought himſelf obliged in Conſcience to march againſt him with an Army. *Malik Aſhraf* advancing to meet him with another Army almoſt equal to his, they came to a Battle in the Country of *Adirbeindſan*, near the City of *Chui*, and *Malik Aſhraf* having been defeated and killed upon that Occaſion, *Dzanibek Chan* ſeized all the Provinces which had been under his Subjection. This happen'd in the Year 756.

Depoſed, and Malek Aſhraf *uſurps the Dignity.*

Ganibek Chan *of* Kipſak *invades* Malik Aſhraf.

Kills him and ſeizes his Dominions.

An. Dom. 1355.

PART

PART VII.

Which contains the Hiſtory of *Zuzi Chan*, eldeſt Son of *Zingis Chan*, and of his Deſcendants who have reigned over the *Kipzaks*.

CHAP. I.

Of Zuzi Chan, *and of the Reign of his Son* Batu Sagin Chan.

Birth of Zuzi Chan.

Zingis Chan being on a time abſent, while *Borta-cuzin*, Mother of *Zuzi Chan* was with Child of him, the *Markatts* came and fell upon his Habitations; and after they had ruined every thing that came in their way, they carry'd *Borta-cuzin* with them: But in regard ſhe was Siſter-in-law of *Aunak Chan* of the *Caraits*, and that Prince was an intimate Friend of the *Chan* of the *Markatts*, he eaſily obtained her Liberty and ſent her back immediately to her Huſband, foraſmuch as *Aunak Chan* had always been in ſtrict Alliance with *Jeſſugi Bayadur Chan*, Father of *Zingis Chan*. *Borta-cuzin* having brought forth a Son on the Road, and having no Blankets to wrap her Child in, ſhe bethought herſelf of making a Paſte of Meal pretty thick, upon which

Wrapt in Paſte when born for want of Blankets.

which ſhe laid her Infant, to ſave it from being hurt by the Ground. *Zingis Chan* over-joyed at his Wife's return, and being happily deliver'd of a Son, cry'd out, God be thank'd you are come back with a *Zuzi*, which ſignifies in the *Mogull* Language *a Gueſt*. From that time forth that Child took the Name of *Zuzi*.

Zuzi's Death.

Zuzi Chan happening to die during his Father's Life-time in the Country of *Daſht Kipzak*, where he reigned, as we have related in the Life of *Zingis Chan*, that Prince was exceedingly afflicted at it, and ſent immediately his Brother *Belgatai Utezkim* into the Country of *Daſht Kipzak*, to cauſe *Batu*, Son of *Zuzi Chan* to be received there in quality of *Chan* in the Place of his Father. *Batu* being inform'd of the Arrival of *Belgatai*, went to meet him with his Brothers and his Children; and having employed three days in lamenting together the death of *Zuzi Chan*, he conducted him to the place of his uſual Reſidence, where *Belgatai* put him in poſſeſſion of the Throne of his Father; which was done with all the cuſtomary Rejoycings on the like Occaſions: But ſcarce were theſe Solemnities ended, when they received the News of the Death of *Zingis Chan*. Whereupon *Belgatai Utezkim* return'd immediately to *Carakum*, where *Zingis Chan* died, and *Batu Sagin Chan*, accompany'd by his Brothers, follow'd him thither immediately, having conferr'd the Regency of his Dominions during his Abſence on *Togai Timur* his youngeſt Brother, who was the only one of all the Sons of *Zuzi Chan*, who upon this Occaſion remained in the Country of the *Kipzaks*.

Batu ſucceeds as Chan of Kipzak.

Upon the Arrival of *Batu-ſagin Chan* and his Brothers at *Carakum*, they ſpent ſeveral days in lamenting together the Death of *Zingis Chan*;

Batu accompanies Ugaday into Kitay.

after

after which they aſſiſted at the general Aſſembly of all the Princes of the Houſe of *Zingis Chan*, and of all the great Officers of the Empire who were met to regulate the Succeſſion; and *Ugadai Chan* having been advanced to the Throne of the *Mogulls*, *Batu-ſagin Chan* and his five Brothers accompany'd that Prince in his Expedition into *Kitay*: At the return from which *Ugadai Chan*, pleaſed with the Conduct and Bravery he had obſerv'd in *Batu-ſagin Chan*, gave him a numerous Army to go and ſubdue the *Ureſſes*, the *Zerkaſs*, the *Bulgars*, and other neighbouring Nations, and cauſed him to be accompanied in that Expedition by his Son *Kajuk*, by *Mangu*, Son of *Taulai Chan*, and by *Baidar*, Son of *Zagatai Chan*.

His Expedition againſt the Ruſſians, Circaſſians, Bulgarians, *&c.*

Batu-ſagin Chan having taken the way to his Dominions with ſo fine an Army, his Brother *Togai Timur* who had the Regency of them in his Abſence, came to receive him with all the Magnificence imaginable, and feaſted him for three days very ſplendidly, with all the Princes in his Company. After which *Batu-ſagin Chan* gave in his Turn a great Feaſt, which laſted forty days; and at the end of all theſe Rejoycings he ſet forward on his March to the Enemies Countries. This Expedition had the Succeſs which every one knows, and *Batu-ſagin Chan* after he had filled all the Weſt with the Glory of the great Exploits which he atchieved upon that Occaſion, at length return'd happily into his own Country of *Daſht Kipzak*, where he died ſome time after in the Capital of the Country called *Coc-orda*.

Batu's Death.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of the Princes of the Poſterity of Zuzi Chan, *who have reigned over the* Kipzaks, *after the death of* Batu-Sagin Chan.

AFTER the death of *Batu-Sagin Chan*, *Burga* his Brother mounted the Throne of the Country of *Daſht Kipzak:* This Prince gave on that occaſion a very magnificent Feaſt to all his Vaſſal Lords, and diſtributed conſiderable Preſents among the principal of them. Nor did he forget to ſend ſome of an extraordinary richneſs to *Coplai Chan*, in order to get his conſent to the Choice which his Subjects had made of him for their *Chan* in the room of his deceaſed Brother; which he readily obtained. Burga Chan *ſucceeds* Batu.

Burga Chan reigned with much Glory and Juſtice, and was much dreaded by all his Neighbours. In the mean time it happen'd, that going one time to ſee *Coplai Chan*, he met upon the Road with ſeveral Merchants of *Great Bucharia* and falling into diſcourſe with ſome of them, particularly upon the Articles of the *Mahometan* Faith, he was ſo pierced with the Explanations which theſe Men gave him of it, that he reſolv'd off-hand to embrace that Religion; and having alſo in time brought over his youngeſt Brother *Togai Timur*, who accompany'd him in that Journey, he cauſed Publication to be made at his Return, that all his Subjects ſhould receive the *Mahometan* Worſhip; but he died before *Intends to turn Mohammedan.*

before he could put the laſt hand to ſo ſalutary a Work, after having reigned twenty five Years.

Mangu Timur Chan.

He had for his Succeſſor in the Throne of the *Kipzaks*, his Brother *Mengu Timur*, who was a Prince of much Courage and Conduct. This Prince after his Advancement to the Crown, gave the Property of a certain Tribe among the number of his Subjects called *Ak-orda*, to *Bayadur Chan*, Son of *Sheybani Chan*, and to *Oran Timur*, Son of *Togai Timur*, he gave the Towns of *Caffa* and *Crim*; after which he took the Field againſt the *Bulgars*, and having made conſiderable Conqueſts on that ſide, he return'd into his own Dominions after two Years Abſence, but he march'd quickly after towards the Country of *Iran*, where *Abka Chan* reigned at that time, who came to an amicable Agreement with him; and thoſe two Princes lived ever after in ſo good underſtanding together, that not a Year paſt without one ſending the other a Preſent of whatever was rare in his Country. This Friendſhip continued always the ſame while *Abka Chan* lived; but after the death of that Prince, *Achmat* Son of *Halaku Chan*, who had embraced *Mahometiſm*, having been raiſed to the Throne of the Country of *Iran*, *Argun* Son of *Abka Chan* ſlew him, and poſſeſſed himſelf of the Crown.

Conquers the Bulgars.

Sends an Army againſt Argun Chan *of* Perſia.

At this News *Mengu Timur Chan* ſent two of his Generals named *Tachai* and *Turkuthai* with 80000 Men towards the Frontiers of the Country of *Iran*. *Argun Chan* having got Intelligence of the March of the Troops of *Mengu Timur Chan*, immediately order'd a good Body of the Army to advance and meet the two Generals, under the Command of one of his beſt Officers called *Amir Tegatur*, and he followed in Perſon with all his Forces. Theſe two Armies coming to

to an Engagement in a place called *Carabach*, the Army of *Mengu Timur Chan* was defeated, which afflicted him ſo much that he died ſoon after. *Which is defeated.*

After his death *Tuda Mangu*, Son of *Batu-Sagin Chan*, aſcended the Throne of the *Kipzaks*, and as he over-burthen'd his Subjects with Taxes, *Tochtagu* Son of *Mengu Timur Chan* thought himſelf obliged to repreſent to him the injuſtice of that Conduct; but *Tuda Mangu Chan* took it ſo ill of him, that he was obliged to leave the Country; nevertheleſs he found the means to return thither not long after at the head of a powerful Army, no body being able to tell exactly from whence he had ſuch conſiderable Aſſiſtance, and having given Battle to *Tuda Mangu Chan*, this laſt loſt the Scepter with his Life in that Action, and *Tochtagu* got himſelf acknowledg'd *Chan* of the *Kipzaks*. That Prince reigned ſix Years with the univerſal Applauſe of his Subjects, and conquer'd a great number of neighbouring Cities; but Death having ſnatch'd him away in the midſt of his Conqueſts, he was bury'd in the City of *Sharifa-raizik* purſuant to his laſt Directions. Tuda Mangu Chan. Tochtagu Chan.

After his death *Usbeck Chan* his Son ſucceeded him in the Throne of *Daſht Kipzak*; and tho he was but thirteen Years old at his Advancement to the Throne, yet he reigned with much Prudence and Reſolution. He introduced the *Mahometan* Worſhip thro' all the Provinces of his Dominions, which procured him ſo much the Affections of his Subjects, that in order to give him publick Demonſtration of it, they all took the name of *Usbecks*, which they have conſtantly retained ever ſince; for before the Reign of *Usbeck Chan* they were never known under that Name. *Usbeck Chan* after Usbeck Chan *from whom the* Usbecks *are called.* *Introduced the* Mahomedan *Religion.*

that try'd his Fortune twice againſt *Abuſait Chan* of the Country of *Iran*, but he could never make any thing of it, and died at his return from the laſt Campaign which he made againſt that Prince.

Dzanibek Chan.

His Son *Dzanibek*, who ſucceeded him in the Throne of the *Kipzaks*, was alſo a zealous Protector of the *Mahometan* Worſhip, and got the Reputation of a very virtuous and devout Prince. He made the Town of *Sharifaraizik* the Place of his ordinary Reſidence, and continually apply'd himſelf to the Good of his Subjects. During his Reign *Malik Aſhraf*, Son of *Timur Taſh*, had ſeized the Throne of the Country of *Adirbeindſan*, and the neighbouring Provinces; but as he was a great Tyrant and led a moſt ſcandalous Life, Numbers of his Subjects left him and went over to *Dzanibek Chan*, and among the reſt a chief Man of the Law named *Mohoſudin*, who making it his buſineſs to explain the Law publickly in the *Metſhids*, took occaſion one day, when *Dzanibek Chan* with a great number of other Perſons of Quality aſſiſted at divine Service, to touch upon the ſcandalous Life of *Malik Aſhraf*; and addreſſing himſelf to the *Chan*, he threatned him, that in caſe he did not ſtir himſelf effectually to put an end to the infamous licentiouſneſs of that Tyrant, he and all his People who knew he was acquainted with it, would accuſe him before the Throne of God of all the Evil that might accrue thereby; which had ſuch an effect on the Mind of *Dzanibek Chan*, that aſſembling all his Forces without delay, he went in queſt of *Malik Aſhraf*, who having on that occaſion loſt the Battle with his Life, *Dzanibek Chan* ſeized on all the Provinces under his obedience, and divided among his Subjects all the Treaſure of that Uſurper,

Wars upon Malik Aſhraf Chan *of* Perſia.

Uſurper, which were found to be four hundred Camel Loads in Gold and in Jewels, without reckoning the other valuable Effects. After which having put the Government of thoſe Provinces into the Hands of his Son *Birdibek*, he return'd into his own Dominions, and was ſcarce arriv'd before he fell dangerouſly ſick; upon which he immediately diſpatch'd Couriers to his Son *Birdibek*, whom he had left in the Country of *Adirbeindſan*, to come and ſee him before he died: but perceiving afterwards that it would be impoſſible, conſidering the great diſtance of Places, for him to come time enough to find him ſtill alive, he injoined the Lords of his Court to acknowledge his Son for their Maſter after his Death, and having expir'd ſhortly after, he was bury'd in the Town of *Sharifarai-zik*, after he had reigned ſeven Years, which happen'd in the Year 758. *An. Dom.* 1356.

His Son, whom Affairs of importance ſtill detained in the Provinces where he was at the time of his Father's Death, at length arriv'd two Years after; and having ſpent three days in lamenting his Father's death, he cauſed himſelf to be publickly acknowledg'd in quality of *Chan*: after which he abandon'd himſelf intirely to Tyranny and a brutiſh Life; and foraſmuch as he reckon'd he had a long time to live, he put to death all his Relations, for fear any of them ſhould attempt to thruſt him out of the Throne which he poſſeſſed ſo unworthily. But his Debauches ſoon put an end to his Life, which happen'd in the Year 762: and as with *Birdibek Chan* the Poſterity of *Mengu Timur Chan* became extinct, the Scepter of the Countries of *Kipzak* was conferr'd on the other Deſcendants of *Zuzi Chan*. *Ann. Dom.* 1360.

Birdibek Chan.

Tyranny and Debauchery.

CHAP. III.

Of the Deſcendants of Togai Timur, *youngeſt Son of* Zuzi Chan, *who have reigned in the Country of* Kipzak.

Uruſs Chan.

AFTER the death of *Berdibek Chan*, *Uruſs Chan*, Son of *Badakull Oglan*, Son of *Chodſa*, Son of *Avas Timur*, Son of *Togai Timur*, youngeſt Son of *Zuzi Chan*, Son of *Zingis Chan*, ſeized the Scepter of the Country of the *Kipzaks*, and reigned for ſome Years very peaceably. But at length *Toktamiſh*, Son of *Tokul Chodſa Oglan*, Son of *Saritza*, Son of *Avas Timur*, Son of *Togai Timur*, Son of *Zuzi Chan*, attempted to thruſt him from the Throne; but his Troops having been beaten by *Uruſs Chan*, he was obliged to take Refuge with *Amir Timur* in the Country of *Ma-urenner*.

Defeats Tokta-miſh.

There was at the ſame time a Man of Diſtinction of the Tribe of the *Ak-Mungals*, called *Kutluk Kaba*, who had a Son named *Idigi Mangap*, and a Daughter whom *Amir Timur* gave in marriage to one of his Sons, and of this Marriage was afterwards born a Son, who was called *Timur Kutluk*. *Idigi Mangap* had put himſelf in the Service of *Toktamiſh*, and when the latter was obliged to ſave himſelf by Flight, after having been beaten by *Uruſs Chan*, and to ſeek ſhelter from *Amir Timur*, who then had his Reſidence at *Samarkant*, *Idigi Mangap* follow'd him a few days after with Tidings that they might eaſily ſurprize *Uruſs Chan* with all his Forces, becauſe he march'd at a great rate towards the Frontiers of the Country of *Ma-urenner*. Upon this Advice *Amir Timur* ſent *Toktamiſh* with a numerous Army to meet *Uruſs Chan*, and the two Armies coming to an Engagement,

Defeated and killed by Tokta-miſh.

gagement, that of *Uruſs Chan* was intirely defeated; and as this Prince loſt his Life in that Conflict, *Toktamiſh* found no Difficulty after that of ſeizing the Scepter of the *Kipzaks*, which happen'd in the Year 777. *An. Dom.* 1375.

When *Timur Kutluk* had arriv'd to Years of Underſtanding, he went to dwell in the Country of the *Kipzaks*, and *Idigi Mangap* put himſelf under his Protection, which greatly diſpleaſed *Toktamiſh Chan*; who having beſides ſome Suſpicion that *Timur Kutluk* ſought to ſupplant him, endeavour'd without Noiſe to get rid of ſo dangerous a Rival: But *Timur Kutluk* having ſmelt out the Deſign of *Toktamiſh Chan*, fled for Refuge to *Amir Timur*, where he was follow'd ſix Months after by *Idigi Mangap*. In the mean time *Amir Timur* made an Invaſion into the Country of *Iran* with all his Forces; whereupon *Toktamiſh Chan*, who had been informed that all the Country was unprovided with Troops, enter'd with a good Army into the Country of *Ma-urenner*, and having taken the City of *Samarkant*, he cauſed a great number of the Inhabitants to be put to the Sword, after which he had a mind to return into his Dominions; but *Amir Timur*, who on the News of the March of *Toktamiſh Chan* had return'd back, follow'd him with ſo much Diligence that he came up with him at length upon the Banks of the River *Atell*. *Toktamiſh Chan* finding there was no avoiding a Battle, gave it with all the Reſolution imaginable; but the good Fortune of *Amir Timur* having alſo this time prevailed over all the Conduct of *Toktamiſh Chan*, this laſt was obliged to ſave himſelf by Flight, after having loſt almoſt all his Army in this Engagement. After which *Amir Timur* return'd to *Samarkant*.

Toktamiſh Chan.

Toktamiſh Chan *invades* Mawaralnahr.

Takes Samarkand.

Is overthrown by Amir Timur.

Timur

Timur Kutluk, who was at this Battle in *Amir Timur*'s Army, propos'd to him after the Action, that having been obliged to abandon all his Subjects, that he might not be ſurpriz'd by *Toktamiſh Chan*, he judged it would not be amiſs to lay hold of that occaſion to go and aſſemble as many of his Subjects as he could find, and afterwards return and join him. *Amir Timur* having approv'd of that Deſign, *Timur Kutluk* went to look for his Subjects, and meeting with a great number of them upon the Banks of the River *Atell*, he prepared to bring them to *Samarkant*; but *Idigi Mangap* made him ſenſible that he was going to do a thing which would deprive him entirely of all his Subjects, inaſmuch as *Amir Timur* would have no more to do at his Arrival but to diſperſe thoſe Men among the Cities under his Juriſdiction, whereby he would be reduced wholly at his Diſcretion; that for this reaſon he would do much better to keep his People together, and go and ſettle himſelf with them in ſome convenient Place. *Timur Kutluk* approving this Council, quitted the Reſolution of bringing his Subjects into *Ma-urenner*, and went and fixt himſelf elſewhere; but we are ignorant of the Place which he choſe for that purpoſe.

Toktamiſh Chan * dying after that, left indeed eight Sons; but *Kavertzik*, Son of *Uruſs Chan*, ſeized the Scepter of the Country of the *Kipzaks*

Kaverzik Chan.

* Toktamiſh Chan *was a Prince of much Bravery and Conduct; he had frequent Quarrels with the* Ruſſians, *but he beat them ſeveral times, and reduced them to great Straits after he had taken the Towns of* Moſcow *and* Wolodimer *from the Czar* Demetrius Ivanowitz; *which happened in the Year* 1382.

after

after his death. Theſe are the Names of the eight Sons of *Toktamiſh Chan*, 1. *Dſalaludin*, 2. *Dſabarbirdi*, 3. *Kajuk*, 4. *Karimbirdi*, 5. *Iſkander*, 6. *Abuſait*, 7. *Chodſa*, 8. *Kadirbirdi*.

Barak Chan.

After the death of *Kavertzik Chan*, his Son *Barak* obtained the Throne of that Country; but after *Barak Chan*, *Machmat*, Son of *Hadſan Oglan*, Son of *Zabina*, Son of *Tolak Timur*, Son of *Saritza*, Son of *Avas Timur*, Son of *Togai Timur*, ſeized the Scepter, and had for his Succeſſor *Abuſait* ſurnamed *Dzanibek Chan* (the Son of *Barak Chan*) who left nine Sons, 1. *Irazi*, 2. *Mahamet*, 3. *Kaſim*, who is the ſame that gave Battle to *Mahamet Chan Sheibani*, in which the latter loſt his Life. 4. *Aitik*, 5. *Dſaniſh*, 6. *Camber*, 7. *Tamiſh*, 8. *Auſſak*, 9. *Zajik*. The *Usbeks* affirm that the *Chans* of *Turkeſtan* are deſcended from *Dſaniſh Sultan*, fifth Son of *Dzanibek Chan*.

Machmat Chan.

Dzanibek Chan.

Chans *of* Turkeſtan, *whence deſcended.*

Giaſudin Chan.

After the Death of *Dzanibek Chan*, *Giaſudin*, Son of *Timurtaſh*, Son of *Machmat Chan*, poſſeſſed himſelf of the Throne of this Country, and had his Son *Hadſi Garay Chan* for his Succeſſor. *Hadſi Garay Chan* left eight Sons; 1. *Daulatjar*, 2. *Nur Daulat Chan*, 3. *Haider Chan*, 4. *Kutluk Saman*, 5. *Kildiſh*, 6. *Mengli Garay Chan*, 7. *Jamgurzi*, 8. *Avas Timur*.

Hagi Geray Chan.

Empire of Kipzak *divided and ſubdued by the* Ruſſians.

After the death of *Hadſi Garay Chan*, his Sons divided among themſelves the Dominions of their Father; but their Deſcendants did not enjoy it long, for the *Uruſſes* ſeized of all the Country of *Kipzak* in the Year 961, and ſince that time we hear no more mention of the Deſcendants of *Hadſi Garay Chan*,

An. Dom. 1553.

Chans *of* Crim *deſcended from* Hagi Geray Chan.

Chan. Nevertheleſs it is certain, that the *Chans* of *Crim* are ſprung from the Poſterity of *Hadſi Garay Chan*; but as this Country is at a great diſtance from us, we know not from which of his eight Sons they deduce their Original.

PART

PART VIII.

Which contains the Hiſtory of *Sheybani Chan*, the Son of *Zuzi Chan*, and of his Deſcendants, who have reigned in the Countries of *Ma-urenner* and *Turan*.

CHAP. I.

Of the Life and Reign of Sheybani Chan.

Zuzi Chan had during the Life-time of his Father, form'd the Deſign of making War upon the *Zerkaſs*, *Baſhkirs*, *Uruſſes*, and other Nations bordering on thoſe People, and for that end had cauſed a prodigious quantity of Proviſions to be got together from all Parts of his Country: but Death preventing him, *Zingis Chan* reſolved that *Batu Sagin Chan*, Son of *Zuzi Chan*, ſhould undertake the Execution of the Deſign concerted by his Father; and the Death of *Zingis Chan* having this time alſo obſtructed it, *Ugadai Chan* after his Return from his Expedition into *Kitay*, would no longer defer the Execution of ſo noble an Enterprize. Wherefore he ſent *Batu Sagin Chan* into thoſe Parts with a numerous Army, who having taken many Cities belonging to the *Uruſſes*, arriv'd at laſt before the City of *Moſcow*, near which the *Uruſſes*, in Conjunction with their

The Expedition of Batu Sagin Chan.

Allies the *Nemetzs*, had intrenched themſelves *.

Sheybani Chan *defeats the* Ruſſians *before* Moſcow.

Batu Sagin Chan having try'd in vain for three Months to force them from their Intrenchments, reſolved at length at the Inſtances of his Brother *Sheybani*, who had accompany'd him in that Expedition, to add 6000 Men more to the Body which this laſt had under his Command. *Sheybani* having receiv'd this Reinforcement, began by lighting off his Horſe, and made all his Soldiers do the ſame. After which he went at Day-break to attack the Enemy behind, while his Brother *Batu Sagin Chan* charged them in front, which was ſo well executed, that how vigorous ſoever the Enemies Reſiſtance might be, they were obliged to betake

* *As this is the ſame Word which the* Ruſſians *uſe to ſignify the* Allemands [Germans] *it might have happened that the* Tatars *having taken ſome of the Allies of the* Ruſſians *Priſoners in the time of this Expedition of* Batu Chan *into* Ruſſia, *asked the* Ruſſians *what Nation thoſe People were of; and that theſe anſwered them they were* Nemetzki: *It may be theſe were really* Allemands *who came to the Aſſiſtance of the* Ruſſians, *or that thoſe People having heard ſay the* Allemands *were a very warlike Nation, meant to frighten the* Tatars *by ſo formidable a Name. Whereupon theſe laſt might have believed in good earneſt that this was the Name of that Nation.*

[*But if the* Tatars *were to be frighted by the Name of* Nemetz, *it ſhewed that they were acquainted with it before, and ſo that could not be the way they came by it. The* Arabs *call* Germany Nemſiah, *which differs very little from* Nemets; *but whether they had it from the* Tatars, *or the* Tatars *it from them, I cannot at preſent determine. Upon this occaſion it would be of uſe to know if the ſeveral Branches of* European Tatars *give the* Germans *that Name; for if they do, I ſhould be inclined to think it was a Name known long before the Expedition of* Batu, *to the* Tatars, *who have always had a Correſpondence with* Europe, *and from time to time ſwarmed into it, as compelled by the neceſſity of Want or Force*]

them-

themſelves to flight, with the Loſs of 70000 of their beſt Troops.

After this great Victory, *Batu Sagin Chan* having advanced a great way farther within the Enemies Country, took divers Cities and Provinces belonging to thoſe Nations, and at length returned into his hereditary Dominions, loaded with Riches and Glory. After which *Orda*, ſurnamed *Itzen*, eldeſt Son of *Zuzi Chan*, thinking himſelf in ſome manner obliged to reward the good Services of his Brother *Sheybani*, made him a Preſent of 15000 Families; but it is not known from what Nation or Tribe thoſe Families deriv'd their Original. *Batu Sagin Chan* likewiſe made great Preſents to *Sheybani*, and gave him all the Places conquer'd from the Allies of the *Uruſſes*, with as many of his Subjects of the Tribes of the *Kuriſs*, *Naimanns*, *Carliks* and *Vigurs*, as were neceſſary for the Guard of thoſe Towns, and the Support of his Court. But on condition that he himſelf ſhould ſettle in his Neighbourhood in the Lands which were ſituate between the Provinces of his Dominions, and the Lands of *Orda-Itzen*; and that to this end, he ſhould paſs the Summer about the Mountains of *Arall*, and the River *Jaigik*, all that Country being very agreeable in that Seaſon; and that in the Winter he ſhould reſide about * *Carakum*, *Arakum*, and towards the Banks of the Rivers *Sirr* and *Sareſu*, which are Countries more to the South. Whereupon *Sheybani Chan* ſent one of his Sons, whoſe Name is not known, with ſeveral uſeful Officers and good Troops to poſſeſs the *Uruſſian* and *Nemetzian* Cities, which had been made a Preſent to him; and the ſaid Son of *Sheybani*

Preſents from Orda and Batu to Sheybani.

Tribes given by Batu Chan to Sheybani Chan.

[* *Not the* Carakum, p. 151. *which is in the Eaſt, but ſome deſart of black Sand, as* Carakum *ſignifies, in the Weſt.*]

Chan

Chan, having eſtabliſhed himſelf in thoſe Provinces, dwelt there from that time forward, and his Deſcendants after him; but becauſe of the great Diſtance of the Places, I cannot preciſely tell whereabouts it was: Nevertheleſs 'tis reported, that the *Chans* of the *Nemetzs* are ſprung from that Branch of the Deſcendants of *Sheybani Chan* *.

CHAP. II.

Of the Deſcendants of Sheybani Chan, *down to* Jadigar Chan.

Sheybani Chan dying in the afore-mention'd Countries which his Brother *Batu Sagin Chan* had granted to him about the Rivers of *Jaigig* and *Sirr*, left twelve Sons, of which the Names are as follows; 1. *Bainal*, 2. *Bayadur*, 3. *Carak*, 4. *Balka*, 5. *Zirik*, 6. *Mergan*, 7. *Kurtga*, 8. *Ajazi*, 9. *Sagilgan*, 10. *Bajandſar*, 11. *Madſar*, 12. *Conzi*: But *Bayadur* his ſecond Son inherited the Dominions of his Father after his Death.

Bayadur Chan.

Zuzi Buga Chan.

Bayadur Chan had two Sons, the eldeſt of which was called *Zuzi-buga*, and the youngeſt *Kutleg-buga*. *Zuzi-buga* reigned after the death of his Father, and had four Sons; 1. *Badakull*,

* *Our Author has been miſinformed upon this Head; for we have too certain a Knowledge of the* Origin *and Succeſſion of the ſovereign Houſes of* Allemain [Germany] *to be in any doubt thereupon; but I don't ſay the ſame of the Succeſſion of the Kings of* Hungary, *and that of the great Dukes of* Lithuania, *where there may have been a mixture of the* Tatar *Blood, without our being informed of it.*

2. *Bik*

2. *Bik Timur*, 3. *Jancazar*, 4. *Jeſſu-buga-Badakull* ſucceeded his Father, and had only one Son named *Mengu Timur*; but becauſe he was full of Wit and Courage, he was never called other than *Kutluk Mengu Timur*. *Mengu Timur Chan* had ſix Sons; 1. *Ilſak*, 2. *Djanta*, 3. *Fulat*, 4. *Siuntz*, 5. *Temur-bunga*, 6. *Bekkondi*. Badakull Chan. Mengu Timur Chan.

'Tis from the Poſterity of this laſt that *Kutzium Chan*, who was the laſt of the Deſcendants of *Sheybani Chan*, who reigned in the Country of *Turan*, [*Tura*] deriv'd his Origin. He became blind in his old Age, after having reigned forty Years in that Country, and the *Uruſſes* having at that time invaded his Dominions, conſtrained him in the Year 1003 to ſave himſelf by Flight; and ſince that time the greateſt part of the Country of *Turan* [*Tura*] has been poſſeſſed by the *Uruſſes*. *Kutzium Chan* was the Son of *Murtaſa Chan*, Son of *Mamudak Chan*, Son of *Hadſim Mahomet Chan*, Son of *Aly Oglan*, Son of the aforeſaid *Bekkondi*, the Son of *Mengu Timur Chan*. After he had been driven out of his Dominions by the *Uruſſes*, he took Refuge among the *Mankatts**, where at length he died. Kutzium Chan of Tura. *An. Dom.* 1594. Kutzium Chan's Pedigree. * *or* Cara Kalpakks.

Mengu Timur Chan dying, *Fulat* his third Son obtained the Poſſeſſion of his Father's Dominions, and had two Sons, named *Daulat Sheich Oglan*, and *Arab Shah*, who divided between them their Father's Dominions after his deceaſe, and dwelt in Summer towards the Banks of the River *Jaigik*, and in Winter about the River *Sirr*. Fulat Chan. Daulat Sheich Oglan.

Daulat Sheich Oglan, had a Son called *Abulgair Chan*, who made himſelf formidable to all his Neighbours. He had 11 Sons, of which the eldeſt was called *Shabadath Sultan*, who had Shabadacht Sultan.

* [*In all likelihood it ought to be* Tura, *for Reaſons given in the Second Part.*]

two Sons; the eldeſt called *Mahamet*, ſurnamed *Shabacht*, of whom we ſhall ſpeak hereafter; and the youngeſt, *Mahamet Sultan*, who had a Son called *Obeit Chan*, who reigned in *Great Bucharia*. The ſecond Son of the aforenamed *Abulgair Chan*, was called *Chodſa Mahomet*; but the *Usbeks* named him *Chodſa Amtintak*, becauſe he was exceeding fooliſh. His Son *Dzanibek* was at leaſt as fooliſh as his Father, and the Son of *Dzanibek*, called *Iskander Chan*, was no leſs ſo than his Father and Grandfather; but he was at the ſame time very devout, and made Hunting and Hawking his only Employment. His Son was *Abdulla Chan*, whoſe Son *Abdullmomin Chan*, was the laſt of that Branch of the Deſcendants of *Sheybani Chan*. We ſhall have occaſion to ſpeak more particularly in the following Book of theſe two laſt Princes, who reigned ſince in *Great Bucharia*.

Obeit Chan *of* Great Bucharia.

Iskander Chan.

Abdulla Chan.

Abdulmumin Chan.

Arab Schah, youngeſt Brother of *Daulat Sheich Oglan*, and Son of *Fulat*, dying, his Son *Hadſi Taulai* ſucceeded him, and had his Son *Timur Sheich* for his Succeſſor. *Timur Sheich Chan* was a Prince of great hopes, but he lived but a ſhort while; for the *Callmaks*, to the number of 2000 Men, having made an Incurſion into his Lands, ruined many Habitations, and carry'd great numbers of his Subjects into ſlavery. Upon advice of this *Timur Sheich Chan* follow'd them with ſo few of his Men, that having overtaken and attack'd the *Callmaks*, with a Courage worthy a better Deſtiny, he there loſt his Life, with all his Followers.

Hagi Taulai. Timur Sheich Chan.

Invaded and killed by the Callmaks.

In regard he died in the Flower of his Age without leaving Heirs behind him, Numbers of his Subjects retired towards the other Princes; inſomuch that it happen'd in the end, that the Widow of the *Chan*, who was with Child without

Leaves his Widow with Child.

out any body knowing of it, had none left with her but the *Vigurs* only; who ſeeing that all the other Subjects of the deceaſed *Chan* were gone, ſome one way, ſome another, came alſo to take their leave of the Widow of the *Chan*; aſſuring her however, that if there could be found ~~any~~ Slave of their deceaſed Maſter who was with Child by him, they would not depart. Whereupon the Widow of the *Chan* having proteſted that ſhe her ſelf was three Months gone, the *Vigurs* agreed among themſelves not to leave her in that Condition. At this News the *Naimanns*, without returning or putting themſelves under the Subjection of any other Prince, reſolved to wait in the Place where they then were, for the Delivery of the Widow of their deceaſed *Chan*, that they might have it in their Power to take their Meaſures according as ſhe ſhould bring forth a Son or a Daughter. *All but the Vigurs deſert the Chan's Widow.*

In the mean time the Widow of *Timur Sheich Chan* having been brought to Bed of a Son, who was called *Jadigar*, the *Vigurs* diſpatch'd a Courier immediately to the *Naimanns* with that News; which gave ſo much Joy to theſe laſt, that having made the Courier a Preſent of a good black Horſe, they all return'd to put themſelves under the Obedience of their new Maſter. At their Return, the *Vigurs* having given them the Left hand, in token of the Joy they conceived at ſeeing them return and join them again, that Complaiſance has ever ſince paſſed into a Cuſtom between thoſe two Tribes; inſomuch that at preſent, every time the *Naimanns* meet the *Vigurs*, the firſt always take the Left-hand from the laſt. Thoſe two Tribes afterwards preſerv'd an inviolable Fidelity towards their young Prince. *Jadigar Chan born.* *The Naimanns and other Tribes return.* *Naimanns take the left hand of the Vigurs, and why.*

CHAP. III.

Of Burga Sultan, *Son of* Jadigar Chan.

Jadigar Chan had four Sons; the firſt was named *Burga Sultan*, the ſecond *Abulak*, the third *Amunak*, and the fourth *Abak*. *Burga Sultan*, the eldeſt of theſe four Brothers, was a Prince of much Courage; his Breaſt was not like that of other Men, inaſmuch as it was form'd of one ſingle broad Bone. He lived in the time of *Abulgair Chan*, Son of *Daulat Sheich Oglan*, eldeſt Brother of *Arab Shah*; but *Abulgair Chan* was much older than he.

Revolution in Ma-war-al-nahr.

There was at that time in the Country of *Ma-urenner*, a Prince of the Poſterity of *Amir Timur*, called *Abuſait Mirſa*; who after he had ſlain another Prince of the ſame Family, called *Abdullatif Mirſa*, overrun the whole Country, and had conſtrained his Son *Mirſa Mahamet Zuki* to fly to *Abulgair Chan* for Refuge, who received him very well, in conſideration that his Wife was paternal Aunt of *Mirſa Mahamet Zuki*. Some time after his Arrival at the Court of *Abulgair Chan*, the News was ſpread abroad that *Abuſaii Mirſa* had march'd with all his Forces towards the Province of *Choraſſan*, and that from thence he had paſſed forward into the Country of *Maſanderan*, after having intruſted the Government of *Ma-urenner* to a certain Lord of the Tribe of the *Arlats*, called *Amir Maſiet*.

Upon this News, *Mirſa Mahamet Zuki*, unwilling to let ſlip ſo favourable an Opportunity without trying to benefit by it, preſs'd *Abulgair* ſo earneſtly to aſſiſt him with Troops on this occaſion,

occaſion, that the *Chan* ſuffering himſelf at length to be overcome by his Intreaties, ſent for *Burga Sultan*, in whom he had great Confidence, and deſir'd him to take on him the Command of his Troops in this Expedition. *Burga Sultan* having accepted the Propoſal of *Abulgair Chan*, this Prince gave him an Army of 30000 Men; at the Head of which he and *Mirſa Mahamet Zuki* march'd towards the Town of *Taſhkant*, which opened its Gates without making the leaſt Reſiſtance. From thence they proceeded to the Town of *Shahirochoya*, which they alſo took in a ſhort time; after which they paſſed the River *Sirr*, and turn'd towards *Samarkant*.

Taſhkant *under the* Chans *of* Ma-war-al-nahr.

Shahrokya.

At the News of their Approach, the Governor of this City having taken the Field with what Troops he was able to get together, went to meet them, and offer'd them Battle. *Burga Sultan* and *Mirſa Mahamet Zuki*, who burnt with Deſire to gain by the Abſence of *Abuſait Mirſa*, took care not to refuſe him. On this Occaſion *Burga Sultan* put himſelf at the head of the left Wing of the Army, one of the Generals of *Abulgair Chan*, named *Kiſhkan Oglan*, commanded the Right, and *Mirſa Mahamet Zuki* placed himſelf in the Center; and in this Diſpoſition they charged the Troops of *Abuſait Mirſa* ſo briſkly, that they entirely defeated them, and conſtrained *Amir Maſiet* to retreat back into the City of *Samarkant*; from whence he immediately ſent a Courier into the Country of *Maſanderan* to inform *Abuſait Mirſa* of the bad Poſture of his Affairs.

Samarkant.

Ma-war-al-nahr *overrun by the* Usbeks.

At ſo unexpected a piece of News, *Abuſait Mirſa* immediately drew together all his Forces and marched towards *Great Bucharia*. In the mean while *Burga Sultan*, and *Mirſa Ma-*

hamet Zuki, having turned aſide from the Road to *Samarkant*, had taken all the Towns of the Countries of *Cuzin*, *Carmina*, and of *Ma-urenner*, except the Cities of *Samarkant* and *Bucharа*, which they durſt not attempt. Underſtanding afterwards that *Abuſait Mirſa* advanced towards *Balck*, *Burga Sultan* thought it adviſable, that ſince they were Maſters of the Country of *Taſhkant*, *Turkeſtan* and *Ma-urenner*, and that they might depend upon the Affections of the Inhabitants of the Country, they ought by all means to avoid coming to a Battle with *Abuſait Mirſa*; and that it was neceſſary for that end to take Poſſeſſion of the Banks of the River *Amu*, in order to diſpute with him the Paſſage of it, which would terribly embarraſs the Enemy, and oblige *Abuſait Mirſa* to expoſe his whole Army to almoſt a ſure Defeat, in caſe he ſhould attempt to paſs the River in their Preſence. But the Lords of the Country who ſided with *Mirſa Mahamet Zuki*, having been of opinion that it was better for them to repaſs the River *Sirr*, and get into the Town of *Shahirokoya*, he took this laſt Advice in ſpite of all the Oppoſition of *Burga Sultan*; which having ſpread a Fear thro' their Troops, a great number of their Soldiers left the Army to go over to *Abuſait Mirſa*. *Burga Sultan* ſeeing the bad Conſequences of the Advice which had prevailed over the good Council he had given, was troubled at it, and purſuing after the Deſerters, put to the Sword as many of them as fell into his hands; and having diſtributed their Cattle among the reſt of his Troops, return'd into his own Dominions: But *Mirſa Mahamet Zuki* went with his Followers, and ſhut himſelf up in the Town of *Shahirokoya*.

Abuſait

Abuſait Mirſa having had Intelligence of this Buſineſs, went immediately and laid Siege to this City. *Mirſa Mahamet Zuki* defended himſelf at firſt with much Bravery; but not ſeeing any Appearance of Succours, he was obliged to capitulate after four Months Siege, upon the Aſſurances which *Abuſait Mirſa* gave him by one named *Chodſaſh Obeidi* of *Samarkant*, that he ſhould be well uſed. This happen'd in the Year *860. Abuſait Mirſa recovers Ma-war-al-nahr. An. Dom. 1455.*

Some time after *Chodſaſh Mirſa*, and *Muſabi*, two neighbouring Lords in the Dominions of *Jadigar Chan*, had ſome Quarrel between themſelves; which bringing them to Blows, *Muſabi* was beaten and obliged to fly to *Burga Sultan*, who had indeed a great kindneſs for him; but in regard his Father *Jadigar* was not as yet in poſſeſſion of his Sovereignty, altho' his Subjects had acknowledged him for their *Chan*, he judged it would be impoſſible for him to ſtir effectually for *Muſabi* till that Affair was ſettled. Wherefore having aſſembled the moſt conſiderable of his Father's Subjects, he managed them ſo well that they unanimouſly conferr'd the ſovereign Power upon *Jadigar*, and ſolemnly proclaimed him their reigning *Chan*. After which *Burga Sultan* raiſed Troops, and took the Field with *Muſabi* againſt *Chodſaſh Mirſa*; but as it was in the beginning of Winter, they were no ſooner upon their March, than there fell ſo great a quantity of Snow, that all the Roads were become impaſſible; inſomuch that having eaten up all their Proviſions, and finding nothing in the Plains for their Horſes to ſubſiſt on, the principal Officers of the Army were of opinion that the beſt Courſe they could take on this occaſion was to return in good time; but *Burga Sultan* not enduring to hear of turning back, *Jadigar proclaimed Chan.*

* [*Rather in* 865, *or* 867. *See* D'Herbelot, *p.* 36 *and* 37.]

continued his March forwards, notwithſtanding the Condition of his Army grew worſe and worſe every Day the farther they went; *Muſabi* himſelf went to him at laſt, and conjured him not to deſtroy himſelf and ſo many brave Men for ſake of him, becauſe it was not abandoning the Enterprize to put it off till next Spring. But *Burga Sultan* ſtuck to his Reſolution, and maugre all that *Muſabi* and his Officers could urge to him, they could get no more from him than a Promiſe, that he would turn back, in caſe after two days march they heard no News of the Enemy.

Having afterwards continued their March, they were obliged to paſs a high Mountain, from the top of which *Burga Sultan* having diſcover'd Troops marching in the Valleys which were on the other ſide of that Mountain, he made his Army halt, and ſent two Spies to get Intelligence, who ſoon return'd to carry him the News that it was the whole Army of *Chodſaſh Mirſa* which he ſaw, and that they came to know it by a Priſoner of the Enemy, whom at the ſame time they preſented before him. Upon which *Burga Sultan* immediately advancing with his Troops, attackt the Enemy ſo briſkly, that he intirely defeated them. *Chodſaſh Mirſa* having been kill'd in this Action, with a great number of his Men, all the reſt of his Army were either diſperſed or taken Priſoners, and the Daughter of *Chodſaſh Mirſa*, called *Malai Chanſada*, being found among the Captives, *Burga Sultan* marry'd her. After this Victory he took up his Winter Quarters thereabouts, and the Spring following return'd into his own Dominions.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Death of Abulgair Chan, *and alſo of* Burga Sultan.

IN the mean while *Abulgair Chan* was become ſo formidable to all the Princes his Neighbours, that they concluded they had reaſon to take Umbrage at his Power, and to join altogether againſt him. In conſequence of which they declar'd War againſt that Prince, and Fortune having decided in favour of the greater Number, they put to death *Abulgair Chan*, with ſome of his Children who had fallen into their hands; which obliged the reſt of his Children to ſave themſelves by Flight. *Abulgair Chan grows formidable.* *Slain.*

On this occaſion *Burga Sultan* being willing to fiſh in troubled Water, appropriated to himſelf ſome Lands and Subjects belonging to the Domains of *Abulgair Chan*, notwithſtanding the great Friendſhip which had always ſubſiſted between them, and that Action coſt him his Life; for ſome Years after *Shabacht Sultan*, Grandſon of *Abulgair Chan*, returning into the Dominions of his Grandfather, all the antient Subjects of that Prince came and ſubmitted themſelves to him. *Shabacht Sultan* having thus re-enter'd into Poſſeſſion of his Patrimony, did not in any wiſe ſeem to call to mind the Reaſons which he had to complain of *Burga Sultan*, and always lived in good Underſtanding with him, diſſembling his Reſentment, perſuaded as he was, that Time would not fail to furniſh him with ſome proper Opportunity to be revenged of him. Burga Sultan *ſeizes ſome of the Lands of* Abulgair Chan. Shabacht Sultan *returns.* *Conceals his Reſentment againſt* Burga Sultan.

At

Shabacht *ſurprizes* Burga Sultan *in his Camp.*

At length one day that *Burga Sultan* had fixt his Winters Camp pretty near his own, towards the Banks of the River *Sirr*, *Shabacht Sultan* gave Orders to a good Number of his People to attend him, in order to accompany him next day at a great Hunting Match: but marching all of a ſudden about Midnight, he turn'd towards the Camp of *Burga Sultan*, and declar'd on the way, to his Soldiers, that he was going to attack that Prince, expreſly commanding them not to fall to plundering when they enter'd the Camp of *Burga Sultan*; but to endeavour above all things, to ſecure the Perſon of that Prince. Having at length arriv'd at the Camp of *Burga Sultan*, by Day-break, he preſſed forwards directly to his Tents, and cauſed them to be ſearch'd thoroughly for him, but he could not be found; notwithſtanding his People all affirm'd, that he was there the very Moment before the Arrival of *Shabacht Sultan*; but the truth was, that *Burga Sultan* hearing the Noiſe of the Troops which advanced towards his Tents, jumped out of Bed, where he was then actually lying, and wrapping himſelf naked as he was in a Robe of Zibelines which was at hand, had gone out of the Tent on the ſide oppoſite to that by which the Soldiers of *Shabacht Sultan* at the ſame time had enter'd; having afterwards reach'd a great Pond which was a little way from his Camp, he hid himſelf among the Weeds, which in great quantities cover'd the ſides of the Pond; and on that occaſion he had the ill luck to wound himſelf ſo deeply in the Foot, that he had much ado to ſtop the Blood.

Burga Sultan *hides himſelf in a Pond.*

One perſuades Burga Sultan.

In the mean time *Shabacht Sultan* having detach'd ſome of his Men to purſue thoſe who had eſcaped, they took among others a Man of Diſtinction of the Tribe of the *Vigurs*, called *Munga*;

Munga; and having inquired of him, who he was, he anſwer'd that he was *Burga Sultan* whom they ſought after. Upon this Reply, they brought him immediately before their Maſter, concluding it was actually *Burga Sultan* whom they had taken; but *Shabacht Sultan* having quickly perceived the Deceit, was curious to know the Reaſon why that Man had taken the Name of his Maſter; and having examined him thereupon himſelf, he made anſwer, "I "have ſo many Obligations to *Burga Sultan*, "that I think I ought to riſk any thing on this "occaſion to deliver him out of Danger; not "doubting but as ſoon as your Men ſhould "believe they had found that Prince, they "would all return to the Camp, which might "give him an Opportunity of making himſelf "ſecure in caſe he was not ſo already." This Anſwer exceedingly pleaſed *Shabacht Sultan*, and gave him a high Idea of the Virtue of that Man. Nevertheleſs he did not fail to ſend Men to ſearch over again for *Burga Sultan*; and as it had ſnow'd that Night, ſome of thoſe Men happen'd to obſerve the Tracts of a Man who had gone bare-foot, and having conſtantly follow'd thoſe Tracts, they found at length Drops of Blood, which brought them to the Place where he lay hid among the Reeds. Whereupon they immediately gave Advice of their Seizure to *Shabacht Sultan*; who after being convinced by his own Eyes that they were not deceived a ſecond time, commanded that he ſhould be immediately put to death, and ſeized of all his Subject, which happen'd in the Year 886. *An. Dom.* 1481.

Burga Sultan taken and ſlain.

Chodſa Mahamet Sultan, the Son of *Abulgair Chan*, who had accompany'd his Nephew in this Expedition, eſpouſed the Widow of *Burga Sultan*, Daughter of the afore-mentioned *Chodſaſh Mirſa*,

ſa, called *Malai Chanſada*. This is the ſame of whom we have obſerv'd above, that he was ſo fooliſh, that they had given him the Name of *Chodſa Amtintak*; and tho all the World knew that the Widow of *Burga Sultan* was with Child at the Death of her Huſband, yet he was willing to have it thought that the Boy which ſhe was at length deliver'd of, and who was called *Dzanibek*, was his Son. *Dzanibek* took at leaſt this from *Chodſa Mahamet Sultan*, that he was as fooliſh as he, and his Son *Iskander* was never a whit the wiſer; but *Abdulla Chan*, the Son of *Iskander*, and *Abdulmomin*, the Son of *Abdulla Chan*, were both Men of good Parts.

PART

PART IX.

Which contains the Hiſtory of the Deſcendants of *Sheybani Chan*, who have reigned in the Country of *Charaſs'm*.

CHAP. I.

Of Ilbars Chan, *and* Bilbars Sultan, *who were the firſt Princes of the Deſcendants of* Sheybani Chan, *who reigned in the Country of* Charaſs'm.

Burga Sultan was the Son of *Jadigar Chan*, the Son of *Timur Sheich Chan*, the Son of *Hadſi Taulai*, the Son of *Arabſhah*, the Son of *Fulat*, the Son of *Mengu Timur Chan*, the Son of *Badakall*, the Son of *Zuzi Buga*, the Son of *Bayadur Chan*, the Son of *Sheybani Chan*. He left at his Death two Sons, the firſt called *Ilbars*, and the ſecond *Bilbars*; the latter was alſo called *Bilicatz*, becauſe in his Youth he had ſo ſevere a Fit of Sickneſs, that he loſt the uſe of his Feet ever after; which is called *Bilicatz* in the *Mogull Language*. Theſe two Brothers were very brave, and lived in the Lands belonging to their Father's Dominions as private Men. Burga Sultan's Genealogy.

In

Ma-war-al-nahr *ſubdued by* Shabacht.

In the mean time, *Shabacht Sultan* having conſiderably augmented his Forces by a long Train of Victories over all the neighbouring Princes, enter'd with a numerous Army into the Country of *Ma-urenner*, and made himſelf Maſter of it, after having driven from thence the *Deſcendants* of *Amir Timur*; but the Children of *Burga Sultan* continued where they were *.

Choraſan *conquered by* Shabacht.

Much about the ſame time that *Shabacht Sultan* conquer'd *Ma-urenner*, *Sultan Huſſain Mirſa*, who was likewiſe deſcended from the Poſterity of *Amir Timur*, reigned in the Country of *Choraſſan*; but happening to die ſome Years after this Event, *Shabacht Sultan* enter'd his Dominions with a powerful Army, and having conquer'd the beſt part of them, cauſed all to be ſlain of the Family of *Sultan Huſſain Mirſa* that fell into his hands; inſomuch that as numerous as that Family had been but a little while before, ſcarce two or three of them eſcaped the hands of *Shabacht Sultan*; and as the Town of *Urgens* had in like manner been under the Dominion of *Sultan Huſſain Mirſa*, *Shabacht Sultan* did not fail to go thither alſo, and eſtabliſh there another Governor after he had taken it.

Urgens *Firſt poſſeſſed by the* Uzbeks.

Revolution. Shah Iſmael.

Five or ſix years after this ſecond Revolution, *Shah Iſmael* of *Perſia* having enter'd at the Head of a numerous Army into thoſe Provinces, *Shabacht Sultan* went and gave him Battle near the Town of *Meru*; but ſo unfortunately for himſelf, that he there loſt his Life, together with the greateſt part of his Army. The Governor who commanded at *Urgens* for *Shabacht*

[* Mirſa Babor, *after driven thence ſettled in* India, *and was the firſt* Mogull *that reigned there.*]

Sultan,

Sultan, hearing of this Misfortune, quitted the Town immediately, and fled elſewhere *.

* *After the* Perſians, *in conjunction with the Oriental* Turkmanns, *had driven the Deſcendants of* Tamerlan *out of* Perſia, *immediately after the Death of that Conqueror; under the Conduct of* Cara Machmat, Perſia *fell into horrible Confuſion, which continued till* Uſſum Caſſan [Uzun Haſſan] *at length obtained the Throne, and eſtabliſhed the Monarchy of* Perſia *in its former luſtre: but after his Death, which happen'd in the Year* 1484, [1478] *that Kingdom relapſed into the ſame Diſorder, which ceaſed not till towards the beginning of the* 16*th Age, when* Shah Iſmael *poſſeſſed himſelf of the Monarchy of* Perſia.

Shah Iſmael *was Grandſon by his Mother to* Uſſum Caſſan, [Uzun Haſſan] *King of* Perſia, *and by his Father, Grandſon of one of the Grandſons of* Sheich Sefi, *who lived in Reputation of great Sanctity in the Town of* Ardevil, *in the Time of* Tamerlan, [Amir Timur] *and pretended to be deſcended in a right Line from* Ali, *Son-in-Law to* Mahomet; *'tis for that reaſon that all his Deſcendants took the Quality of* Sheich, *down to* Shah Iſmael; *who was the laſt of that Family which bore that Title. 'Tis true, his Father* Sheich Aidir, *who was great great Grandſon of* Sheich Sefi, *had before attempted to ſeize the Crown of* Perſia, *as being Son-in-Law to* Uſſum Caſſan; *but he loſt his Life on that Occaſion, and left at his Death his Son* Sheich Iſmael *ſo young, that all that he was able to do for himſelf in ſuch bad Circumſtances, was to eſcape into the Province of* Kilan, *to an old Friend of his Father's, who put him in a way afterwards of being followed by great numbers of People, and of making himſelf at laſt Maſter of all* Perſia, *which happened about the Year* 1502. *After which he exchanged the Title of* Sheich, *for that of* Shah, *and his Deſcendants have ever ſince preſerved that Title with much care.*

Shah Iſmael *died in the City of* Caſwin *in the Year* 1525, *aged* 45 *Years, and his Corps was laid in the Tomb of* Sheich Sefi, *his great great Grandfather at* Ardevil, *where moſt of the Kings of* Perſia *of his Race have ſince choſen to be interred. All the Kings who have reigned in* Perſia *ſince* Shah Iſmael, *have been of the Family of the* Sofi's, *and of the Poſterity of that Prince.*

The preſent King of Perſia *is called* Shah Tamas II. *and by the Courſe of Affairs in thoſe Parts, he will probably be the laſt King of* Perſia, *of the Houſe of the* Sofi's.

Shah

Chowarazm *ſubject to* Perſia.

Shah Iſmael having conquer'd all the Towns of the Country of *Choraſſan*, eſtabliſh'd his Reſidence in thoſe Provinces, and ſent three of his Officers into the Country of *Charaſs'm*, giving to one of them the Government of the Towns of *Chajuk* and *Haſſaraſſap*; to another the Government of the City of *Urgens*, and to the third that of the Town of *Vaſir*. The Governors of the Towns of *Urgens* and *Vaſir* were two Brothers, *Arabs* by Extraction; one of which, who had the Government of the Town of *Urgens*, was called *Subhanculi*, and the other *Rachmanculi*. *Rachmanculi*, to whom the Government of *Vaſir* had fallen, upon his Arrival in that Town gave a magnificent Feaſt to all the principal Inhabitants thereof, and made them handſome Preſents on that Occaſion. The Cady of the Town called *Umar*, who was a Man of much Conduct and exemplary Life, was the only one who abſented himſelf from that Entertainment, and diſpenſed alſo with going to ſee the new Governor under pretence of an Indiſpoſition which obliged him to keep his Bed: But the Day after that Feaſt, he ſent for five or ſix of the principal of thoſe who had been there deſiring to ſpeak with them; and having complimented them on the Favours which the new Governor did them, he added, that after accepting his Preſents, he did not doubt but they were diſpoſed to accept of his Religion: at which they appearing much ſurprized, he aſked them if they were ignorant what Religion the *Perſians* were of? Whereupon they anſwer'd him, they knew not what he meant by his new Religion, ſeeing the *Perſians* were of the ſame Religion with themſelves, and that all the Governors which came among them till that time from *Choraſſan*, had been of their own Profeſ-

Policy of the Cady Umar.

Profeſſion. Then the Cady inform'd them that it was about thirteen Years ſince *Shah Iſmael* had chang'd the Religion, and introduced into his Dominions Opinions which ought to create Horror in every faithful *Mahometan*; that it was plainly becauſe he had ſo few Troops in the City, that the Governor concealed his Religion as yet; but that they might take it for granted he would not diſſemble when he ſhould be better ſupported; that he would begin with them as the moſt conſiderable among the Inhabitants of the Town, to introduce the Changes in Religion, which without doubt he intended; to the end that by their Example the common People might the more eaſily be drawn in to give their Conſent: That for his part, he thought it his Duty to warn them of it, to the end they ſhould take heed what they did; conſidering the imminent Danger to which Religion was expoſed on that Occaſion.

His Speech to the principal Inhabitants of Vaſir.

Two years after, the principal Inhabitants of the Town of *Vaſir*, went to the Country of *Bakirgan* to find a Man of their Religion of the Tribe of *Sagidatta*, who had a very extraordinary Reputation for Probity and Virtue, and propos'd to him their Reſolution to proclaim him *Chan*, and cut the Throats of the *Perſians* who were in Gariſon in their City. But that holy Man, called *Haiſamudin Catal*, refuſed to accept of thoſe Offers, ſaying, that if they would be adviſed by him, he would propoſe to them a Prince of the Blood of *Zingis Chan*, who would ſuit them much better than he, and that in a word it was *Ilbars*, the Son of *Burga Sultan*, who lived among the *Uſbeks**, that he meant; that he had frequent Opportunities of ſeeing him in the

Inhabitants of Vaſir *reſolve to chooſe a* Chan.

[* *The* Usbeks *inhabited then all* Kipzak, *from the* Sirr *to the* Irtis.]

Country of the Usbecks. Journeys which he made every Year into the Country of the *Usbecks*, to receive the Charities of ſeveral good People who were diſpoſed to give it him; and that he could aſſure them that Prince wanted neither Conduct nor Courage to defend them bravely, if ever there ſhould be occaſion. Upon this Advice, thoſe of *Vaſir* diſpatch'd two of the principal Inhabitants of the Town to *Ilbars* with a Letter of Invitation, deſiring him to repair to *Vaſir*; and the holy Man order'd one of his People who was known to *Ilbars* to accompany thoſe Deputies.

Ilbars *accepts their Invitation.* As ſoon as that Prince had received the aforeſaid Letter, and underſtood the Commiſſion of the Deputies, he ſent them back directly with this Anſwer, That he would follow them immediately and bring his Brother *Bilbars* along with him. The Deputies having return'd with this News, 'twas thought adviſable to ſend anew two other Deputies to meet *Ilbars*, to tell him that it was not his beſt way to enter directly into the Town, but that he ſhould ſtop at a certain Place in the Neighbourhood without being diſcover'd, and that they would come to him, when it would be proper time. Theſe Deputies having alſo return'd after ſettling every thing with *Ilbars*, the Chiefs of the Conſpiracy, who were the principal Lords of *Vaſir*, made the Inhabitants take up Arms; and having cauſed the Gates to be ſhut, they cut the Throats of the *Perſian* Governor and all his Men, excepting one, who was ſo well hid that they could not find him. The Day after this Adventure they all went out to meet *Ilbars*, and the *Usbeks* as well as the *Sarts* having received him with a great deal of Joy, they ſolemnly proclaimed him their *Chan* with the univerſal Approbation

Proclaim'd Chan at Vaſir.

probation of all the Aſſiſtants, which happen'd in the Year 911, called *Koi*, or the *Sheep*. *Ann. Dom.* 1505.

The Town of *Vaſir* heretofore had ſeveral other Towns under its Juriſdiction, but the late Wars had ſeparated moſt of them from it; inſomuch that there were only the Towns of *Jangiſhar* and *Tarſak* which depended on it. *Ilbars Chan* gave *Jangiſhar* to his Brother *Bilbars*, and placed a truſty Officer as Commander in *Tarſak*. He that govern'd there for the *Perſians* having found means to eſcape the Maſſacre of the Gariſon of *Vaſir*, was ſtill fortunate enough to get out of Town in the Evening without being obſerv'd by any body. After which he fled directly to *Urgens*, to give an Account to the Governor of the Misfortune which had happen'd to his Brother.

Governor of Urgens's *Speech to the Inhabitants.*

Upon ſo unexpected News, *Subhanculi* cauſed all the principal Inhabitants of the City of *Urgens* to meet before him; and having imparted to them the Manner in which thoſe of *Vaſir* had treated his Brother, with all his Gariſon, he added, "That ſeeing he had already had the Government of *Urgens* for ſeveral Years, and "that he believed he had not given them the "leaſt reaſon to complain of him; as alſo they "on their ſide had always behaved themſelves "very well towards him, he addreſſed himſelf "without Ceremony to them, to know their "Opinion in this Juncture; that if they were "weary of ſubmitting to his Orders, and wiſh"ed for a Change, they might freely diſcloſe "their Minds to him, becauſe he did not in"tend at all to be a Charge to them, or to re"ſide in their Town againſt their Wills; but "that if they would continue their Good-will to "him, he was content to ſtay among them." Whereupon they unanimouſly anſwer'd, "That "*Shah* *Their Anſwer.*

" *Shah Iſmael*, whom all the other Towns of " *Irak* and *Choraſſan* obey'd, being a good " Maſter, and that having nothing to com- " plain of him who was Governor for that " Prince in their City, they deſired he would " continue to reſide among them in that Qua- " lity, to prevent both himſelf and them from " being accountable to the *Shah*, in caſe he " quitted the Town without being obliged by
Reſolve to adhere to Shah Iſmael.
" a greater Force: That they were very far " from giving him the leaſt occaſion of Diſſa- " tisfaction, being firmly reſolv'd to preſerve " an inviolable Fidelity towards the *Shah:* that " as to what paſs'd at *Vaſir*, they were very " ſorry for the Loſs which he had of his Bro- " ther upon that Occaſion; but for the reſt, " that Affair needed not give him any uneaſi- " neſs: that there was all the Probability in the " World that this new *Chan* would not continue " long, and that the *Usbecks* were naturally ſo " unconſtant that they would ſoon leave him in " the Lurch, if worſe did not happen to him."

Governor of Urgens *ſends a Spy to* Vaſir.

Upon theſe Aſſurances, the Governor having deſired that they might promiſe by Oath to aſſiſt him in caſe he came to be attack'd by the *Usbecks*, they took that Oath with a great deal of readineſs. After which having made choice of one of the Inhabitants of the Town, whoſe Fidelity he had try'd, he promis'd him as much Silver as would load a Horſe, in caſe he would go to *Vaſir* and inform himſelf exactly of the Condition Affairs were in there, and bring him a faithful Account of them. But to be better aſſured of this Man, he obliged him beforehand to embrace his Religion; after which, having given him Money ſufficient, he cauſed him to depart for *Vaſir*. This Man having at his Return made a Report entirely agreeing with the

the Relation of the *Perſian* who had eſcaped from the Maſſacre of *Vaſir*, he took diligent care to put himſelf in a Condition of Defenſe.

Three Months after, *Ilbars Chan* having drawn near to *Urgens* with an Army, the Governor *Subhanculi* went to meet him with his Men; but having been beaten in that Action, the Troops of *Ilbars Chan* purſued him ſo hotly, that they enter'd the Town pell-mell with the Fugitives, and made themſelves Maſters of it after having put to the Sword the Governor, with all the Gariſon and the principal Inhabitants of the Town. After which *Ilbars Chan* ſent for his Wives and Children to *Urgens*, and there eſtabliſhed his Reſidence for the time to come. The *Perſian* Governor, who was at *Haſſaraſſap*, having taken the ſame Meaſures for the Preſervation of his Place, as *Subhanculi* had done at *Urgens*; the Inhabitants of the Town promiſed him likewiſe all Fidelity and Aſſiſtance.

Ilbars Chan *takes* Urgens.

Fixes his Seat there.

In the mean time *Ilbars Chan* finding he had not Men enough to defend his Conqueſts, inaſmuch as moſt of the Subjects of his Houſe were under the Obedience of his Uncles, by the Father's ſide, he deliberated with the principal of his Party, whether it would not be beſt to ſend for the Children of his Uncles with their Subjects, by that means to augment his Forces; and the Majority having been of opinion, that the more there came the better; only one of the common People of the Tribe of the *Vigurs*, who by chance was at that Conference, oppoſed it ſtrenuouſly; repreſenting to the Aſſembly, that it was a favourite Maxim of Sovereigns, who would preſerve Peace to themſelves, to keep their Relations at a diſtance from the Provinces of their Dominions; to the end that if there ſhould happen to be ſome reſtleſs Spirits among

Ilbars *reſolves to ſtrengthen himſelf by bringing in the* Usbecks.

them, they ſhould not be in a Situation to be able to diſturb the Tranquillity of the State. But the *Chan* and the Lords of his Council perſuaded that it was nothing but the Hatred which that Man bore to the Children of *Abulak* and *Amunak*, which inſpir'd him with that Opinion, they took the Liberty with which he had expreſſed himſelf very heinouſly; and after having reproach'd him that his Diſcourſe tended to create a Miſunderſtanding among ſo near Relations; they added, that they ought to rid themſelves in good time of ſuch ſort of Men, in order to prevent their kindling Diſcord among them in the time to come.

Invites the Poſterity of Jadigar Chan *into* Chowarazm.

In regard the four Sons of *Jadigar Chan* were at that time dead, and that only their Children were living; *Ilbars Chan* purſuant to the Advice of the Lords of his Council, gave them to underſtand, that he had been ſo happy as to obtain the Poſſeſſion of the Towns of *Vaſir* and *Urgens*; but that thoſe of *Haſſaraſſap* and *Chajuk* were ſtill in the Hands of the *Perſians*; that he had already try'd to diſlodge them, and had taken all the other Towns of thoſe Provinces if he had not wanted Men; and that it was for this reaſon that he invited them to come with their Subjects and ſhare in the Conqueſt of ſo fine a Country, where they would find Towns remaining for them to ſettle in.

Ilbars *returns to reſide at* Vaſir.

As ſoon as the Son of *Abulak* and the ſix Sons of *Amunak* had receiv'd theſe Tidings, they repaired off-hand to *Ilbars Chan*, who gave up to them the Town of *Urgens* and its Dependencies, and return'd to reſide at *Vaſir:* after which thoſe newly arrived Princes ſent out every Day great Parties to ſcour the Country about *Chajuk* and *Haſſaraſſap*; which ſo incommoded the *Perſians* that were in Gariſon in thoſe two Places,

Places, that not daring either to ſtir out themſelves, nor ſend their Cattle to the neighbouring Paſtures, they were at length conſtrained to abandon thoſe Towns and retire into their own Country; after which the Princes having ſeized the Towns which the *Perſians* had forſaken, they carry'd the War into the Province of *Choraſſan*; where after the Death of *Shah Iſmael*, they handled the *Perſians* ſo roughly, who were in poſſeſſion of the Towns of that Province, that beſides the two fore-mention'd Towns of the Country of *Charaſs'm*, they obliged them to quit all the Towns ſituate between the Country of *Duruhn* and the Mountains which are to the Weſt of the Town of *Choraſſan*, without daring to keep any of them, ſo much had Fear ſeized them. But the *Turkmanns*, who poſſeſſed the Towns which are on the Confines of the Countries of *Iſtarabath* and *Choraſſan* towards the Frontiers of the Towns of *Abulchan* and *Mankiſchlak*, vigorouſly oppos'd the Princes, and were always fighting with them, notwithſtanding that ſome of them had ſubmitted to them.

Perſians forſake Chajuk *and* Haſſaraſſap, *and ſome Towns of* Choraſan.

Turkmanns *oppoſe the* Usbecks.

Bilbars Sultan, Brother of *Ilbars Chan*, was in moſt of theſe Actions; and as he could not ſit on Horſeback becauſe he had loſt the Uſe of his Feet, as we have already obſerv'd, he made uſe of a ſmall light Chariot drawn by one clever Horſe; ſeated in this Chariot, and accompany'd by not above half a Dozen Men fit for Action, he not only led his Troops bravely to the Charge, but alſo ventur'd his Perſon among the thickeſt of the Enemy, and fought ſo well that every body wonder'd at him.

Character of Bilbars Sultan.

Ilbars Chan and *Bilbars Sultan* happen'd to die within a very little while of one another, after having reign'd ſome Years, and left ſeveral Children. *Ilbars Chan* in particular had ſeven

Death of Ilbars Chan *and* Bilbars Sultan.

ſeven Sons. The firſt called *Sultan Gaſi*, and the ſecond *Mahomet Gaſi*; but we know not the Names of the other five. *Bilbars Sultan* left five Sons, but we are acquainted with the Name of only one of them, who was called *Sultan Hadſi*. *Ilbars Chan* gave to all his Sons the Sirname of *Gaſi*, in remembrance of their having vanquiſh'd the *Perſians* who were at *Urgens* and *Vaſir*, the word *Gaſi* ſignifying a Man who ſubdues People of another Religion; but we know not for what reaſon *Bilbars Sultan* gave the Sirname of *Hadſi* to his Sons.

Signification of the word Gazi.

CHAP. II.

Of the Life and Reign of Hadſi Chan, *of* Haſanculi Chan, *of* Saphian Chan, *and of* Buzzuga Chan.

Sultan Hadſi *elected* Chan.

AFter the Death of *Ilbars Chan*, *Sultan Hadſi* who was the eldeſt *, not only of his Brothers, but alſo of the Sons of his Uncle *Ilbars Chan*, and who enjoyed, during the Life of his Uncle, the Revenue of the Town of *Jangiſhar*, was proclaimed *Chan* at *Vaſir:* but in regard he had but few Subjects, his Power was very ſmall, and the greater part of the Subjects of his Family obeyed only the Orders of *Sultan Gaſi*, eldeſt Son of *Ilbars Chan*; who being a Prince of a great Genius, diſpoſed entirely of the Hearts of thoſe who converſed with him; and as he was at the ſame time extremely

* [*The eldeſt of the reigning Family always choſen* Chan, *except in extraordinary Caſes.*]

ambi-

ambitious, he left very little Power to *Hadſi Chan*, in ſuch ſort that he was obliged to be content with the Title of *Chan*, which he bore, and the Precedency which *Sultan Gaſi* was pleaſed to give him in all Matters of Ceremony.

Hafanculi choſen Chan.

After his Death, *Haſanculi*, the Son of *Abulak*, who reigned in the Town of *Urgens*, was declared *Chan*, as being the eldeſt of all the Princes of the Houſe of *Jadigar Chan:* For inaſmuch as they were all deſcended from thoſe three Brothers, *Burga Sultan*, *Abulak*, and *Amunak*, and that conſequently they made but one Houſe together, they all obeyed the ſame *Chan*, notwithſtanding that each had his particular Dominion. Theſe are the Names of the ſix Sons of *Amunak*; 1. *Saphian*, 2. *Buzzuga*, 3. *Avanaſh*, 4. *Kahl*, 5. *Akattai*, 6. *Aganai*. Theſe ſix Brothers had at this time ſix other Sons, who were of Age to do for themſelves, without reckoning the young Children which they had. *Haſanculi Chan*, who was the only Son of *Abulak*, had likewiſe ſeveral Sons; of which *Bilal* the eldeſt had a perfect Reſemblance of his Father in every thing, and alſo in his good Diſpoſition.

Children of Amunak.

Civil War among the Usbeck *Princes.*

Nevertheleſs it happen'd in proceſs of Time, that the Sons of *Ilbars Chan*, of *Bilbars Sultan*, and of *Amunak*, being uneaſy that *Haſan Culi Chan*, who reſided at *Urgens*, had a Revenue exceedingly more conſiderable than themſelves, joined all their Forces together and went and laid Siege to the Town of *Urgens*. Whereupon *Haſanculi Chan* having ſally'd afoot with his Men out of the Town, went and poſted himſelf upon the Counterſcarp of the Place before the Gate which leads to the Country of *Choraſſan*, and fought bravely againſt the Confederates from Morning till Evening. On this occaſion, *Aga-*

nai Sultan, youngeſt of the Sons of *Amunak*, who was but twenty years of Age, ſuffering himſelf to be carry'd too far by his Vivacity, was killed by *Haſanculi Chan*'s Men, who cut off his Head and ſent it into the Town; which ſo enrag'd his Brothers and the other Chiefs of the Confederates, that having made a laſt Effort againſt thoſe of the Town, they obliged them to ſhut themſelves up within their Walls.

Urgens *taken.*

After this Siege had laſted four Months, Proviſions became ſo dear in the City, that the Head of a Horſe or a Cow was ſold for forty *Tanga*, which was the reaſon that many People quitted the Town, and went to implore Mercy of the Confederate Princes. Theſe Deſertions having by little and little conſiderably diminiſhed the Forces of *Haſanculi Chan*, the Allies cauſed at length a general Aſſault to be given to the Town, which ſucceeded ſo well, that in ſpite of the incredible Efforts which *Haſanculi Chan*, aſſiſted by few Men who remained with him, made on that occaſion, the Beſiegers enter'd at length Sword in hand, and made themſelves Maſters of it after much Bloodſhed. After which they put to death *Haſanculi Chan*, with *Bilal* his eldeſt Son, and ſent the reſt of his Children, who were ſtill very young, into *Great Bucharia*; where at the time that I am writing this Book, there are actually living fifteen Males of the Deſcendants of *Haſanculi Chan*.

Haſanculi Chan *and his Son* Bilal *put to death.*

Saphian Chan.

Saphian Sultan, eldeſt Son of *Amunak*, ſucceeded *Haſanculi Chan* in the Dignity of *Chan* of the Country of *Charaſ'm*; but the Confederate Princes agreed among themſelves about a new Diviſion of the Towns of the Country; and by virtue of that Convention, the Deſcendants of *Burga Sultan* had for their Share the Towns

New *Diviſion of Towns.*

of *Vaſir*, *Jangiſhar*, *Tarſak*, and *Duruhn*, with the *Turkmanns* of *Mankiſhlak*; and the Deſcendants of *Amunak* had all the other Towns of the Country of *Charaſs'm*, *viz. Urgens*, *Chajuk*, *Haſſaraſſap*, *Kaht*, *Buldumſaſs*, *Nikitzkata*, *Bojunda*, *Bagabat*, *Naſai*, *Iburdu*, *Zaharda*, and *Mahana*, with the *Turkmanns* which inhabited the Countries of *Abulchan* and *Dehiſtan*.

Thereupon *Saphian Chan* having ſent word to the *Turkmanns* of *Abulchan* of the Tribe of *Irſari*, that they ſhould agree to pay him an annual Contribution, or that he would come and deſtroy all their Habitations, they voluntarily aſſeſſed themſelves and ſent him the Sum by way of a free Gift. But the *Chan* not well content with that kind of precarious Contribution, ſent the Year following forty Men to levy the Contributions of all the *Turkmanns* of *Abulchan* and *Dehiſtan*: Theſe Men not expecting to meet with Reſiſtance, began with making a Computation among themſelves how many Families each would have to receive Contributions from. After which having diſperſed themſelves thro' the Country purſuant to this Diviſion, the *Turkmanns* gave the Word, and cut the Throats of thoſe forty Receivers at the ſame inſtant of time. Upon this News, *Saphian Chan* march'd againſt them with an Army, accompany'd by his four Brothers.

Turkmanns refuſe to ſubmit to Saphian Chan.

You muſt know that the River *Amu*, after it has paſs'd by *Urgens*, takes its Courſe towards the Weſt and the Mountain of *Abulchan*; and from thence wheeling about that Mountain it runs Southward; then returning to the Weſt, it paſſes thro' the Country of *Ogurza*, and falls into the Sea of *Maſanderan*. There were at that time Habitations in abundance upon both ſides of that River, from the Town of *Urgens*, as far as

Courſe of the River Amu *from* Urgens *to the* Caſpian Sea.

as the Country of *Ogurza*; by reaſon of the Soil being exceedingly fertil, all ſorts of Fruits and Roots grew there in Perfection. The *Turkmanns* who poſſeſſed thoſe Quarters went to encamp in Summer in the neighbouring Valleys, where they knew they ſhould have Water for their Cattle, and in Winter they return'd to their Habitations on the Banks of the River. The *Turkmanns* of the Tribe of *Adaklichiſſer-illi* dwelt on both ſides of that River, from the Country of *Piſhga* as far as that of *Karikizit*; from the Country of *Karikizit* as far as the Mountain of *Abulchan*, the *Turkmanns* of the Tribe of *Aly-ili* inhabit, and the *Turkmanns* of the Tribe of *Ti-u-azi* poſſeſs the reſt of the two ſides of the River *Amu*, from the Mountain of *Abulchan*, as far as the Sea of *Maſanderan:* But to return to the Hiſtory.

Turkmanns.

***Preſs'd hard by the* Chan.**

Saphian Chan having arriv'd with his Army at the firſt Habitations of the *Turkmanns*, which were thoſe of the Tribes of *Irſari* and *Choraſſan-Saluri*, which dwelt together, found at firſt much Reſiſtance; but after killing a good Number of *Turkmanns*, and making many others of them Priſoners, the reſt were obliged to betake themſelves to flight towards the Mountain called *Dſu*, ſituate three days Journey to the North of *Abulchan*. *Saphian Chan* after he had order'd all their Cattle to be carry'd away, follow'd them to the Foot of the Mountain, where he went and encamp'd. The *Turkmanns* who had retir'd upon the Mountain, found themſelves in want of Water at the end of two days, which obliged them to capitulate: For this purpoſe they deputed ſome old Men among them, who having obtained Permiſſion to come to the Camp of *Saphian Chan*, addreſſed themſelves to *Akattai Sultan*, youngeſt Brother of *Saphian Chan*;

***Mountain* Dſu.**

Chan; and after putting him in mind that the *Usbecks* were always accuſtom'd to prefer the youngeſt Son to his other Brothers *, they pray'd him that foraſmuch as he was alſo then the youngeſt of his Brothers, he would do them the Favour to intercede for them with his Brother *Saphian Chan*; to the end he might grant them Pardon, under a Promiſe that they would ſerve him faithfully for the time to come.

Akattai Chan having received theſe Deputies very well, ſent them back with this Anſwer, "That he would endeavour to appeaſe the "Anger of the *Chan*, provided they would not *Submit.* "fail to ſend him immediately ſome of the "moſt conſiderable among them." Upon which they ſent them to him off-hand; and *Akattai Sultan* having made them take the Oath of Fidelity upon the *Alchoran*, in the Name of all the others, obtained their Pardon of *Saphian Chan.* After which having repreſented to them, that in return for the Clemency ſhewed them, they ought to think of the means of teſtifying their Gratitude to him; they all declar'd they only waited his Order thereupon, and that they were all ready to obey him in every thing he ſhould deſire of them.

Upon which *Akattai Sultan* demanded nothing of them for the current Year, in conſideration of what they had already ſuffer'd on that Occaſion: but he agreed with them that the following Year they ſhould give 40000 Sheep for the forty Men ſent to receive the Cuſtoms whom they had kill'd, and permit *Saphian Chan* to impoſe on them, beſides ſuch other Charges as he ſhould think convenient. To make up this *Turkmanns pay Contribution.*

* *The Reader may compare this Place with what our Author relates on the Subject*, p. 60.

Num-

Number of 40000 Sheep the Tribes of *Taka*, *Sarik* and *Jamut* obliged themſelves to furniſh 8000, the Tribe of *Irſari* 16000, and that of *Choraſſan-Saluri* the remaining 16000. All theſe Tribes made but one formerly, but in proceſs of time it became divided into divers ſmall Branches. *Saphian Chan* having ſummoned thoſe Tribes the Year following to make good the Engagements of this Treaty, they ſent off-hand the 40000 Sheep by a Deputation of ten Men from among them: The *Chan* very well pleaſed with the punctualneſs of the *Turkmanns*, ſent back their Deputies loaded with Favours; and ſince that time the *Turkmanns* of thoſe Tribes have always been obliged, they and their Deſcendants, to furniſh yearly the aforeſaid Sum of 40000 Sheep to the *Chan*.

All the Turkmanns ſubmit.

The other Tribes of the *Turkmanns* made alſo their Agreement afterwards with the *Chan*, *viz.* that the Tribe of *Itzki Saluri* ſhould give annually 10000 Sheep by way of Contribution, and 1000 more for the Kitchen of the *Chan*; the Tribe of *Haſan* 16000 Contribution Sheep, and 1600 to the *Chan*'s Kitchen; the Tribe of *Ikdur* and that of *Dſaudur* 12000 Contribution Sheep, and 1200 to the *Chan*'s Kitchen; the Tribe of *Arabaz* 4000 Contribution Sheep, and 400 to the Kitchen of the *Chan*; the Tribe of *Koklan* 12000 Contribution Sheep, and 1200 to the *Chan*'s Kitchen: The Tribe of *Adakli* 12000 Contribution Sheep, and 1200 to the Kitchen of the *Chan*; and that ſome other inconſiderable Tribes ſhould give alſo 4000 every Year. With regard to the three Tribes of *Turkmanns* which dwelt along the Banks of the River *Amu*, it was ſtipulated that they ſhould contribute no Sheep, but that the Tribe of *Adaklichiſſer-illi* ſhould furniſh yearly

a

a certain Number of Soldiers for the *Chan*'s Service, and that thoſe of *Aly-ili* and *Ti-u-azi* ſhould pay their Contribution in Merchandizes. Theſe three laſt Tribes of *Turkmanns* who lived upon the Profits of their Lands were ſurnamed *Utzill*, which is to ſay, a People divided into three Branches.

Buzzuga Chan.

Saphian Chan dying after he had reigned ſome Years, his Brother *Buzzuga Sultan* was proclaimed *Chan* in his room. *Saphian Chan* left at his Death five Sons, viz. 1. *Juſſuph*, 2. *Junus*, 3. *Aly*, 4. *Agiſh*, 5. *Paluanculi*, to whom *Buzzuga Chan* aſſigned the Town of *Chajuk* in appenage.

Obeit Chan of Great Bucharia.

Obeit Chan, who then reigned in *Great Bucharia* *, took about that time ſome Towns of the Country of *Choraſſan* which the *Perſians* before poſſeſſed, and the *Usbecks* his Subjects made continual War upon the reſt of the Towns of that Country, which were ſtill under the Dominion of the *Perſians*, carrying away from time to time a great Number of the Inhabitants of the Country into ſlavery. On the other ſide the *Usbecks* of the Country of *Charaſ'm*, who poſſeſſed the Towns of *Iburdu*, *Naſai* and *Duruhn*, did no leſs incommode the *Perſians* which dwelt in the Towns of *Chodſan* and *Eſpheragin*, towards the Frontiers of the Country of *Gilkuſ ruk*; for as the *Usbecks* of *Naſai* were but one day's Journey diſtant, they continually ſcour'd the Plain thereabouts with great Parties, and by that means they did not only hinder the Inhabitants of thoſe Towns from cultivating their Lands, but they alſo cut off all Correſpondence

Choraſan haraſs'd by the Usbecks of Bucharia and Chowarazm.

* *This Prince was Son of* Mahomet Sultan, *Brother of* Shabacht Sultan, *who drove the Deſcendants of* Tamerlan *out of* Great Bucharia, *as our Author relates, p.* 210, 222.

with

with the other neighbouring Towns belonging to the *Perſians.*

Shah Tamas *makes an Alliance with the* Usbecks.

Shah Tamaſip * who reigned then in *Perſia*, unable effectually to remedy the Diſorders which the *Usbecks* raiſed upon the Frontiers of his Dominions, becauſe of the Quarrels which he had every now and then with the Sultan of *Ruhm*, reſolved to make an Alliance with the *Usbecks* that he might have Elbow-room on that ſide. Accordingly he diſpatch'd an Envoy to *Urgens*, with Propoſals of Marriage between the *Shah* and a Princeſs, the Daughter or Relation of *Buzzuga Chan.* That Envoy arriving at Court, gave *Buzzuga Chan* to underſtand, that his Maſter, as powerful as he was always, thought it a great Honour to be marry'd to a Princeſs of the Blood of the great *Zingis Chan*, and that therein he had before his Eyes the illuſtrious Example of *Amir Timur*, to whom ſo much Honour redounded, on account of marrying a Princeſs of the Houſe of *Zingis Chan* †; that they

* *This Prince is called* Shah Tamas I. *by our Hiſtorians; he was the Son of* Shah Iſmael I. *but he fell very ſhort of the Capacity of his Father in the Art of Reigning. He loſt the greateſt part of the Conqueſts his Father had acquired from the* Turks, *and it was his good Fortune rather than his Conduct which helped him to get rid of an Enemy ſo formidable as Sultan* Soliman *the Great, whom he had upon his Back, without loſing more of his own than what his Father had conquered from the* Turks.

'Twas this Prince who aſſiſted Babur Chan, *whom* Shabacht Sultan *had driven out of* Great Bucharia, *to mount the Throne of* Indoſtan; *and when after his Death his Son* Homayun *had loſt that Conqueſt again, he helped him to recover it: and ever ſince that time the Deſcendants of thoſe Princes have always kept Poſſeſſion of that Empire.*

Babur Chan *was Grandſon of* Abuſaid Mirſa, *of whom our Author has ſpoken Part.* 8. *Chap.* 3.

Shah Tamas I. *died* 1576. *after a Reign of fifty Years.*

† *We know nothing certain touching this Princeſs of the Race of* Zingis Chan, *whom* Tamerlan *eſpouſed: All that*

they gave him upon that Occaſion the Name of *Amir Timur Curagan*, which he retained ever after: That beſides the Honour which would accrue to his Maſter by ſo illuſtrious an Alliance, he might hope to find in it a real Advantage, inaſmuch as the News of this Marriage would make the Sultan of *Ruhm* go on warily, and furniſh his Maſter with the means of oppoſing more effectually for the time to come, an Enemy who would not fail to fall upon the *Uſbecks*, if ever he ſhould come to force the Barrier which the Kingdom of *Perſia* ſets in his way. Gurcan.

Buzzuga Chan having accepted the Propoſals of the Envoy, betrothed his Niece called *Aiſhabika*, Daughter of *Saphian Chan* to the *Shah*, becauſe he had no Daughter of his own. After which he ſent *Agiſh Sultan*, one of the Brothers of the betroth'd, accompany'd by nine Lords of his Vaſſals to the Court of *Shah Tahmaſip*, to give the finiſhing Touch to this Treaty of Alliance and Marriage.

I have been able to find thereupon in Authors is, that Gonzales de Molina, *who wrote the Life of* Tamerlan *in* Spaniſh, *tells us, that the moſt diſtinguiſhed among the Wives of that Conqueror was called* Cannon, *and that ſhe was the Daughter of one* Ahin Chan, *who reigned at* Samarkant *before* Tamerlan: *But with regard to the Name of* Cannon, *which that Author has given the Princeſs in queſtion, I am fully perſuaded he is deceived thereupon, and that in Name of that Princeſs, he has taken the Name of* Chanim, *or* Chanun, *as the* Tatars *pronounce it, which is peculiar to the Wives and Daughters of the* Chans; *and as to the Name of* Ahin Chan, *which he gives her Father, I have no better Opinion of it, becauſe among the different Names of the* Chans *who reigned before* Tamerlan *in* Great Bucharia, *I find none that has the leaſt Conformity with it, unleſs he ſpeaks of* Adill Chan, *according to what our Author relates upon this Subject,* p. 170, 171.

Shah Tamas *beſtows* Chogan *on* Aiſh Sultan.

The *Shah* received that Prince with all poſſible Marks of Diſtinction, and made him a Preſent of the Town of *Chodſan*, where *Agiſh Sultan* at length died after he had reſided there during twenty five Years. *Shah Tahmaſip* ſent likewiſe to *Buzzuga Chan* ten Wedges of Gold, and as many of Silver, each of which was as big as a Tile, and ten fine Horſes, the Saddles and Harneſs of which were richly trimm'd with Gold; to his Spouſe he ſent nine Pieces of Cloth of Gold, a Thouſand Pieces of Silk Stuffs, and abundance of other valuable Clothes, with magnificent Habits. After which *Buzzuga Chan* cauſed that Princeſs to be brought to him with all the Magnificence imaginable, and lived ever after in Peace with the *Perſians*. This *Chan* died at length a ſhort while after the afore-mentioned *Agiſh Sultan*, after having reigned twenty ſeven Years with much Glory.

CHAP. III.

Of the Reign of Avanaſh Chan, *and of the Civil Wars among the Deſcendants of* Amunak, *and thoſe of* Burga Sultan.

Avanaſh Chan.

AFTER the Death of *Buzzuga Chan*, *Avanaſh Chan* his Brother was proclaimed *Chan* in his room in the City of *Urgens*. *Buzzuga Chan* left three Sons at his Death, *viz.* 1. *Doſt Mahamet*, 2. *Iſh Mahamet*, 3. *Burum*, otherwiſe named *Iſh Doſt*, to whom *Avanaſh Chan* aſſigned the Town of *Kabt* for his Portion.

Avanaſh

Avanaſh Chan had likewiſe three Sons, called 1. *Din Mahamet*, 2. *Machmut*, 3. *Aly*. This *Chan* had bought the Mother of *Din Mahamet Sultan* from a Merchant of the *Mankatts*, who pretended ſhe was a Daughter of a *Mirſa* of the *Mankatts*, but born of a Slave; and that having been made Priſoner on account of ſome Troubles which had befallen the Country of the *Mankatts*, ſhe had been ſold to him. The Mother of the two youngeſt Sons of *Avanaſh Chan* was alſo a Daughter of a *Mirſa* of the *Mankatts*, and 'tis the Cuſtom among them, when the *Chan* has a Spouſe who is Daughter of a *Mirſa* of the *Mankatts*, ſhe is called *Biim*, nor has any other Wife of a *Chan*, let her be of what Family ſhe will, a Right to pretend to that Name. After that *Din Mahamet Sultan* had been weaned from the Breaſt of his Mother, his Father committed him to the Care of the Mother of his younger Brothers, but ſhe did not love him at all, and her Hatred to him increaſed with his Years. *Account of* Din Mahamet Sultan.

It happen'd among the reſt that *Din Mahamet Sultan* playing when he was ſix Years old, with other Children of the ſame Age, built a ſmall Fort of Earth and Stones, in which having poſted ſome of his Comrades, he commanded the reſt to go and attack that Fort, promiſing to reward thoſe well who ſignalized themſelves on that Occaſion; and threatning with Death thoſe who failed in their Duty. The *Biim* having obſerv'd this Action of *Din Mahamet Sultan*, did not fail to make uſe of an Occaſion which appear'd ſo proper to chide him well, ſaying, "What are you doing there, "you *Tugma?* do you think that is the way "they make Forts with Earth and Stones?" you muſt know that the word *Tugma* ſignifies a Chid *His early Genius for War.*

born of a bought Slave. Whereupon *Din Mahamet Sultan*, who (notwithſtanding he was but a Child, yet reſented ſmartly the Injury which the *Büm* had uttered) having approached towards her, made her a profound Reverence with an Air of Mockery, replying, "'Tis "well God has inſpired me with this Thought, "for if you know it not, I know very well that "'tis of Earth and Stone that they build For-"treſſes." The diſdainful manner with which *Din Mahamet Sultan* treated the *Büm* on this Occaſion, increaſed yet more the Averſion which ſhe had naturally to him.

Makes an Inroad into Perſia.

In the mean while *Din Mahamet Sultan* having attained the Age of nineteen * Years, and being informed that the *Usbecks* who dwelt in that part of the Country of *Choraſſan* which was then in Subjection to the *Chan* of *Urgens*, had been accuſtomed heretofore to ſend Parties from time to time towards the Territories of *Iſtarabat*, and that part of the Country of *Choraſſan* which is ſubject to the *Perſians*, from whence they had almoſt conſtantly return'd with a conſiderable Booty, he took up a Reſolution to make an Inroad on that ſide unknown to his Father, and having for that End made choice of Forty Men, who were willing to follow him on this Occaſion, he ſet forward with them out of hand; and after having for ſome time coaſted along the Arm of the River *Amu*, which in thoſe Days paſſed before *Urgens*, he went over to the other Arm of that River, which he paſſed at a Place called *Sidalik Taka*; having afterwards enter'd a Defile, which is on that ſide, called *Dinar*, he met a Man belonging to one of the

Courſe of the River Amu.

[* Hegra 940. *for he was* 28, *in* 949. *See the end of the third Chapter.*]

Lords

Lords of *Mahamet Gaſi Sultan*, who was conducting nine Camels and thirty Sheep, and having aſked from whence he came with that Cattle, he anſwer'd, That he had been receiving the Contribution of ſome *Turkmanns* for his Maſter, and that he was returning to him at *Duruhn*, for *Mahamet Gaſi Sultan* was at that time in poſſeſſion of that Town. Whereupon *Din Mahamet Sultan* having obſerv'd a yellow Goat among the Sheep which this Man led, he pray'd him to give it him, that his Men might have wherewithal to ſubſiſt on the Road, and that at his Return he would not fail to gratify his Maſter: But this Man refuſing to give it him, *Din Mahamet Sultan* made his Men abuſe him, and take all he had from him; after which he purſued his Journey.

It will hardly be credited that a yellow Goat ſhould cauſe the Deſtruction of a Town *, and yet this ſame yellow Goat actually did, as the Sequel of this Hiſtory will make appear: From whence it has paſs'd into a Proverb among us, *That the Town of* Urgens *was ruined by a yellow Goat*. *Din Mahamet Sultan* having arriv'd with his Men upon the Lands of *Iſtarabat*, cauſed all the Cattle of the *Perſians* to be carry'd away three times, and then return'd with them. In the mean time, the Man whom he had order'd to be ill uſed at the Defile of *Dinar*, having gone to his Maſter with the News of the Adventure which he had with *Din Mahamet Sultan*, that Lord went immediately to make his Complaints to *Mahamet Gaſi Sultan*, who forthwith commanded ſome Troops towards the Road by which *Din Mahamet Sultan* was to re-

Deſtruction of Urgens, *occaſioned by a Goat.*

[* *Coffee has been the Occaſion of as great Diſturbances. See Voyage* de l'Arabie Heureuſe, *p.* 255, &c.]

turn, with Orders to bring him to him in caſe he fell into their Hands. This Command was executed in the nick of Time, for *Din Mahamet Sultan* having taken very quietly the ſame Road in returning which he took in going, without dreaming in the leaſt of the Snare that had been laid for him, went directly into the midſt of thoſe Troops, which brought him to *Mahamet Gaſi Sultan*, after they had taken from him all the Booty he had ſeized from the *Perſians*. As for the forty Men which followed him in this Enterprize, they let them go their way, and one Party of them return'd to *Urgens*; but the reſt not daring to go back after what had happen'd to *Din Mahamet Sultan*, diſperſed themſelves among the People which lived on that Road, waiting to ſee what would become of their Leader.

Din Mahomet taken.

Impriſon'd and puniſhed.

Thoſe who return'd to *Urgens* gave indeed an Account to *Avanaſh Chan* of what had befallen *Din Mahamet Sultan*; but as he did not at all love that Son, and that beſides he had at the Age of fifty Years eſpouſed the Siſter of *Mahamet Gaſi Sultan*, he gave himſelf no trouble about it, becauſe he had no deſire to quarrel on that Account with his Brother-in-Law. In the mean time, as ſoon as the Troops of *Mahamet Gaſi Sultan* had brought *Din Mahamet Sultan* to him, he cauſed him to be impriſon'd in a Houſe ſeparated from all the other Houſes of the Town, where he had him guarded very cloſely for ſome time; after which he had him puniſh'd, and ſent him back to his Father *Avanaſh Chan*, under a Guard of ſix Men, commanded by one of his Vaſſals of the Tribe of the *Vigurs* called *Riſha Chudai-birdi*, whom he ordered to tell the *Chan* from him, that he had ſent him his *Tugma*, after having been obliged to puniſh him for having

ing made an Inroad into the *Perſian* Territories without his Permiſſion, and for having beſides that ſtripp'd ſome of his People upon the high Road.

Riſha Chudaibirdi having ſet forward with *Din Mahamet Sultan* and his ſix Men, the *Sultan* who almoſt died with Deſire to ſee himſelf at liberty, bethought himſelf of making from time to time great Outcries; imagining that if any of his Men who had accompany'd him in his Incurſion upon the Lands of *Iſtarabat*, ſhould by chance have ſtop'd upon that Road, they might know his Voice and come to his Aſſiſtance; and every time that *Din Mahamet Sultan* put up a Cry, the Lord who conducted him cry'd on his part *Riſha*! which was his uſual word: But *Din Mahamet Sultan*, who believed that he made thoſe Exclamations with a deſign to inſult him, took ſuch Offence at it, that it coſt *Riſha Chudai-birdi* his Life; for having been obliged to paſs thro' the Country of *Gordiſh*, which is very populous, he found that ſome of the Men who had been in the Party with *Din Mahamet Sultan* had ſtop'd there, who having diſtinguiſh'd his Voice followed him at a diſtance. The Lord who commanded the Convoy of that Prince having a mind to paſs the Night thereabout, *Din Mahamet Sultan* deſired him to go on and not give him the Mortification to be made a Spectacle to ſo many People; whereupon, *Riſha Chudai-birdi*, to pleaſe him, continued his March till Day-break, and then he made his Men halt in a Place far from the common Road for the Conveniency of feeding his Horſes; but while he and his Men were aſleep, the Men who followed *Din Mahamet Sultan* at a diſtance came up very ſoftly, and ſet him at liberty.

Din Mahamet eſcapes.

Slays his Convoy and their Commander.

As ſoon as *Din Mahamet Sultan* found himſelf free, he ſlew the Commander of his Convoy with his own Sword; and having alſo cut the Throats of the reſt of the Men, he had the dead Corps bury'd inſtantly a little out of the way: After which he had the Marks of the Blood which ſtill appear'd upon the Ground, cover'd nicely with Sand; and to ſecure this Affair as well as he could from taking Wind before the proper time, he obliged them all to promiſe him by Oath not to diſcover it to any one. After which he went very quietly to ſee his Father at *Urgens*, who having inquir'd of him at his Arrival how he got off the Scrape, he anſwer'd, that indeed *Mahomet Gaſi Sultan* had been very angry with him, but it was ſoon over, and that he had at laſt ſent him back with a Preſent of ſome Horſes and Habits, which his Father took to be all Truth.

Din Mahomet's *Plot againſt* Mahomet Gaſi Sultan.

In the mean time *Din Mahamet Sultan*, who had laid his Scheme, went to a Graver and had two Seals made, one with the Cypher of his Father, and the other with that of his Mother-in-Law, the Siſter of *Mahomet Gaſi Sultan*: After which he wrote in the Name of his Father to *Mahomet Gaſi Sultan*, that his Siſter being very ſick, and deſiring to ſpeak to him, he beg'd he would come and ſee her off-hand. He wrote him alſo another Letter to the ſame purpoſe in the Name of his Siſter, pretending to be ſick; and having ſealed thoſe two Letters with the two Seals he had got engraved for that End, he gave them to a truſty Perſon to carry to *Mahomet Gaſi Sultan*; and to the end he might make the more haſte, he gave him two of his beſt Horſes to ſerve him in this Journey. While he waited the Return of his Expreſs, he got together the Forty Men who had

had followed him in his *Perſian* Incurſion, and entertained them nobly to make them amends for the Booty which *Mahomet Gaſi Sultan*'s Men had taken from them.

Mahomet Gaſi Sultan, as ſoon as he had received the Letters, ſet forward immediately for *Urgens*; and having arrived there in an Evening, when *Avanaſh Chan* was gone to take the Diverſion of Hawking, he went directly to the Apartment of his Siſter, who received him very well. *Mahomet Gaſi Sultan* perceiving no Tokens of Sickneſs, told his Siſter he thank'd God to find her ſo well recover'd after the preſſing Letters which had been written to him upon that Account: But ſhe having reply'd, that ſhe had not been ill at all, and that ſhe knew of no Letters he ſpoke of, he began to ſuſpect ſomething: Whereupon leaving his Siſter that Inſtant, and hearing at the ſame time much Noiſe in the great Street which faced the Caſtle, he left his Horſes near the Gate he went in at, and made to the Stables of *Avanaſh Chan*, thinking to eſcape that way by a ſmall Back-door which opened into a By-ſtreet; but finding that Street full of People, he durſt not execute that Deſign, and was conſtrained to hide himſelf the beſt he could in a Heap of Dung which he found in one Corner of the Stable. Mahomet Gazi Sultan *arrives at* Urgens.

Din Mahamet Sultan, who had ſeen *Mahomet Gaſi Sultan* go up to his Siſter's Apartment, followed him with ſome of his Men, and not finding him there, he aſked the Women-ſlaves which attended his Mother-in-Law where he was gone; and upon their telling him he had taken the way to the Stables, he followed him thither. In the mean time his Men run thro' all the Apartments of the Caſtle in ſearch of *Mahomet Gaſi Sultan*; but not finding him, they return'd *Slain by* Din Mahomet.

to

to join *Din Mahamet Sultan*, who was gone down into the Court of the Caſtle; and on this Occaſion, it came into one of their Heads to ſearch ſo well in every Corner of the Stables, that he perceived at laſt a Bit of the end of *Mahamet Gaſi Sultan*'s Scarlet Robe, which ſtuck out of the Heap of Dung where he lay hid, and *Din Mahamet Sultan* having been informed of it, went inſtantly and ſlew him on the Spot

Aly Sultan put to death by way of Repriſal.

Upon the Noiſe of this News which ſpread forthwith thro' the whole Town, one of *Mahamet Gaſi Sultan*'s Men ran without ſtopping to *Vaſir*, to tell *Sultan Gaſi* of the Death of his Brother. Among other Wives which that *Sultan* had, he had newly marry'd a Daughter of *Saphian Chan*; and it happen'd that *Aly Sultan* her Brother was come to ſee her juſt at the time that her Huſband receiv'd this ſad News, which ſo tranſported him with Rage, that for want of having it in his power to revenge himſelf upon the Guilty, he let his Vengeance fall upon his Brother-in-Law *Aly Sultan*, whom he ſlew out of hand, without conſidering that he was altogether innocent of the Murder of his Brother. *Avanaſh Chan* having been inform'd at his Return from Hunting that *Din Mahamet Sultan* had ſlain his Brother-in-Law *Mahamet Gaſi Sultan*, and that he had fled after committing that Action no body knew whither; he aſſembled all the Lords of his Council to deliberate what was to be done upon the Occaſion of ſo extraordinary an Accident; but ſcarce had they taken the proper Reſolutions on that Affair, when there arriv'd a Courier with the News of the Murder of *Aly Sultan*, which threw *Avanaſh Chan* into Confuſion.

In

In the mean time the Nephews of *Avanaſh Chan*, as being all of the Poſterity of *Amunak*, having been inform'd of what had happen'd at *Urgens* and *Vaſir*; and foreſeeing that there was likely to enſue a bloody Civil War, repaired all to *Urgens* to *Avanaſh Chan*; from whence, on the other hand, the People of *Mahamet Gaſi Sultan* retir'd to *Vaſir*. *Avanaſh Chan*, for his part, had indeed no Inclination for a War, but his Nephews and their Vaſſals led him in ſome meaſure, whether he would or no, to muſter an Army and march towards *Vaſir*. Avanaſh Chan *prepares for War.*

Upon the News of this, *Sultan Gaſi* ſent to demand Aſſiſtance of the Deſcendants of *Bilbars Sultan*, who were in poſſeſſion of *Jangiſhar*; but becauſe they were not over-haſty in coming, *Sultan Gaſi* in expectation of their Arrival, took the Field with what Troops he had, and advanced to meet *Avanaſh Chan* as far as the Country of *Kumkant*, which is to the Weſt of the Town of *Vaſir*, and whoſe Inhabitants are very well to paſs. Theſe two Armies which ſought for one another, ſoon met, and *Sultan Gaſi* finding in ranging his Troops that there were not Men enough to make a Front equal to that of the Enemy, was not a little chagrin'd at it; and as he was not very well belov'd by the Soldiers, becauſe he paid them very badly, one of them began to cry aloud on that Occaſion, that he had an Opportunity of ſupplying the Defect of Soldiers by his Horſes and Cows, of which, till then, he made more Account than of his Warriers; nor could the *Sultan* diſcover who it was that did him that Affront whatever Inquiry he made about it. In ſhort the two Armies having engaged, *Sultan Gazi* loſt the Battle, and was there kill'd with fifteen other Princes of the Poſterity of *Ilbars Chan*. Sultan Gazi *defeated and kill'd.*

Sultan

Sultan Gaſi's *Children.*

Sultan Gaſi had ſeveral Wives, and among others, one who was Daughter of a Chief of the *Turkmanns* called *Uligtu Baſmalbik*, who fell into his Hands at the time that he made War with the *Turkmanns* of the Country of *Burma*; he had two Sons and two Daughters by that Wife, the eldeſt of the Sons was called *Umar Gaſi Sultan*, and the youngſt *Shir Gaſi Sultan*; and of the Daughters, the eldeſt was named *Sahhara Chanim*, and the youngeſt *Nonaſh Chanim:* Theſe four Children of *Sultan Gaſi* falling into the Hands of *Akattai Sultan* after this Battle, that Prince ſent them into *Great Bucharia*. *Umar Gaſi Sultan* was at that time fifteen Years of Age, and *Shir Gaſi* but twelve.

During theſe Tranſactions, the Princes of the Poſterity of *Bilbars Sultan* arriving at *Vaſir*, and being inform'd at that Place that *Sultan Gaſi* had already taken the Field in ſearch of *Avanaſh Chan*, they continued their March forthwith in the Road which his Army had taken, and did all in their Power to join him with their Troops before he ſhould be obliged to come to a Battle with the Princes of the Poſterity of *Amunak*; but having arriv'd in the Country of *Kumkant*, they receiv'd the News of the Defeat and Death of *Sultan Gaſi*, which obliged them to fly into the *Great Bucharia*, becauſe they durſt not venture to return to *Jangiſhar*. After which the Princes of the Poſterity of *Amunak* put to death all the Poſterity of *Burga Sultan* which fell into their Hands; and as for the Daughters and Wives of that Houſe, they thought fit to keep them in quality of Captives; and in this manner it was that the Poſterity of *Ilbars Chan*, which was formerly very numerous, was almoſt intirely extinct by means of this War, at leaſt,

no

no more of them were then to be found in the Country of *Charaſs'm*.

After ſo great a Revolution, the whole Country was divided among the Deſcendants of *Amunak*: *Avanaſh Chan* was indeed ſatisfy'd with his old Domain and the Town of *Urgens*; but he diſtributed the other Towns among his Relations, and *Din Mahamet Sultan* had for his Share the Town of *Duruhn*, and all the Princes lived afterwards in great Amity together. *Charaſs'm divided among the Deſcendants of Amunak.*

In the mean time *Umar Gaſi Sultan*, Son of *Sultan Gaſi*, arriving in *Great Bucharia*, put himſelf immediately in the Service of *Obeit Chan* *; and notwithſtanding his Youth, he ſignalized himſelf in ſuch wiſe on ſeveral Occaſions, that they began already to look upon him as a Prince who would one Day make himſelf be talk'd of. He, eſpecially, preſs'd *Obeit Chan* exceedingly to give him an Army to go to *Urgens*; and as the other Princes of the Poſterity of *Abulgair Chan*, who were at that time in thoſe Parts, declar'd they would accompany him in that Expedition, *Obeit Chan* of Grand *Bucharia*, *Dſuanmart Chan* of *Samarkant*, and *Barak Chan* of *Taſhkant*, as alſo *Hainſa Sultan*, and the Deſcendants of *Mahadi Sultan* of *Hiſar*, agreed together to enter with all their Forces into the Country of *Charaſs'm*. *Confederacy againſt Avanaſh Chan.*

At this News the Princes of the Poſterity of *Amunak*, who poſſeſs'd *Chajuk*, *Haſſaraſſap*, and the other neighbouring Towns, came with all the Troops they had to join *Avanaſh Chan*; but that *Chan* not daring to wait the Enemies coming at *Urgens*, retir'd into the Deſarts. *Obeit* *Avanaſh Chan and other Princes taken Priſoners.*

* Obeit Chan *the Nephew of* Shabacht Sultan, *was the Son of a Grandſon of* Abulgair Chan, *who was, as it were, the common Stock of all the Princes of the Poſterity of* Sheybani Chan, *who were then ſettled in* Great Bucharia.

Chan and his Allies arriving at *Urgens*, detacht ſome Troops to ſeek out *Avanaſh Chan*; which having taken him in the Country of *Baijalkiri*, brought him to *Obeit Chan*, and with him ſeveral Princes of his Houſe, and a great Number of other Perſons of Diſtinction.

Priſoners divided. As ſoon as they were arriv'd in the Camp, *Obeit Chan* cauſed a Diviſion to be made of the Priſoners. *Umar Gaſi Sultan* had for his Share *Avanaſh Chan*, whom he inſtantly put to death, as a Sacrifice which he owed to the Manes of his Father; *Obeit Chan* kept for himſelf *Akattai Sultan*, Brother of *Avanaſh Chan*, and gave *Khal Sultan*, who was another Brother of *Avanaſh Chan*, to *Hainſa* and the Deſcendants of *Mahadi Sultan*: he gave the Town of *Urgens* to his Son *Abdulaſis Sultan*, and did not meddle either with the *Turkmanns*, or the *Sartes*, which he left in the quiet Poſſeſſion of their Settlements; but they made a Partition of the four Tribes of the *Usbecks*, who dwelt in the ſeveral Provinces dependant on the Country of *Charaſs'm*, in ſuch ſort that *Obeit Chan* had one Tribe, the *Chan* of *Samarkant* one, the *Chan* of *Taſhkant* one, and the Princes of *Hiſar* one: After which each of theſe Princes having eſtabliſh'd an Intendant over the Tribe which fell to his Share, they return'd into their own Dominions.

Urgens given to Abdulaſis Sultan.

Tribes of Usbecks *in* Chowarazm.

When *Avanaſh Chan* was made Priſoner, his two Sons *Machmut* and *Aly* took Refuge at *Duruhn*, with *Din Mahamet Sultan* their eldeſt Brother; and *Aly Sultan*, who was the youngeſt, was not then above ſeven Years old. *Juſſuph* and *Jumus*, two of the Sons of *Saphian Chan*, as well as ſeveral other Princes and young Men of Quality, fled alſo to *Duruhn*; but the Children of *Akattai Sultan* were all carry'd Priſoners into *Great Bucharia* with their Father, except only

only one of them called *Hadſim Sultan*; who when *Avanaſh Chan* was taken, was glad in ſo bad Circumſtances to retire to an old Domeſtick of his Father's of the Tribe of the *Durmanns*, called *Dſanſait*, being then eighteen Years of Age; and as that Man had no hand in the Affairs of the Times, *Hadſim Sultan* put on ſome old tatter'd Clothes, and kept his Horſes as if he had been one of his Slaves. *Eſcape of* Hadſin Sultan.

In the mean time the *Durmanns*, who had been made Priſoners by *Obeit Chan* and his Confederates, having been ſent to dwell in the Country of *Keſilirabat*, diſcover'd by chance, after they had dwelt there for three Months, that *Hadſim Sultan* kept the Horſes of that antient Domeſtick of his Father. *Dſanſait* having been inform'd that his Secret had taken Wind, went and conjur'd *Hadſim Sultan* to retire from him, ſeeing that his longer Stay in his Houſe would infallibly ruin them both, every body already ſpeaking publickly of it. Whereupon *Hadſim Sultan* pray'd him to give him wherewithal to go join *Din Mahamet Sultan* at *Duruhn*: *Dſanſait* finding this to be a reaſonable Propoſal, took four of his beſt Horſes, one of which he gave *Hadſim Sultan*; and having loaded the two others with Proviſions, he mounted himſelf upon the fourth. In this manner they went and paſs'd the River *Amu*, near *Urgens*, and arriv'd ſafely at *Duruhn*. Hadſin Sultan *diſcovered and flies to* Duruhn.

Shortly after the Arrival of *Hadſim Chan* in that Town, *Din Mahamet Sultan*, accompany'd by all the Princes of the Poſterity of *Amunak Chan*, who had taken Refuge with him, took the Field with an Army, and march'd towards *Urgens*. At his Arrival in the Country of *Gordiſh*, he demanded of the Chief of the Tribe of *Adaklichiſſer-illi*, a Reinforcement of 1000 Din Mahamet *takes the Field with three thouſand Men.*

Men out of the braveſt *Turkmanns* of his Tribe; and having obtained that Aid, he continued his March with his ſmall Army of 3000, as far as the Country of *Piſhga*. In this Place he held a Council upon the Enterprize which he had to form; and becauſe it appear'd that their Forces were too few to go and attack *Abdulaſis Sultan*, Son of *Obeit Chan*, in the City of *Urgens*, and that beſides they had no Boats to paſs the River *Amu*, ſuppoſing they were willing to undertake ſo raſh an Attempt, 'twas reſolv'd to take the Rout of *Chajuk*, becauſe there was no need of Boats on that ſide; and that they might hope to arrive there without the Enemy having any Tidings of their March, ſeeing few People dwelt upon that Road.

Gihon *formidable towards* Chajuk.

At their Arrival at *Chajuk*, they took it without much Difficulty, and put to Death the Commander of the Town with 15 or 16 Men of his Gariſon. Upon this News, the Governor of *Haſſaraſſap* went to *Abdulaſis Sultan* at *Urgens*, and appris'd him of what had happen'd at *Chajuk*; adding, that he did not doubt but *Din Mahamet Sultan* was already at *Haſſaraſſap*. Upon this Report, *Abdulaſis Sultan* fearing to fall into the hands of that Prince, in caſe he ſhould ſtay longer at *Urgens*, quitted that Town off-hand, and went to his Father in *Great Bucharia*. *Obeit Chan* having immediately aſſembled a numerous Army, march'd towards *Urgens*, but arriving at the Habitations of a Tribe of the *Turkmanns*, called the *Tribe* of *Caramit*, he ſtopt there with part of his Army, and ſent two of his Generals with the reſt of his Forces to *Urgens:* Of theſe two Generals of *Obeit Chan*, one was ſprung from the Tribe of the *Oklians*, and called *Biſam*; and the other from the Tribe of the *Kunkurats*, andnamed *Haphis*.

Takes Chajuk.

Abdulaſis *flies from* Urgens *into* Bucharia.

Obeit Chan *marches towards* Urgens.

At

At the firſt Advice of the March of the Enemy, *Din Mahamet Sultan* march'd out of *Chajuk* and took the Field to go meet them; but the Princes, his Relations, and the other Lords which accompany'd him in that Expedition, were unanimouſly of Opinion, that ſeeing they had not in all above 10000 Men, and that they knew the Enemy's Army was more than 40000 ſtrong, it would quite diſhearten them to fight againſt ſuch unequal Forces; that conſequently the beſt Courſe they could take on this Occaſion was to return to *Duruhn*; whereas *Obeit Chan*, who had not return'd into the Country of *Charaſ'm*, if he had not been inform'd that they deſign'd to make themſelves Maſters of the Town of *Urgens*, would no ſooner perceive their Retreat, than he would return himſelf alſo; and that then they might come back without Noiſe and take that Town. *Debate whether they ſhould advance or retreat.*

But *Din Mahamet Sultan* firmly adhering to his Reſolution of giving the Enemy Battle, 220 of the principal of his Men flung themſelves off their Horſes, and falling at his Feet, intreated him to return; nevertheleſs they could not make him change his Opinion: Some time after they renewed their Supplications, but with as little Succeſs as the firſt time. At laſt, when they had the third time light off their Horſes, and proſtrate on the Ground made the ſame Requeſt to him, *Din Mahamet Sultan* falling into a Paſſion, flung himſelf off his Horſe alſo, and taking up a Handful of Duſt, ſcatter'd it upon his Head, crying out, "I devote my Soul to "God, and my Body to the Earth;" and turning afterwards to the Lords that ſurrounded him, he ſaid to them, "I conſider my ſelf as "a dead Man; and if you eſteem your Lives "more precious than mine, I ſhall not hinder Din Mahamet *perſiſts in going to* Urgens.

" you to return: But if you will ſhare with me " the Glory which attends us, let us march." Having thereupon remounted his Horſe, he continued his March, and all his Army followed him, ſhedding Tears; ſo much were they prepoſſeſſed with the ill Succeſs of ſo deſperate an Undertaking.

Din Mahamet *advances againſt the Enemy.*

In the mean time, *Din Mahamet Sultan* having learned in his March that the Enemy had in the Night-time paſs'd by *Haſſaraſſap*, and that they would be upon his Back the next Day, he advanced in the Evening as far as a Pond, which was dry'd up, in the Country of *Gardanchaſt*, where he made his Army halt, reſolving to wait for the Enemy; and ſince that Battle they have given the Name of *Shikaſt Koli* to this Pond. At his Arrival in that Place, he rang'd his Troops along the Weſt-ſide of the Pond, and having had Notice before Day by his Advance-Guards, that the Enemies Army approach'd, he divided them into two Bodies; one of which he gave to *Juſſuph Sultan*, eldeſt Son of *Saphian Chan*, and put himſelf, accompany'd by *Hadſim Sultan*, Son of *Akattai Sultan*, at the Head of the others; nevertheleſs, he had the Precaution to ſend before, his Brother *Aly Sultan*, who was then but eight Years old, with an Eſcorte of ſix truſty Men, into a Place a little aſide from the Field of Battle, with Orders, that if they found they loſt the Day, they ſhould try ſome-how to ſave him, to the end there might remain at leaſt one Sprig of their Family.

Order of his Army.

Lies in Ambuſcade.

After which he poſted the two Bodies of his Army on both ſides of the Road, and waited for the Enemy with a profound Silence: They ſoon appear'd, having at their Head moſt of their Commanders, ſurrounded with 40 Flambeaux, which *Din Mahamet Sultan* let paſs without

without ſtirring: But as ſoon as thoſe were gone by, he fell all at once upon the Troops which followed them, and charg'd them ſo briſkly, that they were broken after ſome Reſiſtance, and obliged at length to fly notwithſtanding their great Superiority. This Victory was complete, for beſides a great Number who were killed, moſt of the Commanders and principal Officers of the Enemies Army fell into the Hands of *Din Mahamet Sultan*; not to mention a great Number of private Soldiers who were made Priſoners on that Occaſion, one of the Vaſſals of *Din Mahamet Sultan*, called *Togar Bayadur*, who was one of the Chiefs of the Tribe of *Kunkurats*, killed ſixty Men with his own Hand in this Battle. *Din Mahamet Sultan* himſelf, and *Hadſim Sultan* had advanced ſo far among the thickeſt of their Enemies, that the Bow of the firſt having been ſnatch'd from his ſide without perceiving it, he went on Sword in Hand; when *Hadſim Sultan*, who ſaw his Bow fall, recover'd it, and reſtored it to him; upon which *Din Mahamet Sultan* ſaid to him, "My "Brother, that which you have done to Day "for me, ſhall be the Knot of an everlaſting "Friendſhip between us." *Din Mahamet Sultan* was then 28 years of Age, and *Hadſim Sultan* 18.

Routs the Enemies Army.

Takes moſt of the Commanders Priſoners.

Din Mahamet Sultan having after the Battle cauſed all the Priſoners to be brought into his Preſence, demanded among other things, of *Haphis*, of the Tribe of the *Kunkurats*, who was one of the principal Lords of *Obeit Chan*'s Court, upon what account he had told his Maſter that thoſe of *Urgens* were not *Mahometans*, and that they had a different Faith from the true Believers: Whereupon that Lord falling at his Feet, anſwer'd, "'Tis at this Juncture I

" ſhall find whether you are true *Mahometans*, " or whether you be of a different Religion." Meaning, that if they pretended to be of the ſame Religion with them, they would pardon them. *Din Mahamet Sultan* made no Anſwer to this Diſcourſe, ſeeing that Report about the Religion of the People of *Urgens* was not ill-grounded at that time, becauſe of the Inclination they diſcover'd for the Religion of the *Perſians* *.

Priſoners exchanged. After an exact Muſter had been made of the Priſoners, *Din Mahamet Sultan* reſolv'd, by the Advice of the other Princes, to make an Exchange of the Priſoners of Diſtinction which they had taken in the Action, againſt *Kahl Sultan*, *Akattai Sultan*, and the other Princes and Perſons of Note who had been taken and ſent into *Great Bucharia* at the time *Avanaſh Chan* was made Priſoner. This Propoſal having been communicated to the Priſoners, they engaged themſelves by Oath to do their beſt to procure the Liberty of the fore-mentioned Princes, and that in caſe *Obeit Chan* would not conſent to it, they would all return with their Families and Effects to put themſelves under the Protection of their Conquerors. Thereupon *Din Mahamet Sultan* order'd Horſes to be given them, and named *Hadſim Sultan* to accompany them; being of Opinion, that as he chiefly ſollicited the Liberty of his Father, and other his near Relations, he would do all in his Power to ſucceed in his Commiſſion.

Akattai Sultan *and* Kahl Sultan *deliver'd up.* *Hadſim Sultan* underſtanding that *Obeit Chan* had return'd into his Dominions after the News of the Loſs of the Battle, follow'd him into

[* Usbecks *of* Chowarazm *and* Bucharia *averſe to the* Perſian *Sect, thoſe of* Urgens *inclined to it.*]

Grea

Great Bucharia, where he was very well receiv'd by *Obeit Chan*; who having been inform'd of the Convention that had been made upon the Buſineſs of the Exchange, gave immediate Orders that his Father *Akattai Sultan*, and the other Priſoners which had fallen to his Share ſhould be deliver'd up to him. Departing from thence, *Hadſim Sultan* went to *Dſuanmart Chan* at *Samarkant*, who likewiſe cauſed all the Priſoners to be reſtored to him that were comprehended in the Articles of Agreement; the Princes of *Hiſar*, where he went afterwards, did the ſame, and deliver'd to him out of hand *Kahl Sultan*, and the other Princes which they had. *Hadſim Sultan* after he had ſo happily executed his Commiſſion, return'd into the Country of *Charaſs'm*, and hearing on the Road that *Din Mahamet Sultan* had already poſſeſs'd the Town of *Urgens*, he went thither directly with all his exchang'd Priſoners, and fill'd every Body at his Arrival with great Joy. All this happened in the Year 949. *An. Dom.* 1542.

CHAP. IV.

Of Kahl Chan, Akattai Chan, Junus Chan, *and* Doſt Chan; *and of the Civil Wars among the divers Branches of the Poſterity of* Amunak.

THE Deſcendants of *Amunak* having recover'd by the Valour of *Din Mahamet Sultan* all the Towns of the Country of *Charaſs'm*, they conferr'd the Dignity of *Chan* upon *Kahl* *New Diviſion of* Chowarazm.

Kahl Sultan *elected* Chan.

Kahl Sultan, who fixt his Reſidence in the Town of *Urgens*, *Akattai Sultan* had the Town of *Vaſir*, *Hadſim Sultan* his Son had the Town of *Bagabat*, the Deſcendants of *Saphian Chan* had the Town of *Chajuk*, the Sons of *Buzuga Chan* had *Haſſaraſſap*, and *Din Mahamet Sultan* and his Brothers had the Towns of *Duruhn*, *Jaurſurdi* and *Naſai*.

Akattai Sultan *elected* Chan.

Kahl Chan dying after he had reigned ſome Years, his Brother *Akattai Sultan* ſucceeded him to the Dignity of *Chan*. This Prince gave the Town of *Kaht* to two Sons of *Kahl Chan*, called *Sheich Mahamet* and *Shanaſer*, and the Town of *Urgens* with the Subjects dependant on it to *Aly Sultan*, youngeſt Son of *Avanaſh Chan*, continuing himſelf always to reſide at *Vaſir*; but he did not long enjoy the ſovereign Authority, which happen'd in this manner.

We have related above, that *Saphian Chan* left five Sons at his Death; one of theſe five Brothers called *Aly Sultan*, was killed by the Orders of *Sultan Gaſi* in the manner we have ſeen. Another of them called *Agiſh Sultan* reſided during his Life in the Town of *Chodſan*, belonging to the Country of *Choraſſan*, which *Shah Tahmaſip* had made him a Preſent of, where he alſo died at length without leaving any Children. *Juſſuph Sultan* who was the eldeſt of thoſe five Brothers, having been let Blood one Day, the Vein happen'd to open in the Night while he ſlept, and gave him his Death by a total Evacuation of his Blood; inſomuch that there then remained of the five Sons of *Saphian Chan*, only *Junus* and *Paluanculi*, who were ſtill living.

Junus Sultan, who was a Prince of much Ambition and Courage, having eſpouſed the Daughter

ter of a certain *Bijaul* * of the *Mankatts*, called *Iſmael*, who was come to ſettle in the Country of *Charaſs'm*, departed one Day from *Chajuk*, accompany'd by Forty choſen Men, under Pretence of going to pay a Viſit to his Father-in-Law, whoſe uſual Abode was in the Neighbourhood of *Urgens:* In the Road, having paſſed to the North of *Kabt*, he went forward to the Town of *Tuk*, which he knew to be then empty, all the Inhabitants, as well of the Town and the Country about it being gone towards *Urgens* and *Vaſir*. Having arrived at *Tuk*, he got upon a Tower of the Town in the Morning, from whence he could diſcover *Urgens*; and upon this Occaſion, telling the Men which accompany'd him that he had a great Deſire to be once at *Urgens*, becauſe it was his Native Place; his Men reply'd, "That they were ready to "follow him wherever he would go:" Whereupon leaving *Tuk* in the Evening, he turn'd towards *Urgens* and arrived at Midnight at the Gate of the Town which looks towards the South. *Plot of* Junus.

You muſt know that *Aly Sultan* was not then at *Urgens*, but was gone to live in the Town of *Naſai*, after committing the Government of *Urgens* to his Brother *Machmut Sultan*, who was a very wicked Man. *Junus Sultan* having arriv'd at that Town, enter'd a-foot with his Men into the Ditch which ſurrounds it, after cauſing his Horſes to be put a little out of the way; and tho the Guard which uſed every Night to go the Rounds by Light of Flambeaux, came while theſe things were doing to patrol about the Ditch; he nevertheleſs found means to hide himſelf ſo well with his Men, that they perceived nothing of it: But as ſoon as the Junus *ſeizes* Urgens *by* *Stratagem.*

* *This Term denotes a Military Charge among the* Cara Kallpakks *and the* Tatars *of the* Caſatſhia Orda, *which comes pretty near that of Colonel among us.*

Guards were paſs'd by, he cauſed a long Pole to be reared againſt the Wall; by help of which, having all mounted one after the other, they went directly to the Houſe of *Machmut Sultan*, and after ſeizing his Perſon, *Junus Sultan* ſent him to *Vaſir*, to the Cuſtody of *Akattai Chan*, a Daughter of whom he had alſo married.

Akattai Chan *marches againſt* Junus.

Machmut Sultan being arrived at *Vaſir*, endeavour'd all he could to inſinuate to *Akattai Chan*, that ſeeing *Junus Sultan* his Son-in-Law had but Forty Men, and there being no likelihood that the *Usbecks* of *Urgens* would aſſiſt *Junus Sultan* againſt him, who was their *Chan* and lawful Maſter, he ought not to neglect that Opportunity of ſeizing the Town of *Urgens* for himſelf, and turn out *Junus Sultan*. At firſt *Akattai Chan* would not hearken to theſe Propoſals; nevertheleſs, as all the Lords of the Court never ceaſed importuning him to come into them, he ſuffer'd himſelf at length to be tempted by the Appearance of the infallible Succeſs of that Enterprize; and having taken the Field with what Troops he had in readineſs, he march'd towards *Urgens:* but when he was got to a Place, at a ſmall diſtance from the Town, where is to be ſeen the Tomb of a certain Saint called *Sheich Nadſmudin Cubru*, he there found *Junus Sultan*, who accompany'd by his Brother and his Couſins, the Sons of *Kahl Chan*, already expected him with a good Body of Troops; inſomuch, that they came to a Battle, wherein Fortune having decided in favour of *Junus Sultan*, *Akattai Chan* was obliged to think of ſaving himſelf by Flight.

Is defeated.

Akattai Chan *taken.*

On this Occaſion *Kaſim*, Son of *Junus Sultan*, by the Daughter of *Akattai Chan*, having taken upon him to purſue his Grandfather, cry'd out to him thrice, " Grandfather, where would " you

" you go in this hot Weather, you had better " reſt your ſelf to day under ſome Tree, where " you may ſhade your ſelf, and early To- " Morrow-morning continue your Journey :" But *Akattai Chan* anſwer'd him each time, " Your Father has a Heart as black as a Pot, " wherefore if your Intentions towards me be " good, leave me to continue my Road, and " do me no harm." Whereupon *Kaſim* finding he could not ſtop him by fair Means, forced him at length, whether he would or no, to go with him to *Urgens*, where he lodged him in the Houſe of an Inhabitant of the Town, called *Suleyman*, forbidding that he ſhould ſee any body.

Upon the Rumour of this Accident, all the *Usbecks* who dwelt about *Urgens* having tumultuouſly aſſembled, acknowledged *Junus Sultan* for their *Chan*, without conſulting the other Princes of the Poſterity of *Amunak* thereupon. Some days after, *Junus Chan* ſent to tell the Sons of *Akattai Chan*, who made their Abode at *Vaſir*; " The good Man, your Father, " having fled before us during the Noon-day " Heats, found himſelf attack'd with ſo vio- " lent a Cholick, that tho we had no Deſire " to take him, we were obliged, finding him " quite ſpent, to have him conveyed home with " us; and this Cholick has been already tor- " menting him fifteen days." But after the Departure of that Meſſenger, he ſent Four Men to the Houſe which ſerv'd for a Priſon to *Akattai Chan*, with Directions to bind his Hands and Feet, and impale him alive, taking all the Care imaginable that there ſhould be found no Marks of a violent Death upon his Body; to the end that his Sons might think the Cholick had carry'd him off: Which having been executed

Junus Sultan proclaimed Chan by a Faction of the Usbecks.

Akattai Chan murder'd.

cuted agreeable to his Intentions, he ſent the dead Body of *Akattai Chan* to *Vaſir*, with many Compliments to his Sons, expreſſing the Concern he was in at the Loſs which they had upon this Occaſion. Theſe are the Names of the ſix Sons of *Akattai Chan*, 1. *Hadſim*, 2. *Mahamut*, 3. *Pulat*, 4. *Timur*, 5. *Allaculi*, 6. *Suleyman*: The two eldeſt of theſe ſix Brothers, took up their Abode at that time at *Bagabat*, which depends upon *Choraſſan*; and the Four others at *Vaſir*.

Sons of Akattai Chan *march to* Urgens.

As ſoon as the News of the Death of *Akattai Chan* reach'd *Vaſir*, his Four Sons who were there at that time gave notice immediately to their two eldeſt Brothers, who reſided at *Bagabat*; and they agreed together to join all their Forces to go and revenge the Death of their Father. Purſuant to this Reſolution, the two eldeſt Brothers did not fail to ſet forward in time with their Troops to be at the Rendezvous by the Day appointed: But as ſoon as they had paſs'd the River *Amu*, *Junus Chan* not daring to wait for them at *Urgens*, fled into *Great Bucharia*, with his Brother and the Sons of *Kahl Chan*, his Couſins. On the Road moſt of his Men abandon'd him, and his Son *Kaſim* loſt his way in ſuch wiſe, that being accompany'd but by one Man, and not knowing either where he was, or which way to turn himſelf, he reſolv'd to lie hid all next day among the Reeds of a Pond, where he arrived that Night, that he might have time to conſider what to do. What embarraſs'd him moſt on this Occaſion was, that having ſo long a Journey to make, as was that into *Great Bucharia*, where his Father was gone to ſeek for Refuge, he was almoſt quite deſtitute of Proviſions: but the Man who was with him propos'd, that if he thought fit, he would

Junus Chan *flies into* Great Bucharia.

would go and try to get ſome, whilſt he might repoſe himſelf, expecting his Return; adding, that he did not believe he ran the leaſt Hazard, inaſmuch as he was not known by any body in thoſe Parts: *Kaſim* having conſented to this Propoſal, his Man, inſtead of going for Proviſion, went directly to *Urgens* to find *Hadſim Sultan*, and having diſcover'd to him the Place where the Son of *Junus Chan* lay hid, *Hadſim Sultan* ſent thither immediately ſome of his Men with Orders to bring him before him; which having been done accordingly, he cauſed him to be put to death off-hand; and ſince that time, they have given the Name of *Chanzungali* to that Pond. This Revolution happen'd in the Year 956. *Kaſim betrayed.* *Put to death.* *An. Dom.* 1549.

The Deſcendants of *Saphian Chan*, and of *Kahl Chan*, having been in this manner intirely ſtript of what they had in the Country of *Charaſs'm*, the Children of *Avanaſh Chan* continued in Poſſeſſion of the Towns which depended on *Choraſſan*. The Sons of *Akattai Chan* held *Urgens* and *Vaſir*; and the three Sons of *Buzzuga Chan*, called *Iſh*, *Doſt* and *Burum*, poſſeſſed themſelves of the Towns of *Chajuk*, *Haſſaraſſap* and *Kaht*: after which, they conferr'd the Dignity of *Chan* on *Din Mahamet Sultan*, who died after he had reigned ſome Years. We ſhall ſpeak more fully hereafter concerning this Prince. *A new Partition of the Towns of* Chowarazm. Din Mahamet Sultan *choſen* Chan.

After the Death of *Din Mahamet Chan*, they choſe *Doſt Sultan* for his Succeſſor in that Dignity: 'Tis true that *Iſh Sultan*, who was eldeſt of the Sons of *Buzzuga Chan*, was much more generous and courageous than his Brother *Doſt Chan*; but as he wanted Wit, and was ſuſpected as to his Religion, beſides that he loved Whoring to Exceſs; they rather choſe to have his Doſt Sultan *choſen* Chan.

his younger Brother for *Chan*, who was Gentle and Wiſe, than him who was too Ambitious and Paſſionate.

Iſh Sultan *marches to take* Urgens.

Iſh Sultan, little ſatisfy'd with his younger Brother's poſſeſſing the Town of *Chajuk*, and the Dignity of *Chan* in his Prejudice, deſired Aſſiſtance of his Brothers to put him in a Capacity to take the Town of *Urgens*; and having obtained ſome Succours from them, he ſet forward on his March towards it: but arriving in the Territory of *Zilpuk*, which belongs to the Country of *Kumkant*, he found *Hadſim Sultan* there; who having Notice of his Deſign, came to meet him with Forces much ſuperior to his own: whereupon *Iſh Sultan* went and took poſſeſſion of the Banks of a ſmall neighbouring River to ſecure his Men behind, and having cauſed his Front to be cover'd with a kind of Intrenchment made with his Chariots, he in that Condition expected his Enemy without ſtirring. *Hadſim Sultan* attack'd him at the beginning very vigorouſly; but *Iſh Sultan* defended himſelf ſo well, that he obliged *Hadſim Sultan*, after an Attack of eight Days, to come to an Accommodation with him. On this Occaſion *Iſh Sultan* put to a cruel Death all thoſe of the Tribes of the *Vigurs*, and the *Naimanns* which fell into his Hands, treating, on the contrary, very well all the Priſoners of other Tribes, even to the giving them Horſes to enable them to return home. He cauſed at his Return, all the *Vigurs* and *Naimanns* who dwelt about *Chajuk*, to be driven from thence, and ſettled the *Durmanns* in their room.

Attackt in the way and returns.

Marches towards Urgens *a ſecond time.*

Some Years after, *Iſh Sultan* form'd a new Enterprize againſt *Urgens*; but *Hadſim Sultan*, accompany'd by his Brothers, having taken the Field at the Head of a good Army, advanced again

again to meet him, and encounter'd him between the Town of *Tuk* and that of *Urgens*. *Iſh Sultan*, who before found the Advantage of ſecuring himſelf behind his Chariots, did not fail this time of covering himſelf alſo with them, as with an Intrenchment; and having in this manner fought for ſeven days againſt the ſuperior Forces of his Enemies, with almoſt an equal Loſs, he found Means in the Night, without Noiſe, to paſs out of his Intrenchment with all his Men, and go ſeize *Urgens*. *Hadſim Sultan*, knowing nothing of his Departure till after he had enter'd that City, where ſuch a Surprize was ſo little expected, that it was not without a kind of Miracle that the younger Brothers of *Hadſim Sultan*, who remained in that Town, could make their eſcape to *Vaſir*. The Moment *Iſh Sultan* ſaw himſelf Maſter of the Town, he ordered that all the *Vigurs* and *Naimanns* who dwelt there ſhould retire forthwith to *Vaſir*, without ſuffering them to carry with them the leaſt that might be of their Goods, which he diſtributed among his Troops; but he did not meddle with the Inhabitants of the other Tribes of the *Usbecks*, who were ſettled at *Urgens*.

Surprizes Urgens.

In the mean time, *Hadſim Sultan* and *Iſh Sultan* did each his Endeavours to ſecure *Aly Sultan* in his Intereſt, who then reſided at *Naſai*; becauſe it appeared he would incline the Ballance to the ſide he was of: *Aly Sultan* having at laſt declared in favour of *Hadſim Sultan*, and having drawn with him into that Party, as the moſt juſt, *Abul Sultan*, Son of *Din Mahamet Chan*, thoſe two Princes came with conſiderable Forces to join *Hadſim Sultan*, and went and beſieged *Urgens*. *Iſh Sultan* defended himſelf in the beginning very well, but the Beſiegers at length giving a general Aſſault,

Urgens retaken.

Aſſault, *Iſh Sultan*, after having poſted his Men round the Walls, mounted on Horſeback the readier to tranſport himſelf wherever his Preſence was neceſſary. On this Occaſion, a *Durmann* called *Tin-Aly*, who had a private Grudge to him, on Account of having raviſh'd his Siſter, having wounded the *Sultan*'s Horſe in the Flank with an Arrow, the Horſe caper'd and threw *Iſh Sultan* ſo violently upon the Ground, that he broke one of his Legs. Whereupon a *Sart*, who came with him from *Chajuk*, and was called *Hapculi-Paluan*, ran immediately to help him up, and did his beſt to ſet him on Horſeback again: but the Enemy who had in the Interim ſcaled the Walls, coming upon them, ſlew them both, *Iſh Sultan* as well as *Hapculi-Paluan*.

Iſh Sultan *ſlain.*

Chajuk *taken, and* Doſt Chan *put to death.*

After having in this manner taken the City of *Urgens*, the Confederate Princes ſent immediately an Army to *Chajuk*, which they likewiſe took, and put to death *Doſt Chan*, the Brother of *Iſh Sultan*, who was Maſter of that Town. *Iſh Sultan* left two Sons at his Death, called *Shah Culi* and *Tahir*, whom *Hadſim Chan*, and his Confederates, ſent into *Great Bucharia*, where they died afterwards without leaving any Children; inſomuch that the Poſterity of *Buzzuga Chan* became quite extinct with them. This Revolution happen'd in the Year 965, called *Gilki*, or *the Horſe*.

An. Dom. 1557.

The ſame Year *Hadſim Sultan* * was declared *Chan* at the Age of thirty five, and went to

[* Ant. Jenkinſon, *who in this Year was at* Urgens, *tells us* Azim Chan *was then at* Selizure, *a Caſtle two day's Journey to the Weſt. This Obſervation hath led* de Liſle *into a Miſtake; who in his late Map of* Perſia, *for the Uſe of the preſent* French *King, remarks at* Selizure, *that it is the Reſidence of a* Chan.]

reſide

reſide at *Vaſir*; and ſeeing, of all the Deſcendants of *Amunak*, there were only the Children of *Avanaſh Chan*, and *Akattai Chan*, at that time in the Country of *Charaſs'm*, they gave the Towns of *Urgens*, *Haſſaraſſap* and *Kaht* to *Aly Sultan*, youngeſt Son of *Avanaſh Chan*, two of the Sons of *Akattai Chan*, viz. *Allaculi* and *Suleyman*, died about that time. Of the four others that ſtill remained, *Mahamut Sultan* lived continually with his Brother *Hadſim Chan*, becauſe they were both by the ſame Mother. But *Pulat Sultan*, and *Timur Sultan*, who were alſo by one Mother, had each of them a Moiety of the City of *Chajuk*, and they aſſigned over and above to *Pulat Sultan*, the *Turkman* Tribe of *Uluktu-baconaſh* for his Support, and to *Timur*, that of *Cara-bugaul*.

CHAP. V.

Of Din Mahamet Chan, *and of the other Deſcendants of* Avanaſh Chan.

I HAVE ſaid above, that *Din Mahamet Chan* with his Brothers, was in Poſſeſſion of the Towns of *Duruhn* and *Jaurſurdi*; but becauſe he was a Prince that could not ſit idle, he no ſooner ſaw himſelf in Poſſeſſion of thoſe Towns, but he began to make War upon the *Perſians*, who were in Poſſeſſion of the Towns of the Country of *Choraſſan*, which obliged *Shah Tahmaſip* to ſend thither an Army, which took from him the Town of *Jaurſurdi*: After which the *Perſian* Troops having retir'd, *Din Mahamet Chan* took Horſe, and coming to

Jaurſurdi *taken by the* Perſians.

Caſwin. *Gaſwin* where *Shah Tahmaſip* then kept his Reſidence, he pray'd him to reſtore to him the Town of *Jaurſurdi*; but the *Shah* turn'd the Diſcourſe to other Matters, and would not hear ſpeak of that Affair.

Din Mahamet Chan *counterfeits the* Shah's *Seal.* *Din Mahamet Chan* having thereupon got a Seal to be engraved at *Gaſwin*, with the Name of the *Shah*, in every Reſpect like that which *Shah Tahmaſip* made uſe of, he wrote a Letter in the Name of the *Shah* to the Commander of *Jaurſurdi*, importing, that he ſhould deliver up the Town to *Din Mahamet Chan*, and come himſelf to Court. He afterwards ſealed that Letter with the Seal which he had graved for that Purpoſe, and kept it for the Uſe he intended to make of it. A few days after *Shah Tahmaſip* having gone a Hunting, *Din Mahamet Chan* made a Shew as if he would follow him; but upon the firſt Opportunity which he found of getting out of ſight of the Company, he ſtruck into the Road of *Jaurſurdi* with his Men, and having arrived there, went ſtraitway to deliver the pretended Letter of the *Shah* to the *Perſian* Commander; who to ſhew his Readineſs to obey it, did not fail to deliver up the Town the ſame Day, and return towards his Maſter: But as ſoon as he was out of the Town, *Din Mahamet Chan* ordered the Gates to be ſhut, and all the *Perſians* that were therein to be put to the Sword.

Recovers Jaurſurdi *by a forged Letter.*

Shah Tahmas *marches againſt* Din Mahamet Chan. Upon this News *Shah Tahmaſip* took the Field with a conſiderable Army to revenge himſelf for the Cheat *Din Mahamet Chan* had put upon him; but when he had arriv'd in the Territory of *Meſhed*, near a ſmall River called *Cara-ſu*, his Advance-Guard gave him twice Intelligence that *Din Mahamet Chan* was arrived in the Camp with a Retinue of fifty Horſe.

Shah

Shah Tahmaſip looked upon this Information to be ſo ridiculous that he would not give Credit to it, till they brought him word that Prince was at his Tent Door. *Din Mahamet Chan* entring at the ſame time, fell on his Knees before the *Shah*; who was ſo ſurprized at this extraordinary Boldneſs, that not ſatisfy'd with putting his Right Hand upon the Left Shoulder of *Din Mahamet Chan*, he thruſt his Left into the *Chan*'s Boſom, to try if his Heart did not beat a little; but perceiving no Motion there, more than what's uſual, he could not avoid admiring the Intrepidity of that Prince, and on that account he pardon'd him all that was paſt, and left him in the Poſſeſſion of the Town of *Jaurſurdi:* After which the *Shah* having given him a magnificent Feaſt, ſent him home next Day loaded with rich Preſents, and conducted him in Perſon ſome diſtance from the Camp: After which he returned with his Army to the Country of *Irak*.

Bold Action of Din Mahamet Chan.

Some time after, *Obeit Chan* of *Great Bucharia*, having taken the Town of *Meru*, gave the Command of it to a Chief of the Tribe of the *Naimanns*, called *Julumbi*, and carried the *Perſian* Commander of that Town with him into *Great Bucharia* as Priſoner of War. In the mean time, ſome envious of the Fortune of *Julumbi* having found Means to render him ſuſpected to *Obeit Chan*, he ſent immediate Orders for him to come before him: but the Commander of *Meru*, informed of the ill Offices which had been done him with the *Chan*, was not over haſty to obey thoſe Orders; thinking, that by gaining Time, he might find ſome favourable Opportunity of making known his Innocence to the *Chan:* Whereupon *Obeit Chan* believing that he really deſigned to revolt, ſent an Army of 30000

Meru taken by Obeit Chan.

Men againſt him to bring him to his Duty. This ſo unexpected News having put *Julumbi* to his laſt Shifts, he called in *Din Mahamet Chan* to his Succour, who ſet forwards forthwith for *Meru:* but in regard he had but very few Troops with him, he ordered his Men that each of them ſhould cut three ſmall Trees, and fix one on each ſide of his Body, and the third at the Tail of his Horſe; having afterwards cauſed them to march at a great diſtance from one another; any one would have believed, to ſee the Marks which they made upon the ſoft and marſhy Ground of that Country, that a great Army had paſſed that way.

Stratagem of DinMahamet Chan.

In the mean time the Generals of *Obeit Chan* being informed that *Julumbi* expected Succours from *Din Mahamet Chan*, ſent Spies to get Intelligence of his March, and inform themſelves of the Number of his Troops. The Spies, at their Return, unanimouſly reported that *Din Mahamet Chan* was on the March with a numerous Army, which plainly appeared by the Road thro' which they came. Whereupon the Generals of *Obeit Chan* reſolved to return with their Army as faſt as they could before they had ſeen any Enemy, fearing that this numerous Army of *Din Mahamet Chan*, coming to join the Troops of *Julumbi*, they could not avoid being overcome by the great Numbers of the Enemy. After which, *Din Mahamet Chan* having taken Poſſeſſion of the Town of *Meru*, fixt his Reſidence for the remainder of his Life.

Din Mahamet Chan *takes Poſſeſſion of* Meru.

And makes it his Reſidence.

Din Mahamet Chan was a Prince, who beſides the other Heroick Virtues which he poſſeſſed in a high degree, was extremely generous, gracious and eloquent; and withal, had a very peculiar Brightneſs of Wit. He died in the Town of *Meru* in the Year 960, called *Sigir*,

Character of Din Mahamet Chan.

An. Dom. 1552.

gir, or the *Cow*, at the Age of Forty Years. He left behind him two Sons, the eldeſt of which called *Saganda Mahamet*, was not in his right Senſes, and the youngeſt called *Abul Sultan:* As much diſordered as the eldeſt of theſe two Brothers was in his Intellects, he went to his Father on a time when he had a great many People with him, and aſked him whether it was by his Orders that they gave the Name of *Sultan* to his younger Brother, and called him only by his proper Name: His Father having no Anſwer to make him thereupon, one of his Lords called *Turumzi*, who was a Chief of the *Turkmanns*, told him he ought not to wonder at that, ſeeing that he who was the eldeſt having been born in the Life-time of his Grandfather *Avanaſh Chan*, they could not give him any other Name than what he had; whereas his Brother having been born ſince his Father was in poſſeſſion of divers Towns and Provinces, they were accuſtomed from his Birth to give him the Name of *Sultan*. This Explanation, tho bad enough, ſatisfy'd *Saganda Mahamet*, who dying ſome time after, left one Son, of whom we know not the Name, who had the Town of *Meru* for his Share; but his own Domeſticks cut his Throat in his Sleep, when he was but twenty three Years old. He left no Heirs at his Death.

His Children.

Story of Saganda Mahamet.

After the Death of *Din Mahamet Chan*, his youngeſt Son *Abul Sultan* ſucceeded him in all his Domains, and reigned ſeveral Years with much Wiſdom and Conduct: At length he raiſed a great Army, and made an Irruption into the Country of *Choraſſan*, accompany'd by his only Son, whoſe Name we know not; but arriving at the Town of *Meſhed*, he detach'd his Son with the beſt part of his Army to penetrate

Abul Sultan ſucceeds in all his Father's Domains, but not as Chan.

netrate deeper into the Country, and returned himſelf towards *Meru* with the few Troops which he kept to guard his Perſon, after having ſpent twenty days about *Meſhed.* in the mean time the Son of *Abul Sultan* having advanced as far as a River called *Cara-ſu*, which is to the Weſt of *Meſhed*, he there found a General of the *Perſians*, who came with a great Army to meet him in Battle; and the two Armies coming to Blows, that of *Abul Sultan* was defeated, and his Son loſt his Life, with 10000 of his Men. His Father, upon hearing this ſad News, grieved ſo much, that he fell dangerouſly ill beyond the Help of a Phyſician, the Affliction which he felt for the Loſs of his Son cauſing all his Diſorder.

Son killed.

Hiſtory of his She Slave.

On this Occaſion, there happen'd to be a Woman at *Meru*, who gave out that ſome Years before, the *Sultan* having ſent for her one Night to play on the Harp before him, took a Fancy to lye with her, and that ſhe had a Son by that Adventure: She added thereto, that that was the Reaſon why ſhe never would marry after, tho ſhe had ſeveral advantageous Offers that way: That till then ſhe never durſt publiſh that Matter for fear of drawing on her the Anger of the *Sultan*'s Spouſe, but that now the Prince was at the Point of Death, and that his Son was already four Years old, ſhe could no longer be ſilent in the Affair. Whereupon one of the Phyſicians, who paſſed for the moſt ſkilful in the Country, order'd the *Sultan* and the Child alſo to be undreſt, and having laid the Child upon the Belly of the dying *Sultan*, he had them both covered in that Condition with a Coverlet; after which he began to cry out with all his Force in the Ears of the *Sultan*, who had already almoſt loſt his Hearing: *Sultan, behold*

a Son of yours! And having continued afterwards to do the ſame thing three times a day, the *Sultan* recruited by little and little, and at length quite recover'd his former Health: After which he owned this Child for his Son, and gave him the Name of *Nur Mahamet*.

Abul Sultan dying, *Nur Mahamet* ſucceeded him in all his Dominions; but after he had poſſeſſed them ſome Years, all the Princes of the Houſe of *Hadſim Chan*, who were in the Poſſeſſion of the Towns of the Country of *Charaſſam*, united together againſt him, under Pretence that they would not have it ſaid they had the Son of a Strumpet for their Brother and Relation. *Nur Mahamet* finding himſelf in no Condition to reſiſt ſo much Forces joined together, was obliged to ſue for Protection to *Obeit Chan* of *Great Bucharia*, and to deliver up to him the Towns of *Meru*, *Naſai*, *Jaurſurdi* and *Duruhn*, which were the four Towns that belonged to him; imagining that *Obeit Chan* would leave him in the Poſſeſſion of them, and be content with his paying him a certain Tribute yearly: But *Obeit Chan* after having placed good Gariſons in them, and by that Precaution baffled the Deſigns of the Princes of the Houſe of *Hadſim Chan*, did not ſpeak of giving up any of 'em to *Nur Mahamet*; which having ſenſibly touch'd him, he quitted the Court of *Obeit Chan*, and went to *Urgens* to the Princes of the Houſe of *Hadſim Chan*, who received him very well, and kept him with them for five Years. Nur Mahamet *ſucceeds* Abul Sultan.

At length *Obeit Chan* dying, and *Abdula Chan* having ſucceeded to the Scepter of *Great Bucharia*, * Abdalla Chan *ſucceeds* Obeit Chan.

* Abdula Chan *deſcended from the ſecond Son of* Abulgar Chan, *called* Chodſa Mahamet Sultan, *who was the Uncle of*

charia, *Nur Mahamet* went to recover the Poſſeſſion of the four Towns which *Obeit Chan* had uſurp'd from him, in hopes that time would not fail to furniſh him with ſome favourable Opportunity of making Peace with *Abdula Chan*, who was marry'd to his Aunt, by the Father's ſide, the Daughter of *Din Mahamet Chan*, by whom he had already a Son called *Abdulmomin*. This Enterprize having ſucceeded to his Wiſh, he put to the Sword all the *Usbecks* which he found in theſe Towns, and eſtabliſh'd the *Sarts* and *Turkmanns* in their ſtead.

Meru *ſubdued by* Shah Abas.

But *Shah Abas* * *Maſi* of *Perſia*, willing on his ſide alſo to profit by the Death of *Obeit Chan*, came in Perſon to beſiege *Meru* with a powerful Army, and having at length made himſelf Maſter of that Town after a Siege of forty days, *Nur Mahamet*, who had been ſo imprudent as to ſuffer himſelf to be ſhut up there, fell into his hands; after which having found no Difficulty in taking *Naſai*, *Duruhn* and *Jaurſurdi*, which were the three other Towns of the Dominion of *Nur Mahamet*, he placed therein ſtrong Gariſons, and ſent *Nur Mahamet* to *Shiras*, where

of Shabacht Sultan, *and he was a great Grandſon of this laſt, agreeable to what our Author relates thereupon*, p. 210. *ſo alſo, he was not of the Race of* Burga Sultan, *as he gives us to underſtand*, p. 220.

* *'Tis of* Shah Abas I. *ſurnamed* The Great, *that our Author ſpeaks in this Place: That Prince was Grandſon of* Shah Tamas I. *and Son of* Shah Mahamet Chodabende, *who wore the Crown of* Perſia *but ſeven Years.*

Shah Abas I. *aſcended the Throne in the Year* 1587, *and died* 1629, *after he had reigned forty two Years with much Glory. 'Twas this Prince who put the Kingdom of* Perſia *in that flouriſhing Condition, in which it appeared for above an Age, and in which it would have ſtill continued if his Succeſſors had not ſince then degenerated exceedingly from the Virtue of that Great Prince. See* Olearius, *and* Pietro della Valle, Delle Conditioni di Shah Abas.

he

he afterwards finiſh'd his days; and with him ended the Poſterity of *Din Mahamet Chan.*

Of three Sons which *Avanaſh Chan* left at his Death, *Din Mahamet Chan* of whom we have ſpoken was the eldeſt; the ſecond was called *Machmut*, and ſurnamed *Sari Machmut*, that is to ſay, *Machmut the yellow.* 'Tis to be obſerved, that among all the Deſcendants of *Amunak* there was only *Machmut Sultan* who was of a yellowiſh Complexion; all the reſt of the Princes of that Houſe being of a fine brown. *Machmut Sultan* was a Prince addicted to all ſorts of Vices; he loved Drink ſo much, that being one Day at a Man's Houſe where he was drinking *Braga*, and ſome body coming to inform him that the Enemies Troops appeared near at hand, he, while all the reſt ran to their Horſes with a great deal of unconcern, took a Knife and mark'd all the Pots which had *Braga* in them, recommending to the Hoſt to take great Care of thoſe Pots, to the end he might give him a good Account of them at his Return; which ſhewed that his exceſſive Debauches had already diſturbed his Reaſon, and in truth he died ſoon after without leaving any Children.

Machmut Sultan, *ſecond Son of* Avanaſh Chan.

A great Debauchee.

Aly Sultan was the youngeſt of the three Sons of *Avanaſh Chan*, and poſſeſſed at divers times the Towns of *Naſai*, *Jaurſurdi*, *Urgens*, *Haſſaraſſap* and *Kaht*, with all the Subjects which depended on them. He was accuſtomed every Year, about the beginning of Spring, to croſs the River *Amu* and to incamp about the Frontiers of the Country of *Choraſſan*, where he uſually paſſed the Summer, ſending Parties from time to time into the Lands of *Iſtarabat* and *Choraſſan*, to prey upon the *Perſians*; and at the beginning of Autumn he return'd to *Urgens*. He muſter'd all the *Usbecks* which were in his

Aly Sultan *third Son of* Avanaſh Chan.

How they pay their Soldiers.

Service every Year, of whom he kept very exact Liſts; each of them had ſixteen Sheep a Year for his Pay, to which he allotted the Contribution-Sheep which he received from the *Turkmanns*; and when there were not enough of them, he ſupply'd the Want by the Booty-Sheep which his Parties carry'd off in the Summer from the *Perſians*.

Shah Tahmas *ſends an Army againſt him.*

Shah Tahmaſip having been inform'd on all hands of the extraordinary Ravages which the Parties of *Aly Sultan* made yearly on the Lands under his Juriſdiction, ſent at length one of his Generals called *Bader Chan*, with 12000 Men towards the Frontiers of *Choraſſan*, with Orders to fight *Aly Sultan* wherever he ſhould meet with him: And to prevent that Prince being informed by his Spies of his Deſign, he engaged *Bader Chan* to keep his Inſtructions ſecret till he ſhould find he had it in his Power to execute them. In the mean time *Aly Sultan*, who ſuſpected nothing of the Matter, had enter'd according to his uſual Cuſtom with ſome Troops into the Country of *Iſtarabat*, in order to oblige the *Turkmann* Tribe of *Okli Koklan* to pay him Contribution. *Bader Chan* who got News of it at his Arrival at *Baſtam*, not failing thereupon to take without delay the Rout of the Country of *Iſtarabat: Aly Sultan* having been informed of the Approach of the *Perſian* Army, was indeed a little ſurprized at it at firſt, but did not loſe his Courage for all that; and in regard he had run too great a Riſk to have retired in the Face of the Enemy, he went to poſſeſs himſelf of the Banks of the River of *Kurgan*, reſolving to expect the Enemy there without ſtirring.

Deſcription of the River Kurgan.

The *Kurgan* is a River very difficult to paſs, being every where equally rapid and deep, and having

having the Banks extremely high, except in ſome few Places where one may find the Bottom, and ford it on Horſeback. I can ſpeak by experience, for I have paſſed this River often, and found that the Banks are in many Places above 100 Cubits high. Upon the Banks of this River *Aly Sultan* poſted the moſt advantageouſly he could the 3000 Men of which his ſmall Army conſiſted; and as he had with him a great Number of Chariots, with many Horſes and other Beaſts, he cauſed theſe laſt to be well ty'd behind the Line upon the Banks of the River, and employed the Chariots to cover the Front of his Troops inſtead of an Intrenchment.

In this Poſture he expected the *Perſians*, who came to attack him ſeveral times with much Violence; but as they had only Cavalry, and the Soldiers of *Aly Sultan* defended themſelves bravely, they could get no Advantage of them: Whereupon one of the Chiefs of the *Turkmanns* called *Aba-beg*, who had followed *Aly Sultan* in that Expedition, impatient to ſee no end of this Fight, ſallyed out of the Incloſure of the Chariots with the *Turkmanns* of the Tribe of *Okli* who were under his Command, and might make about 300 Men, ſaying he would go and charge the Enemy behind while *Aly Sultan* attack'd them in Front: but after his Departure the principal Officers of *Aly Sultan* were of Opinion he ſhould not have rely'd on *Aba-beg*, and his *Turkmanns*, and that it was ill done to let them go out of the Intrenchments, becauſe there was a great Probability they went to join the Enemy. *Aly Sultan* who was preſent at all theſe Reaſonings little minded them, and made anſwer, *Patience*! if they are gone to join the Enemy I put my Confidence in God, who will find a way to deliver us out of this imminent Danger,

Attack'd in vain by the Perſians.

Aba-beg *the* Turkmann *makes a Sally.*

Danger, and it may be the Enemy have yet need of thoſe 300 Men, beſides the 12000 which they have already.

Aly Sultan *ſallies to ſupport* Aba-beg.

But *Aba-beg*, incapable of ſuch a Treachery, had already began the Fight with the *Perſians* at the very Juncture that they were ſpeaking ſo much to his Diſadvantage before *Aly Sultan*; for the *Perſians* doubting his Deſign, came and attack'd him thrice with ſo much Vigur, that he had been at length oppreſs'd by the Numbers of the Enemy, if *Aly Sultan* perceiving it in time had not ſallyed out of his Intrenchment immediately and charged them in front; which having put them into Diſorder they were obliged to betake themſelves to Flight, after having left the beſt part of their Men upon the Field of Battle, and *Aly Sultan* having purſued them till far in the Night, *Bader Sultan* had much ado to ſave himſelf from this Defeat, with a very few of his Men. On this Occaſion they took ſo great a Number of Horſes from the Enemy, that *Aly Sultan* having made a Preſent to his 'Squire, called *Mirachar*, of every ninth Horſe of thoſe which fell to his ſhare, *Mirachar* had 700 for himſelf; not to mention the Horſes which fell in Diviſion to the Chiefs and Soldiers as their due.

Perſians *put to Flight.*

Aly Sultan *invades* Perſia.

Fifteen Years after this *Aly Sultan* aſſembled a fine Army to make an Invaſion into *Perſia*, and having advanced as far as *Zengell* or the *Deſart*, which lies beyond *Chodſan*, he reſolved to paſs the Winter thereabouts and go in queſt of the *Perſians* at the beginning of Spring; but about the middle of Winter he fell ill of a contagious Ulcer which broke out between the Shoulders; and as he was ſo baſhful that he would not ſuffer any body to ſee it, the Lords who accompany'd him in that Expedition were obliged

obliged to uſe Force and have the Clothes cut over the Part affected in order to come at it. Nevertheleſs whatever Care could be taken to cure him, there was no doing it, and he died at length of that Ulcer at the Age of forty Years, which happened in the Year 979, called *Sigir* or the Cow. *His Death An. Dom.* 1571.

Aly Sultan was a Prince of ſo much Merit, that *Hadſim Chan*, his Couſin, often ſaid of him, that among all the Deſcendants of *Jadigar Chan*, he had not his Equal either in Bravery and Liberality, or in Sincerity, Modeſty, and eſpecially in the Art of Reigning. He gave at his Death a laſt Proof of his Baſhfulneſs in this, that one of his Domeſticks called *Atabai*, having a mind to try whether his Legs began to grow cold, *Aly Sultan* would not let him, by reaſon that having in all his Life never ſuffered any one either to ſee or touch his naked Body, he would not begin to ſuffer him when he was dying. *His Character.*

His Juſtice.

He did ſpeedy Juſtice to thoſe who demanded it of him, of which there are two Inſtances remarkable enough. One day when he had enter'd with his Troops into the Country of *Choraſſan*, it happened that one of his Men called *Togaizi*, having loſt his Horſe, ſent his Brother in ſearch of him: That Man returning to the Camp after having found his Brother's Horſe, had a Sheep's-Head hung at his Saddle-bow, which having been obſerved by another Man, he came and laid Claim to it, pretending he had loſt it, but he who had the Head would not give it up, alledging that he had found it. This Affair having been brought before *Aly Sultan*, he order'd him who ſaid he had found the Sheep's-head to be hang'd off-hand, taking it for granted that he had ſtolen it from his Comrade. Another time his Troops paſſing by

by the ſide of a Field ſowed with *Arbouſes* *, one of his Men called *Zahara* went and took two of them; but the Man to whom that Field belong'd having made his Complaint to *Aly Sultan*, he immediately order'd a Poſt to be ſet up near the Field of *Arbouſes*, and him who had taken two of them to be hang'd upon it, without ſtirring from the Place till he had ſeen the Thief die.

His Children.

Aly Sultan left two Sons, the eldeſt of which called *Iskander*, died ſix Months after his Father, and the youngeſt called *Sandſer*, was diſturbed in his Brain. Nevertheleſs a Lord of the Tribe of the *Naimanns*, called *Kul-Mahamet*, got him the Poſſeſſion of the Town of *Naſai*; and that People might not perceive he was diſorder'd in his Senſes, he contrived that the *Sultan* ſhould not ſhew himſelf above once a Week in publick, while the aforeſaid Lord took care of the publick Affairs in the Name of *Sandſer Sultan*, and did him the Honour of all the Orders which he gave for that purpoſe. *Sandſer Sultan* having reigned ten Years in that manner, died without leaving Heirs.

Sanger.

[* Jenkinſon *calls them* Carbuſes.]

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Of Hadſim Chan, *and the other Deſcendants of* Akattai Chan.

Akattai Chan's Poſterity.

WE have ſaid above that *Akattai Chan* left ſix Sons, *viz.* 1. *Hadſim Sultan*, 2. *Mahamut*, 3. *Pulat*, 4. *Timur*, 5. *Allaculi*, 6. *Suleymann*; this laſt died at the Age of eighteen Years, and his Brother *Allaculi* at twenty three. *Mahamut Sultan*, the Second of theſe two Brothers, died at the Age of forty Years and left ſix Sons, 1. *Mahamut Sultan*, 2. *Amin*, 3. *Aly*, 4. *Mahamet Amin*, 5. *Arab*, 6. *Akbaba*. Of theſe ſix Sons of *Mahamut Sultan* there were two, *viz.* *Amin* and *Mahamet Amin*, who died ſoon after their Father. *Amin* left no Children, but *Mahamet Amin* left two Sons, the eldeſt of which was called *Shah Aly*, and the youngeſt *Shabacht*: and the other four Sons of *Mahamut Sultan* had each a Son; but having fallen all four with their Children, who were yet very young, and the two Sons of their Brother *Mahamet Amin*, into the hands of *Abdula Chan* of *Great Bucharia*, upon an Occaſion which we ſhall relate hereafter, he put them all to death; and the Wives of *Arab* and *Aly* being with Child when this Misfortune happen'd to them, *Abdula Chan* cauſed them to be cloſely guarded; and one of them having been deliver'd of a Son, he cauſed him alſo to be put to death the Minute he was born; but the other being a Daughter, he ſpared her. *Timur Sultan*, the fourth Son of *Akattai Chan*, died alſo at the Age of Forty, and left three Sons, called, 1. *Mahamet Sultan*, 2. *Cadir Birdi*, 3. *Abulgair*, whom *Abdulla* alſo cauſed

Abdalla Chan *of* Great Bucharia.

cauſed to be put to death: *Pulat Sultan*, the third Son of *Akattai Chan*, had four Sons, 1. *Baba Sultan*, 2. *Hamſa*, 3. *Koiſi*, 4. *Paluanculi*; the three firſt of whom, with their Father, *Abdula Chan* ordered to be put to death; and the fourth, *viz. Paluanculi* died five Years after.

Pulat Sultan. *Pulat Sultan* was not at all in his right Senſes, wherefore *Hadſim Chan* his Brother had committed the publick Affairs at *Chajuk*, where *Pulat Sultan* reſided, to a Lord of the Tribe of the *Vigurs* called *Indebai*: *Timur Sultan* had no more Wit than he, but he knew better how to behave himſelf, and joined to a ſolid Conduct in the Affairs of Government much Bravery on warlike Occaſions. This Prince never went to eat at the Houſe of any one whatſoever; and one day that he was come from *Haſſaraſſap*, where he uſually reſided, to *Chajuk* to ſee his Brother *Pulat Sultan*, the aforeſaid Lord of the Tribe of the *Vigurs*, who on account of *Pulat Sultan's* Indiſpoſition had the Adminiſtration of his Affairs, came as he was taking Horſe to beg the Favour of him to return and eat a Morſel with him; adding, he had ſome reaſon to flatter himſelf that he would not refuſe him that Honour, ſeeing he was one of his eldeſt Domeſticks, and that it would be a Glory which himſelf only could boaſt of, that he who went to eat at no Man's Houſe, had not diſdained to go and eat a Bit with him; but *Timur Sultan* taking off a Robe of Cloth of Gold fur'd with *Zibelins*, which he wore at that time becauſe it was Winter, he made a Preſent of it to *Indebai*, inſtead of anſwering him, and departed immediately.

***Cuſtom of* Timur Sultan.**

***Story of* Timur Sultan.** This is the Reaſon why *Timur Sultan* never went to eat with any one: That Prince having one Day when he was about fifteen Years of

Age, taken Horſe to ride about the Town of *Vaſir*, it happen'd that entring into a neighbouring Village, a Countryman came to intreat the Honour of him to go take a Repaſt at his Houſe; *Timur Sultan* accepting of the Invitation, the Peaſant in order to treat him the better killed a fat Sheep, and at his Departure made him a Preſent of a good Gigot which was left. *Timur Sultan* at his Return to *Vaſir* went to offer that Gigot to his Father *Akattai Chan*, who asked him how he came by it, and underſtanding it was a Countryman that made him a Preſent of it; and that the Countryman, to treat him the handſomer, had cauſed a fat Sheep to be killed of which that Gigot was the Remains; his Father reply'd, 'I am now fifty Years 'old, and never put any one to the leaſt Inconveniency to make me eat, and you who 'are but fifteen go already to eat with the Peaſants, who are obliged to kill Sheep to treat 'you; what will not you do when you are 'older? then they muſt kill Horſes and Cows 'to regale you, and your Vaſſals on their ſide 'wont fail to imitate you, and conſequently 'your poor Subjects will ſoon be reduced to 'beggery: I muſt in time put a ſtop to your 'Inclination of going to eat out of the Houſe.' And upon that having order'd him to be ſtrip'd, he gave him thirty Strokes with a Rod himſelf, which ſo mauled the poor *Timur Sultan*, that his Shirt was all bloody. As he came out from his Father, his Brother *Hadſim Sultan* met him, and ſeeing him all bloody aſked him what was the matter, and underſtanding what had happen'd to him, he approv'd at firſt what his Father had done on that Occaſion; but he adviſed him afterwards not to waſh himſelf, to the end he might preſent himſelf next day before his

his Father in that bloody Condition. *Timur Sultan* having follow'd that Council, *Akattai Chan* repented having ſo ſeverely handled him; and after exhorting him again not to fall into the ſame Fault, he made him a Preſent of the *Turkman* Tribe of *Ti-u-azi*, which might conſiſt of about five or ſix thouſand Families. It was upon this Occaſion that *Timur Sultan* made an Oath, that thenceforth he would go no more to eat with any body, and that he would not ſuffer any of his People to do the ſame. He was by the ſame Mother with his Brother *Pulat Sultan*, and as he was very piouſly inclined, he exceedingly loved virtuous and devout People: He had withal ſo excellent a Memory, that tho he cou'd neither write nor read, yet he kept an exact Account of his Revenue, and was thorowly acquainted with the different Branches of it.

We have ſaid in the ſecond Chapter that *Saphian Chan* and the Princes his Relations had been obliged by Arms to force the *Turkmanns* to pay their Contribution; on that Occaſion *Akattai Chan* making War on the Tribe of *Okli Koklan*, it happen'd that he took the Daughter of one of their Chiefs, and finding her very much to his liking he marry'd her immediately. By that Marriage he had afterwards *Hadſim Sultan*, and *Mahamut Sultan*, with three Daughters. *Hadſim Sultan* was born in the Year 930, called *Lu*, or the Crocodile, and obtained the Dignity of *Chan* at the Age of thirty five Years. *Aly Sultan*, youngeſt Son of *Avanaſh Chan*, who reſided at *Urgens*, happening at length to die, *Hadſim Chan* went to reſide at *Urgens*; *Mahamut Sultan* held *Vaſir*, *Pulat Sultan* had the Town of *Chajuk*, and *Timur Sultan Haſſaraſſap* and *Kabt*.

An. Dom. 1525.

Some

Some Years after, *Abdula Chan* of *Great Bucharia* enter'd with an Army into the Country of *Charaſs'm*, and came to beſiege the Town of *Urgens*, while *Hadſim Chan* was gone to make an Invaſion into the Country of *Choraſſan*; but finding more Reſiſtance than he expected from the Beſiegers, he was obliged to raiſe the Siege, and retire into the Country of *Jangiarik*: As he had loſt many Men at that Siege, he only ſought to maintain the Places he poſſeſſed on that ſide, waiting to be joined by the Succours which he expected from *Great Bucharia*: but having learned that *Hadſim Chan* was in the March with a conſiderable Army to give him Battle, he detach'd a truſty Officer with fifty choſen Men, with Orders to paſs thro' the Territory of *Uchaſt*, and the Country of *Kumkant*, and lie in Ambuſcade ſome where upon the great Road between *Urgens* and *Chajuk* to get Intelligence of the Enemy, and not to return without bringing him at leaſt ſome Advice. That Detachment having advanced without Noiſe as far as a Tomb of a certain Saint which is on the great Road from *Chajuk* to *Urgens*, ſeized ſix Men who were going to *Kabt*, and brought them to *Abdula Chan*; who having examin'd them upon the Spot, learned by their Means that *Hadſim Chan* upon the News of his Invaſion into his Dominions, had immediately return'd to *Duruhn*, and that having been reinforced in that Place by a great Number of *Turkmanns* thereabout, he was on the March in queſt of him, and that they believ'd, as it was four days ſince they were ſeparated from him at *Piſhga*, that he was already arriv'd at *Urgens*: Upon this Advice *Abdula Chan* not finding himſelf in a Condition, with his ſhatter'd Army, to oppoſe the united Forces of all the Princes of the Poſterity of *Amunak*, who

Abdalla Chan *invades* Chowarazm.

were going to fall upon his Back, he reſolv'd to ſend to make Propoſals of Peace to *Pulat Sultan* and *Timur Sultan*, who were both at *Chajuk*; and as both Parties equally deſir'd it, 'twas ſoon concluded, and *Abdula Chan* led back the Remains of his Army into *Great Bucharia*.

CHAP. VII.

Abdula Chan *makes himſelf Maſter of the Country of* Charaſs'm, *and obliges* Hadſim Chan *to ſeek Refuge in* Perſia.

Hadſim Chan's. Sons.

AFTER the Retreat of *Abdula Chan* into his Dominions, *Hadſim Chan* and the Princes his Brothers poſſeſſed the Towns of the Country of *Charaſs'm* peaceably for ſome time, and the two Brothers of *Hadſim Chan*, *Mahamut* and *Timur Sultan* dying in the mean time, that Prince preſerv'd their Children in the Poſſeſſion of the Domains of their Fathers. *Hadſim Chan* for his Part had five Sons, of which theſe are the Names; 1. *Siuntz Mahamet Sultan*, 2. *Arap Mahamet*, 3. *Mahamet Culi*, 4. *Mahamet*, 5. *Ebrahim*; who had all a great deal of Merit, and made their Abode near their Father at *Urgens*, except only *Arap Mahamet*, who had the Government of *Duruhn*.

In the mean time *Abdula Chan* of *Great Bucharia* did not drop his Deſign of re-uniting the Country of *Charaſs'm* with *Great Bucharia*, notwithſtanding he ſucceeded ſo badly in his firſt Expedition againſt *Hadſim Chan*; and he waited

waited only for ſome plauſible Pretence for making a new Invaſion into the Country of *Charaſ'm*, when the Princes of the Houſe of *Hadſim Chan* furniſh'd him themſelves with two very ſpecious ones upon the Occaſions which I am going to relate.

The *Sultan*, *Chalif* of *Ruhm*, ſent about that time an Ambaſſador called *Pialaſha*, to *Abdula Chan*, to make an Alliance with him, and to engage that Prince to attack the Empire of *Sheich Ogli* on his ſide with all his Forces, while he puſhed him vigorouſly on the other ſide. That Ambaſſador, who had ſpent three Years in that Voyage going, becauſe he was obliged to take his Road by the *Indies*, had a mind at his Return to ſtrike ſtrait thro' the Country of *Charaſ'm*, and go embark among the *Turkmanns* upon the Sea of *Maſanderan*, in order to paſs from thence into the Province of *Shirwan*, which was at that time under the Power of the *Sultan* of *Ruhm*, from whence he intended to make the reſt of his Journey by Land as far as the City of *Iſtambul* *, which is the Reſidence of the *Sultan Chalif* of *Ruhm*, which might be a Voyage of about four Months; but when he was come to *Urgens*, *Mahamet* and *Ebrahim Sultan*, Sons of *Hadſim Chan*, cauſed him to be ſtrip'd of all, and left him no more than what was abſolutely neceſſary to enable him to continue his Voyage; after which they ſent him to *Mankiſhlak*, where, by chance, there were ſome Merchants of *Shirwan*, who received him into their Boats and carry'd him over into the Province of that Name.

Voyage croſs the Caſpian Sea from Mankiſhlak to Shirwan.

* *'Tis the Name which the* Turks, *and in Imitation of them moſt of the Orientals give the City of* Conſtantinople *by maiming its true Name.*

To this firſt Cauſe of Complaint there was joined another, which was this; every *Mahometan*, who goes to pay his Devotions at the Houſe of *Mechka*, is obliged to regulate his Voyage in ſuch a manner, that he may be there by the 10th of the Month of *Dſilhotza*, which is the Day in which *Ebrahim* would have ſacrific'd his Son *Iſmail* * by the Command of God. Thoſe of the *Great Bucharia*, who were willing to perform that Voyage, paſſed in Times of Peace thro' the Country of *Charaſs'm*, and the Provinces of the *Shah* of the *Perſians*, but in time of War they were obliged to go a great way about by the *Indies*: It happen'd then that ſome Inhabitants and Merchants of the Country of *Ma-urenner*, who had a mind to perform the Voyage to *Mechka*, took their Rout thro' the Country of *Charaſs'm*, under the Conduct of one *Hadſi Cutas*, relying upon the Peace which there was at that time between *Abdula Chan*, and the Princes of the Houſe of *Hadſim Chan*; but when they were arriv'd at *Chajuk*, *Baba Sultan*, eldeſt Son of *Pulat Sultan*, cauſed them to be ſtrip'd to their very Shirts, and ſent them packing home again on Foot. Theſe People at their Return into the *Great Bucharia*, going to complain of that Violence to *Abdula Chan*, he told them he could do nothing in it, ſeeing *Baba Sultan* was not under his Power, and that he was as much Sovereign at *Chajuk*, as himſelf could be in the *Great Bucharia*; whereupon *Hadſi Cutas* made Anſwer, That he would be his Accuſer before the Throne of God, if with the great Power God had put into his Hands,

Du'lhaggah.

The Caravan to Meccah *ſtrip'd in* Chowarazm.

* *The* Mahometans *pretend that it was not* Iſaac, *but* Iſmael *whom the Patriarch* Abraham *was about to ſacrifice at the Command of God.*

he

he let go unpuniſh'd an Outrage which was done to God himſelf in the Perſons of thoſe who went to offer up their Prayers to him at his holy Houſe.

This bold Remonſtrance ſeemed to determine at laſt *Abdula Chan* to a War againſt *Hadſim Chan* and his Brothers; whom beſides he could not forgive, inaſmuch as by their Means the aforeſaid *Nur Mahamet*, natural Son of *Abul Sultan*, was reſtor'd to the Poſſeſſion of the four Towns of his Patrimony, which *Obeit Chan*, Predeceſſor of *Abdula Chan*, had uſurp'd from him: and tho the *Shah* of the *Perſians* had ſince then taken the ſaid Towns, and had ſhut up the ſame *Nur Mahamet* in a cloſe Priſon at *Shiras*, yet *Abdula Chan* did not think that ought to hinder him from taking his Satisfaction on thoſe who had been the principal Cauſe of the Loſs which he had ſuſtained on that Occaſion, and that the rather becauſe *Hadſim Chan* ſtill actually poſſeſſed the Town of *Duruhn*, which was one of thoſe four Towns, the Government of which he had confer'd on his Son *Arap Mahamet Sultan.*

Abdalla Chan prepares to invade Chowarazm.

The News of theſe Preparations for War which *Abdula Chan* cauſed to be made in his Dominions having been ſpread abroad, the *Usbecks* of the Country of *Charaſ'm* divided themſelves into two Parties, one of which was for a vigorous Reſiſtance, and the other was ready to ſubmit themſelves to *Abdula Chan* as ſoon as he ſhould approach the Town of *Urgens*; theſe laſt perſuading themſelves that that Prince would not fail to take into his Service all the Men of Merit among them; and that the worſt that could happen to the reſt was, that he would ſend them into *Great Bucharia*, and aſſign them there wherewithal to ſubſiſt on.

Usbecks divided in their Reſolutions.

Hadſim Chan *retires to* Duruhn.

Hadſim Chan having been inform'd of all we have related, judged that he ought not on this Occaſion to depend much upon the *Usbecks*, his Subjects; wherefore he conferr'd the Government of the Town of *Urgens* on his Sons *Mahamet* and *Ebrahim*, and went himſelf to *Duruhn*, accompany'd by his eldeſt Son *Siuntz Mahamet Sultan*, with his two Sons, a Son of *Mahamet Sultan*, a Son of *Ebrahim Sultan*, and ſome other Lords and Perſons of Condition; giving out, that he was going to paſs the Winter there, in order to be in a Capacity at the beginning of Spring to beſiege the Town of *Naſai*. The three Sons of *Timur Sultan* were then in Poſſeſſion of the Town of *Haſſaraſſap*, *Pulat Sultan*, and his four Sons, poſſeſſed the Town of *Chajuk*; and the four Sons of *Mahamet Sultan*, with their two Nephews, the Sons of *Mahamet Amin*, poſſeſſed the Town of *Vaſir*: Theſe Princes having Intelligence that *Abdula Chan* was preparing to pay them a Viſit towards Spring, ſent ten Men from *Haſſaraſſap*, and as many from *Chajuk* towards the Frontiers of the Country of *Duruganata* to get Intelligence of the Enemy; but that Detachment having fallen among the Troops of the Enemies Van-Guard, it was ſo roughly handled, that only three of them return'd to *Haſſaraſſap* with the News of the Approach of *Abdula Chan*.

Princes of the Houſe of Akattai Chan *leave* Chajuk.

Upon this Advice, *Mahamet Sultan* conſider'd that at the time of the firſt Invaſion of *Abdula Chan* into the Country of *Charaſ'm*, his Father *Timur Sultan* having repair'd to *Chajuk*, and perſuaded his Brothers to fix upon that Town for the general Rendezvous of all their Troops, that Precaution had then contributed much to defeat the Deſigns of *Abdula Chan*, wherefore he was of Opinion the ſame thing ſhould be done

done now, and that perhaps the Succeſs would not be leſs advantageous than it was the firſt time. In this Reſolution having aſſembled the *Usbecks* under his Subjection, he march'd towards *Chajuk*; but when he had got as far as the Tomb of a Saint called *Hadſrati-Paluan*, he began to have a Miſtruſt of them; wherefore having taken the *Alcoran* in his hands, he obliged them to promiſe him by Oath to ſerve him faithfully upon that Occaſion; after which, he continued his March with more Satisfaction. At his Arrival at *Chajuk*, he found that they had reſolved to quit that Town to go to *Vaſir*; upon which he did all in his Power to divert the other Princes from that Reſolution: but finding it was in vain to oppoſe the Torrent which was againſt him, he ſubmitted at laſt to the Opinion of the Majority. Purſuant to that Reſolution, *Mahamet Sultan* and his Brothers, as well as *Pulat Sultan* with his four Sons, and the Sons of his Brother *Mahamet Sultan*, march'd out of *Chajuk* with all the Troops, Goods and Proviſions they had, which made ſo great a Train of Men and Chariots, that tho the firſt had begun to paſs out of *Chajuk* at Day-break, the laſt did not leave it till Noon; and they arriv'd not till late in the Evening at the Camp, where the firſt had arrived when the Sun was come to the Meridian.

The General of Abdalla Chan enters Chajuk.

In the mean time, *Abdula Chan* having detach'd one of his Generals called *Chodſam Culi*, with an Army towards *Chajuk* to obſerve the Princes of the Houſe of *Akattai Chan*, who were aſſembled in that Town, that General arriv'd with his Troops at one of the Gates of *Chajuk*, juſt when the laſt Troops of the Princes paſſed out thro' the oppoſite Gate. As ſoon as *Chodſam Culi* had enter'd the Town of *Chajuk*,

he cauſed it to be publiſhed that all the *Usbecks* who ſtaid behind ſhould repair into the City, becauſe he had Orders from *Abdula Chan* to employ all thoſe who were capable, and give them good Pay; whereupon the *Usbecks* having aſſembled in great Numbers, he propoſed to them, that all who were deſirous to ſignalize their Zeal for the Service of *Abdula Chan* ſhould hold themſelves in readineſs to follow him next Day, when he would go in purſuit of *Pulat Sultan* and his Allies.

Purſues the Princes. The Confederate Princes, on their ſide, tho they had been inform'd immediately of the Entrance of the Enemies Troops into the Town of *Chajuk*, yet only kept a Guard about their Camp all Night, and did not continue their March till early next Morning: But hardly were they arrived at the Burrow of *Almatiſh Chan*, when *Chodſam Culi*, who purſued them in a great Trot, came up with them at the Head of 30000 Men. At his Approach the Princes did not fail to cover themſelves haſtily with their Chariots as a kind of Intrenchment; but *Chodſam Culi* having forced that Barricade, after a vigorous Reſiſtance, put them at length to the Rout, and took *Coizi*, one of the Sons of *Pulat Sultan*; and as he had loſt many Men in that Attack, he reſted ſatisfy'd with this Advantage, and did not purſue the Princes, who retired in great Confuſion to *Vaſir*. At their Arrival in that Town, they reſolved to drive from among them *Baba Sultan*, who had brought upon them that unfortunate War, and ſend to make Propoſals of Peace to *Abdula Chan*: *Pulat Sultan* finding he could not hinder the Execution of that Reſolution, reſolved to retire of his own accord, with his two other Sons, *Hamſa* and *Paluanculi*, to *Duruhn* to *Hadſim Chan*; inſomuch that there remained at *Vaſir*

Defeats them.

ſir only the four Sons of *Mahamut Sultan*, with their two Nephews, and the three Sons of *Timur Sultan*, who were all at the Defeat of *Almatiſh Chan*; and tho *Mahamet* and *Ebrahim Sultan*, the two Sons of *Hadſim Chan*, who commanded at *Urgens*, came to join them afterwards with their Wives and Children; *Aly Sultan*, Son of *Mahamut Sultan*, who, tho he was little and crooked, yet had a vaſt deal of Wit, continued always to have the chief Command in the Town, by reaſon the Town of *Vaſir* belong'd to the Children of *Mahamut Sultan*.

Abdula Chan having in the Interim drawn near to *Vaſir* with his Army, did not defer to beſiege it in Form; but finding after the Siege had laſted two Months, that it would be very difficult to come off in this Enterprize with Honour, he reſolved to join Craft to Force: To this end, he ſent to tell the Confederate Princes, that ſince they had removed from among them *Baba Sultan*, whom he had chief cauſe to complain of, they might with full Confidence come before him, and be aſſured, that having nothing againſt them, he would receive them with the Regard which he owed them as his Allies and Relations: Flatter'd with theſe Promiſes, the Princes enter'd into a Capitulation with *Abdula Chan*, and demanded of him to ſend ſome of the principal Lords of his Retinue into the Town to promiſe them by Oath on his part, that he ſhould not in any wiſe meddle either with their Perſons, or their Effects. Whereupon *Abdula Chan*, who would not frighten them, named immediately *Haſan Chodſa*, *Sarchinbi*, *Mahamet Bakibi*, *Hadſimbi*, Governor of *Samarkant*, and *Doſt Margan*, who were five of the principal Lords of his Court, for his Plenipotentiaries on this Occaſion. Purſuant to this Nomination, thoſe

Abdalla Chan *beſieges* Vaſir.

Propoſes a fallacious Peace.

thoſe five Lords repaired with a Retinue of Forty Horſe to *Vaſir*; and when they were come to an open place of the Town called *Tachtaſul*, they made them ſolemnly take Oath in the Name of *Abdula Chan*, that he had no evil Intention againſt the Confederate Princes who were in the Town of *Vaſir*.

The People are for detaining the Bucharian Lords. Nevertheleſs, the common People, who were againſt the Princes leaving themſelves at the Mercy of their Enemies upon a bare Oath, deſired that the aforeſaid Lords of the Enemies Army might be arreſted, ſeeing they knew *Abdula Chan* had ſo great Regard for their Perſons, that he would rather a thouſand times relinquiſh the Conqueſt of *Urgens* and *Vaſir*, than let them be expoſed to the leaſt Danger; that to this end they ſhould ſend back the Forty Men of their Retinue with a Letter for *Abdula Chan*, in which it might be obſerv'd that it was not out of any ill Deſign that they had arreſted the ſaid Lords, but only to be the more aſſured of the raiſing of the Siege; that the Princes ſhould oblige themſelves to that purpoſe, that as ſoon as *Abdula Chan* ſhould begin his March with his Army to return with it into the *Great Bucharia*, they would on their ſide put themſelves immediately upon the Road with the Lords whom they detained in quality of Hoſtages to go to him; and that in the mean time the ſaid Lords ſhould be uſed like the Princes themſelves.

The Princes repair to the Camp of Abdalla Chan. But *Aly Sultan* ſtrenuouſly oppoſed this Propoſal, by reaſon that never having had any Difference with *Abdula Chan*, and being his neat Relations, they could have nothing to fear from him, eſpecially during the Life of *Hadſim Chan* and his three other Children; that ſuppoſing even he had a Deſire to ſeize their Domains, he would not fail to carry them with him into *Great*

Great Bucharia, and ſettle them there more advantageouſly than they were in thoſe Parts; that nevertheleſs he was fully perſuaded, that as ſoon as he ſhould ſpeak to him of it, he would leave them the peaceable Poſſeſſion of *Urgens* and *Vaſir*. Theſe Reaſons having been liked by all the Men of Diſtinction about the Princes, the common People were obliged to hold their Peace in ſpite of their Teeth; and the Princes, accompany'd by the Lords who had taken the Oath, left the Town to go to *Abdula Chan*.

Are put under an Arreſt.

That Prince immediately committed the Guard of their Perſons to one of his Lords called *Iſhimbi*, and the Inſpection of the reſt of the Officers and Soldiers to General *Chodſam Culi*: After which having cauſed exact Liſts to be made of all the Priſoners, he order'd that the common People ſhould be divided into Troops of ten or twelve Men, each of which ſhould furniſh one who ſhould be reſponſible for the whole Troop; which having been executed, he ſent them all Priſoners into the *Great Bucharia* at the Riſk of the Reſpondents.

The ſame Cuſtom among the Saxons, and at preſent in China.

Abdula Chan being in this manner put in Poſſeſſion of the Towns of *Urgens* and *Vaſir*, gave the Government of them to one of his Lords called *Sari Oglan*; another of the Lords of the Tribe of the *Durmanns*, called *Mengliſhbi*, had the Government of the Town of *Chajuk*; *Chodſa*, one of his moſt truſty Officers, had the Government of the Town of *Haſſaraſſap*, and the little Town of *Kruk*; and a certain *Mullha*, who was a Man of exemplary Piety, had the Government of *Kabt*, and the Intendency of a Tribe of *Turkmanns*, called the *Tribe of Bajat*: After which that Prince return'd into his hereditary Dominions.

Abdalla Chan *diſtributes the Towns of* Chaſsm *among his Lords.*

Perhaps Kuk.

Hadſim Chan *retires to the Court of* Shah Abbas.

A Month after, *Hadſim Chan* and all the Princes of his Houſe who were at *Duruhn*, having underſtood what had happen'd at *Urgens*, and that *Abdula Chan* was become Maſter of all the Towns of the Country of *Charaſs'm*, they reſolved all to retire into the Country of *Irak*, towards *Shah Hiabas Maſi : Pulat Sultan* only was of a different Opinion, and he took it in his Head, that drawing near ſeventy Years, as he was, it would be very unbecoming of him to go look for a Sanctuary among People of a different Religion from his own ; wherefore he choſe rather to go to *Abdula Chan*, preſuming that Prince would pity his Condition, and give him wherewithal to paſs the remainder of his days in Content. But *Hadſim Chan* ſet forward to go to *Shah Hiabas Maſi*, accompany'd by his three Sons, *Siuntz Mahamet Sultan*, *Arap Mahamet Sultan*, and *Mahamet Culi Sultan* ; by his Grandſon *Burundu*, Son of *Ebrahim Sultan* ; by *Abdula*, Son of *Siuntz Mahamet Sultan* ; by *Iſphandiar*, Son of *Arap Mahamet Sultan* ; by *Mahamet*, Son of *Mahamet Sultan*, and by the three Sons of *Pulat Sultan* his Nephews. At his Departure out of *Duruhn*, he found himſelf 3000 Horſe ſtrong ; but his Men diſbanded ſo faſt upon the Road, that there remained with him in the end but 150.

Abdula Chan *puts to death all the Family of* Amunak *that fell into his hands.*

In the mean time *Pulat Sultan* ran to his Deſtruction in repairing to *Abdula Chan* ; for as ſoon as that Prince was return'd into the *Great Bucharia*, he cauſed to be put to death the ſame Day in the Town of *Sagratz*, all the Princes of the Poſterity of *Amunak* which had fallen into his Hands, *viz.* The four Sons of *Mahamut Sultan*, called *Mahamut Sultan Aly*, *Arab* and *Akbaba*, with their two Nephews, *Shah Aly* and *Shabacht* ; the three Sons of *Timur Sultan*, called

Mahamet Sultan, *Cadir-birdi* and *Abulgair*; the two youngeſt Sons of *Hadſim Chan*, *Mahamet* and *Ebrahim Sultan*, and *Pulat Sultan*, who went voluntarily to him, with his Son *Coizi*, who had been made Priſoner at the Battle of *Almatiſh Chan*, amounting in all to the Number of thirteen Perſons, without reckoning ſome other Princes of the ſame Houſe, whoſe Names we know not, becauſe they were very young when *Abdula Chan* had them put to death: After which he taxed all the *Usbecks* who had been made Priſoners on that Occaſion at an annual Tribute of thirty *Tanga* a Head; which impoveriſh'd them to that degree, that many of them were obliged to ſell their very Children to make up the Capitation, in regard every one above the Age of ten Years was ſubject to it: And as the common People among the Priſoners had been obliged to furniſh for every ten or twelve Men one reſponſible Perſon, that Reſpondent was obliged to pay annually the thirty *Tanga* of the Capitation, in caſe any of thoſe for whom he became reſponſible ſhould deſert.

While theſe things were a doing, *Hadſim Chan* and the ten Princes who accompany'd him, having arrived in the Year *Gilan*, or of the Serpent, with a Train of 150 Horſe at the Court of the *Shah* of the *Perſians*, that Prince came in Perſon to receive them, and gave them the beſt Treatment imaginable: but *Siuntz Mahamet Sultan* and his Son, who had no Inclination to ſtay at the Court of the *Shah*, paſſed forward and went to the *Sultan Calif* of *Ruhm*. After that *Hadſim Chan* and the other Princes of this Company, had ſpent two Years at the Court of *Shah Hiabas Maſi*, it happen'd in the Year *Koi*, or the Sheep, which is the ſame Year that there appeared a great Comet in the Sky, that *Abdul-momin*

Hadſim Chan *arrives at* Caſwin.

Comet.

momin Sultan, Son of *Abdula Chan*, enter'd with a numerous Army into the part of the Country of *Choraſſan*, which was in Subjection to the *Shah* of *Perſia*; and having a mind to take the Town of *Eſpheragin*, the Inhabitants ſhut the Gates, and gave notice to the *Shah* that the Son of *Abdula Chan* threaten'd them with a formal Siege. Upon this News, *Shah Hiabas Maſi* having got together a good Army, left the Town of *Gaſwin* and went to *Baſtam*.

Attempt to retake Chajuk *and* Urgens.

Hadſim Chan, and the Princes his Relations who followed him on this Occaſion, having learned on their Arrival at that Town, that there were but ſixty of the Enemies Men at *Chajuk*, and forty at *Urgens*, they judged it not altogether impoſſible to profit by that Negligence of the Enemy, provided it was kept a Secret and with all imaginable Care: Nevertheleſs as what was to be done on this Occaſion ſhould be done without the Knowledge of the *Shah*, and that it was to be feared he ſhould take Offence at ſo precipitate a Departure, *Hadſim Chan* and ſome of the other Princes would not meddle with that Enterprize; and there were none but *Arap Mahamet Sultan* and his Brother *Mahamet Culi Sultan*, with *Baba Sultan*, *Hamſa* and *Paluanculi*, the three Sons of *Pulat Sultan*, who perſiſted in an Inclination to run the Riſk of it: And as it is not far from *Baſtam* to *Iſtarabat*, and that the *Turkmann* Tribe of *Amir* dwelt then about that Town, the chief of whom called *Alytar-beg*, had always teſtify'd ſo great an Affection for their Houſe, that they had hopes he would not fail them on that Occaſion; they reſolved to take Horſe one Evening when every body were gone to bed, and after having rid all Night, they arriv'd next Morning at the Van-Guard

Guard of the *Turkmanns*, and from thence by Noon at *Iſtarabat*.

After their Departure, *Hadſim Chan* went betimes in the Morning to inform the *Shah* of the Occaſion of the Journey of his Sons and Nephews: But the *Shah* who knew too well the Activity of *Abdula Chan* to be deceived by the like Appearances, how flattering ſoever they might be, adviſed *Hadſim Chan* to ride immediately after his Children, and try to bring them back; becauſe he was well aſſured while *Abdula Chan* lived it would be in vain for them to attempt to recover the Poſſeſſion of their Domains, that it would not be long before they would be ſenſible of it; but that the Shame of having gone upon that Enterprize without his Knowledge hindering them to return to his Court, they would go perhaps to ſeek for Refuge ſome where elſe, where they might find Death inſtead of Aſſiſtance; laſtly, if he loved his Children, he ought to endeavour at any rate to get them, while it was yet time, out of the Troubles they were going to engage in on this Occaſion. *Character of* Abdalla Chan.

Hadſim Chan willing to follow the ſage Advice of the *Shah*, took Horſe immediately to ride after his Sons; and having over-taken them at *Iſtarabat*, he did his beſt at firſt to bring them back; but the Aſſurances which ſeveral *Turkmann* Tribes had given them ſince their Arrival at *Iſtarabat*, of aſſiſting them powerfully, having encouraged them to go thorow with their Project, they not only poſitively refuſed to return, but alſo found the way to engage *Hadſim Chan* to continue with them till ſuch time as he ſhould ſee what Succeſs the Enterprize would have. After which departing all together from *Iſtarabat*, they went towards the Hadſim Chan *follows them.*

the Mountain of *Kuran*, about which the *Turkmann* Tribes of *Taka* and *Jamut* then dwelt; who having been heretofore of the Number of the Subjects of the Children of *Mahamut Sultan*, Brother of *Hadſim Chan*, gave them a Reinforcement of 500 Men: From thence they travers'd the Territory of *Mankiſhlak*, which was at that time quite deſart; ſince the *Turkmanns* of *Mankiſhlak* had been obliged all to retire into the Country of *Ordacutuk*, which borders upon the Country of *Gordiſh*, becauſe of the great Quarrels which they had on one ſide with the *Mankatts*, and on the other ſide with the *Turkmanns* of the Tribe of *Irſari*. From *Mankiſchlak*, the Princes paſs'd on to the Habitations of the Tribe of *Irſari*, which, having been formerly under the Juriſdiction of *Timur Sultan*, and of his Brother *Pulat Sultan*, Father of *Baba Sultan*, granted them five or ſix hundred Men; and from thence they went on towards *Piſhga*.

Hadſim Chan *takes* Urgens.

At their Arrival at *Piſhga*, *Hadſim Chan* and his two Sons took the Road to *Urgens*, and *Baba Sultan* with his two Brothers went to *Chajuk*. Upon the News of the Approach of *Hadſim Chan*, *Sari Oglan*, Governor of the Town of *Urgens*, retir'd into the Caſtle; but *Hadſim Chan* having cauſed, during the Night, a ſubterraneous Paſſage to be carry'd under the Wall of the Caſtle, enter'd by that way, and cauſed the Governor to be put to death, with the forty Men which were with him. After the Conqueſt of this Town all the *Turkmanns* of the Tribe of *Taka*, and *Jamut*, return'd home loaded with Booty, and left *Hadſim Chan* and his Sons almoſt alone at *Urgens*. *Baba Sultan* on his ſide, having arriv'd before *Chajuk*, the *Sarts* who dwelt in that Town opened the Gates to him; after

after which he cauſed in like manner the Governor *Mengliſhbi* to be put to death, with his ſixty Men; which coming to the Ears of the Commanders of *Haſſaraſſap* and *Kabt*, they fled towards *Great Bucharia*.

Baba Sultan having a little after diſmiſs'd all the *Turkmanns* of the Tribe of *Irſari*, without keeping above fifteen Men, went to *Haſſaraſſap* with his Brother *Paluanculi*, ten days after the taking of *Chajuk*; but *Hamſa* his younger Brother ſtay'd at *Chajuk* to drink his Belly-full of new Wine, becauſe it was then in the Seaſon of Vintage. Entring the Town of *Haſſaraſſap*, *Baba Sultan* obſerv'd two Officers, one of which rid an *Iſabella*, and the other a Horſe ſpotted like a Tiger, who advanced on a ſmart Gallop towards the Town at the Head of 150 Horſe, which appearing to him very ſuſpicious, he endeavoured to ſhut the Gate of the Town; but he had hardly ſhut one ſide of it, when he who rid the ſpotted Horſe was already at hand, endeavouring with great Strokes of a Launce to hinder the ſhutting of it quite: Nevertheleſs ſome of the Inhabitants of the Town running thither in the nick of Time, he was obliged at length to retire with his Men, and the Gate being ſhut, they began to ſhoot ſo thick on all ſides upon the Cavalry, that they thought fit to get out of Reach of the Shots. The Enemy having been repulſed in this manner before *Haſſaraſſap*, took in their Retreat a *Sart*, who informed them that *Baba Sultan* was arrived alone at *Haſſaraſſap*, with *Paluanculi* and fifteen Men, and that his Brother *Hamſa* had ſtaid at *Chajuk* to drink new Wine; upon which they turn'd immediately towards that ſide, and arrived next Day about Noon before the Town, juſt at the time that *Hamſa* was taking the Air;

Haſſaraſſap *near being ſurprized.*

Chajuk *taken.*

but not daring to make uſe of Force againſt the Town with ſo few Men, they lay cloſe till the Evening, when Aſſiſtance coming to them, they carry'd on a ſubterraneous Paſſage into the Town under one of the Gates; at which having enter'd, they put all to the Sword, which very much diſconcerted the Affairs of *Baba Sultan*.

Abdolmumin *invades* Choraſſan.

To underſtand who thoſe Troops were, you muſt know, that *Abdula Chan* having aſſembled a great Army the ſame Year that the aforeſaid Comet appear'd, he detach'd a conſiderable Body of it under the Command of his Son *Abdulmomin*, to go and beſiege the Town of *Eſpheragin*, with a Deſign to take Winter Quarters afterwards with all his Army in the Towns of the Province of *Choraſſan*, to be ready at hand in the beginning of the next Spring to make an Irruption into the Province of *Irak*. To this effect he order'd *Chodſam Culi*, one of his beſt Generals, to advance with a Body of Troops by the great Road to *Choraſſan*, in order to ſupport his Son in caſe of Neceſſity, while he followed leiſurely in Perſon with the reſt of his Army, with an intention as he paſſed along, to take the Diverſion of Hawking beyond *Zardſui* in the Country of *Gordiſh*, where there are abundance of Ducks and other Water Fowl. Conformable to this Regulation, *Chodſam Culi* march'd directly towards the Country of *Choraſſan*; but having paſs'd a certain River which was upon the Road, he met the Commander of *Haſſaraſſap*, who inform'd him that *Baba Sultan* being arriv'd ſome days before at *Chajuk*, he had cauſed the Governor and all his Men to be ſlain; upon that News *Chodſam Culi* ſent the ſaid Commander with all poſſible haſte to apprize *Abdula Chan* of what had happen'd; and in the mean time

time he reſolved to halt with his Troops in the Place where he was till he ſhould receive new Orders from his Maſter, which were not long a coming; importing that he ſhould march off-hand towards *Chajuk*, and that *Abdula Chan* would follow cloſe at his Heels with his whole Army. Upon theſe Orders *Chodſam Culi* changed the Road and turned towards the Town of *Chajuk*; but he found at his Arrival, that all the Work was already done by his Van-Guard, which determined them to puſh forward directly for *Urgens*.

Bold Action of Mahamet Culi Sultan.

In the mean time *Mahamet Culi Sultan*, third Son of *Hadſim Chan*, who was a Prince of much Courage, having heard of the Death of his Couſin *Hamſa*, kept it very ſecret, reſolving to leave his Father, with his Brother *Arap Mahamet Sultan* at *Urgens*, and go join *Baba Sultan* at *Haſſaraſſap*: To this effect he got together ſome well-diſpoſed *Turkmanns* and *Zagatais*, to whom he joined yet two hundred *Usbecks* of *Urgens*, which were of the Number of thoſe whom *Abdula Chan* had carry'd away Priſoners into *Great Bucharia*, and had return'd a little while before, with a Deſign to try to drive ſome ſmall Trade at *Urgens*, not foreſeeing the Troubles which were to enſue. With this ſmall Body of Troops *Mahamet Culi Sultan* began his March for *Haſſaraſſap*, by the ſide of the River of *Urgens*; but coming near the little Town of *Zilpuk*, he found himſelf of a ſudden ſurrounded by the Troops of *Chodſam Culi*, before he had the leaſt Notice of their Approach. *Chodſam Culi* who imagin'd *Mahamet Culi Sultan* could no longer eſcape him, injoyned his Officers to do all they could to take him alive. But *Mahamet Culi Sultan*, who was ſenſible of the bad Condition he was reduced to, having form'd one large Squadron

with all the Men he had, reſolved to ruſh headlong upon one of the Enemies Wings, in order to make way for himſelf on that ſide; which he executed with ſo much bravery, that after having broke thro' the Enemies Troops which oppoſed him, he retired into the Country of the *Mankatts*, who had then a *Chan* called *Kuzuk*. At his Arrival among the *Mankatts*, *Mahamet Culi Sultan* try'd at firſt to draw *Kuzuk Chan* into his Intereſts, by Propoſals of Marriage which he made to his Siſter; but *Kuzuk Chan*, who was afraid to have to do with *Abdula Chan*, in caſe he gave Protection to *Mahamet Culi Sultan*, had him arreſted, and ſent him to the *Uruſſes*, where he died ſome time after.

Kuzuk Chan *of the* Mankatts, *or* Karakallpakks.

While theſe things were doing, one of the Men who had been with *Mahamet Culi Sultan*, when he broke thro' the Troops of *Chodſam Culi*, went directly to *Urgens* to carry the News of that unfortunate Fight to *Hadſim Chan*, who thereupon abandon'd that Town, accompany'd by his Son *Arap Mahamet Sultan*, and ſome Soldiers, with an Intention to go over to *Mankiſhlak*; but the Enemy having over-taken them the third Night after their Departure from *Urgens*, he was obliged to come to Blows with them, and *Hadſim Chan*, with his Men, having been worſted, he endeavour'd to retire the beſt he could; but the Enemy who continually follow'd him, having forced him again next Morning to engage in Battle with them, he loſt above half the few Men he had with him, inſomuch that he was conſtrained once more to go take Refuge at *Iſtarabat*, and from thence to *Gaſwin*, to the Court of the *Shah* of *Perſia*. *Abdula Chan* went in Perſon to beſiege the Town of *Haſſaraſſap*, and having taken it, he cauſed *Baba Sultan*

Hagim Chan *leaves* Urgens.

Retires again to Caſwin.

Sultan and the fifteen Men who came thither with him, to be ſlain; after which he return'd into *Great Bucharia*, where he died the laſt Day of the Year 1006, called *Tauk*, or the Hen *. Abdalla Chan *dies* *An. Dom.* 1597.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Re-eſtabliſhment of Hadſim Chan *in his Dominions, and of his Death.*

UPON the News of the Death of *Abdula Chan*, *Shah Hiabas Maſi* having gather'd a numerous Army at the beginning of the following Year, called *It*, or the Dog, came and encamped near *Baſtam*. In that Place *Hadſim Chan* pray'd the *Shah* that he would let him go and take a Turn towards the Frontiers of *Maurenner*, to try if *Abdulmomin Chan* who had ſucceeded his Father, knowing him to be ſo near him, would be inclined to reſtore him one of his Towns, that he might there end his days in quiet. The *Shah* having conſented very willingly to that Propoſal, *Hadſim Chan* ſet forward, accompany'd by *Arap Mahamet Sultan*, and his Grandſon *Iſphandiar Sultan*, with a Retinue of fifteen Perſons; inſomuch that there remained only *Burundu*, Son of *Ebrahim Sultan*, and Grandſon of *Hadſim Chan*, at the Court of the *Shah*.

Shah Abbas *raiſes a numerous Army.*

Abdolmumin Chan *ſucceeds* Abdalla.

* *What our Author reports here in all its Circumſtances of the Death of* Abdula Chan, *ſhews that the Sieur* Olearius *is miſtaken, when he reports in his Relation of the Kingdom of* Perſia, *that* Abdula Chan, *with his Brother and three of his Sons, having been taken Priſoners by* Shah Abas I. *that Prince cauſed all their Heads to be cut off.*

Hagim Chan *repairs towards* Chowarazm.

In the mean time *Hadſim Chan*, with his Followers, having loſt his way the ſecond Day of his Journey, and taken too much to the Left, arrived at length at the Habitations of the *Turkmanns* of the Tribe of *Taka*, near the Mountain of *Kuran*, when he judged himſelf to be about *Meru:* That Miſtake embarraſs'd him extremely, and determin'd him to reſt the Night in that place, to conſider ſeriouſly what he had to do on that Occaſion; but going in the Morning at Sun-riſe to ſit in the Shade of the Mountain to ſay his Prayers, becauſe it was in the middle of Summer, he ſaw coming from towards *Jaurſurdi*, two Men a Horſeback, whom he knew to be *Usbecks* of the Tribe of the *Naimanns*, and of the Number of thoſe among his old Subjects who had been carry'd Priſoners into *Great Bucharia*.

Abdolmumin *aſſaſſinated.*

At their Approach they wiſh'd long Life to *Hadſim Chan*, and inform'd him that *Abdulmomin Chan* died going to take Poſſeſſion of the Succeſſion of his Father. Upon which *Hadſim Chan* inquiring how that happen'd, they told him that they had had ſome Buſineſs at *Meru*, and that during their Stay, there arriv'd a Domeſtick of the Governor of the Town, who had been Priſoner in the Army of *Abdulmomin Chan*, with the News that that Prince having been informed of the Death of his Father, quitted the Towns of the Province of *Choraſſan* to return into his hereditary Provinces; but that being come to the Town of *Samin*, he had been killed by his own People: That upon this Advice, they had a Deſign to have gone to him into *Irak*; but underſtanding at *Meru* that the *Shah* of the *Perſians* had taken the Field to go to *Baſtam*, they had taken the Road to *Jaurſurdi*, from whence they were come to look for him

him on that ſide, upon the Aſſurances which had been given them at *Jaurſurdi* that he was gone towards the *Turkmanns*.

Hadſim Chan mightily rejoiced at that News, took in haſte the Road to *Urgens*, and ſafely arriv'd there after he had been eight days on the Road. At his Arrival at *Urgens*, he found no Difficulty to put himſelf in Poſſeſſion either of that Town or of *Vaſir*, becauſe in the Confuſion which the Affairs of *Great Bucharia* fell into after the precipitate Death of *Abdulmomin Chan*, all the Towns of the Country of *Charaſ'm* were without Governors, and without Gariſons. *Hadſim Chan* kept thoſe two Towns for himſelf, and aſſigned *Chajuk* and *Kabt* to his Son *Arap Mahamet Sultan*, who took them with the ſame Facility: *Iſphandiar Sultan*, Grandſon of *Hadſim Chan*, and eldeſt Son of *Arap Mahamet Sultan*, had the Town of *Haſſaraſſap* for his Portion; and all the *Usbecks* which *Abdula Chan* had carry'd Priſoners into *Great Bucharia*, took Advantage of ſo favourable an Opportunity to return one after another to *Urgens*. Hagim Chan *recovers* Chowarazm.

Some time after *Siuntz Mahamet Sultan*, eldeſt Son of *Hadſim Chan*, who, as we related before, had retired to the Lands of *Ruhm*, having heard of the Death of *Abdula Chan*, came into the Province of *Shirvan*, and having there received the Confirmation of the News, paſſed over by Sea from thence to *Mankiſhlak*, and arrived in that manner at *Urgens* in the third Year after the Eſtabliſhment of *Hadſim Chan* in the Poſſeſſion of his Dominions. At his Arrival his Father having given up to him the Towns of *Urgens* and *Vaſir*, reſigned the Dignity of *Chan* in his Favour, and retired to *Chajuk* to his Son *Arap Mahamet Sultan*. Hagim Chan *reſigns to* Siuntz Mahamet Sultan.

Siuntz Chan *dies.* *Siuntz Mahamet Chan* did not long enjoy the Sweets of reigning, for he died a Year after his Return to *Urgens*; and his Son *Abdula Chan* who ſucceeded him, did not ſurvive him long neither, dying a Year after his Father. *Hadſim Chan* died at length in the Year 1011, called *Bars*, or the Tiger, at the Age of eighty one Years.

Hagim Chan *dies.* *An. Dom.* 1602.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Reign of Arap Mahamet Chan, *and of his Death.*

AFTER the Death of *Hadſim Chan*, *Arap Mahamet Chan* ſucceeded him in all his Dominions. On his Advancement to the Scepter of the Country of *Charaſ'm*, he added *Kaht* to the Portion of his Son *Iſphandiar Sultan*, and apply'd himſelf entirely to the Affairs of Government.

Invaſion of the Ruſſians *of* Jaigik, *or the* Coſacks. Six Months after the Death of *Hadſim Chan*, *Arap Mahamet Chan* having taken the Field to go paſs the Summer with the Lords, his Vaſſals, upon the Banks of the River *Amu*, the *Uruſſes* of *Jaigik*, who were informed that there were no Soldiers in Summer in the Town of *Urgens*, came there with a thouſand Men, and after they had cut the Throats of above a thouſand of the Inhabitants, they loaded about a thouſand Chariots with all ſorts of valuable Effects, and having ſet Fire to what they could not carry away, they return'd with near a thouſand Females whom they made Slaves of; but *Arap Mahamet Chan* being informed of it in time, went to cut off their Paſſage

Paſſage and lay in wait for them at a certain Defile, which he ſo well intrench'd and paliſado'd in haſte, that the Enemy could not force him till after an Attack of two days; yet they were obliged to leave all their Booty behind on that Occaſion. In the mean time *Arap Mahamet Chan*, who did not deſign to let them eſcape him ſo cheaply, having got the Start of them by ways unknown to them, went to wait for them again at another Defile; the *Uruſſes* not having been able to force this Paſſage, notwithſtanding all the Efforts they made to effect it; the Water which is very ſcarce in thoſe Parts began at length to fail them, which reduced them to ſo great Extremity, that after having been obliged to drink the very Blood of their ſlain Companions, to quench in ſome meaſure the Thirſt which afflicted them, they were conſtrained to make a laſt Effort to force the Baricades of *Arap Mahamet Chan*; which ſucceeded ſo ill with them, that there eſcaped ſcarce a hundred Men of them who made over to the Banks of the River *Kheſill*, and there built a Cabin a good way on the other ſide of the Town of *Tuk*, where they lived by Fiſhing, waiting ſome favourable Opportunity to reach their own Country; but *Arap Mahamet Chan* having been informed five days after of the Place of their Abode, ſent Men there who ſlew them all.

Invaſion of the Calmaks.

Six Months after, a thouſand *Callmaks* having found means to paſs between a Lake called *Chodſa Culi*, and a Mountain named *Sheich Aſis*, came to ſurprize certain Subjects of *Arap Mahamet Chan*, who had their Habitations along the Banks of the River of *Kheſill*, towards the Town of *Kaht*; and after they had killed a great Number of them, they were upon their Return, loaded with Booty and Priſoners. *Arap Mahamet*

Mahamet Chan having been informed of this Invaſion of the *Callmaks*, followed them cloſe at their Heels, and purſued them ſo briſky, that they had much ado to eſcape him, after having been obliged to abandon all the Booty and the Priſoners they had taken on that Occaſion.

Conſpiracy againſt Arap Mahamet Chan.

Some time after the *Naimanns*, who never reliſhed well the Government of *Arap Mahamet Chan*, brought into *Chajuk*, in the Night-time, one *Chiſſeran Sultan* of the Poſterity of *Ilbars Chan*, with a Deſign to put *Arap Mahamet Chan* to death, and ſet *Chiſſeran Sultan* in his room; but a Man of the Tribe of the *Kergis*, called *Bikbagli Bayadur*, and one *Bakli Mirſa* of the Tribe of the *Vigurs*, having informed *Arap Mahamet Chan* of it, he had *Chiſſeran Sultan* taken and killed. *Saphi Mirſa* of the Tribe of the *Naimanns*, who had been the chief of that Conſpiracy, was likewiſe put to death.

Another Conſpiracy.

Two years after, one named *Saſh Mirſa*, follow'd by twenty *Vigurs*, departed from the Town of *Urgens* for *Samarkant*, where he went in queſt of one *Soleh Sultan* of the Poſterity of *Haſſanculi Chan*, Son of *Abulak*, whom he brought to the *Usbecks* within the Juriſdiction of *Urgens*, to the end they ſhould acknowledge him for their *Chan*. *Arap Mahamet Chan* having been informed of this new Attempt againſt his Government, departed inſtantly from *Chajuk*, and being arrived at *Urgens*, he ſatisfy'd himſelf by putting to death *Soleh Sultan*, without ſuffering any Search to be made after thoſe who might have had a hand in that Plot; ſaying, he was content with finding out him who was the Promoter of that Affair, and left the Vengeance to God, being unwilling that upon one wicked Man's Account, Evil ſhould happen to many of his Subjects who might have been inno-

innocently led into that Plot: That it was for the ſame Reaſon that he had no mind to put to death *Saphi Mirſa*, who had been the Author of *Chiſſeran Sultan*'s Affair, and that he had been ſtill alive, if his own Brother *Baba Mirſa*, thinking him unworthy to live after attempting the Life of his Prince, had not killed him. In ſhort, that unleſs thoſe of the Tribe of the *Vigurs* would revenge him themſelves on *Saſh Mirſa*, he would never puniſh him for that Buſineſs.

Another Invaſion of the Callmaks.

Ten years after, the *Callmaks*, to the Number of a thouſand Men, came again to invade the Lands under the Government of *Arap Mahamet Chan* on the other ſide of *Bakirgan*; and after having plunder'd many Habitations, they return'd with a great Number of Priſoners, not being to be overtaken, whatever haſte was made for that Purpoſe.

Children of Arap Mahamet Chan.

Arap Mahamet Chan had ſeven Sons, *viz.* 1. *Iſphandiar Sultan*, 2. *Habaſh*, 3. *Ilbars*, 4. *Abulgaſi Bayadur*, 5. *Shariph Mahamet*, 6. *Charaſs'm Chan Sultan*, 7. *Augan*. The Mother of *Iſphandiar Sultan* was a near Relation of *Arap Mahamet Chan*; *Habaſh Sultan* and *Ilbars Sultan* were born of the ſame Mother of the Tribe of the *Naimanns*: The Mother of *Abulgaſi Sultan*, was called *Mirbanu Chanum*, and was the Daughter of *Dſangaſi Sultan*, the Son of *Shirgaſi Sultan*, the Son of *Sultan Gaſi*, the Son of *Ilbars Chan*; *Shariph Mahamet Sultan*, and *Charaſs'm Chan Sultan* were likewiſe by one Venter of *Perſian* Extraction, and of the Family of one *Chodſama Ududi* of *Zaſht*, in *Herat*; the Mother of *Augan Sultan* was alſo of the Poſterity of *Jadigar Chan*.

Rebellion of two of his Sons.

After *Arap Mahamet Chan* had reigned peaceably for fourteen Years, it happen'd one Day when he was gone to *Urgens*, that ſeveral young Men

Men of the *Usbecks* gather'd at *Chajuk* about *Habaſh Sultan*, and *Ilbars Sultan*, whom their Father had cauſed to be brought up in that Town, and perſuaded them to come with them to *Urgens*, in order to get them received in quality of Succeſſors to their Father: The eldeſt of thoſe two Brothers might have been then ſixteen, and the youngeſt fourteen: With that Intention they actually advanced as far as a certain Fountain in the Country of *Piſhga*, which is but one day's Journey from *Urgens*, where they ſtaid ten days. *Arap Mahamet Chan* having been informed of the evil Deſigns of his two Sons, ſent to tell them to come to him, and that he would give them the Town of *Vaſir* for a Portion: But they anſwer'd, They would come as ſoon as their Men were got together.

The Rebellion by being neglected grows formidable.

It was in the Power of *Arap Mahamet Chan* to have ſtifled theſe Seeds of Trouble in their Birth, becauſe he had no more to do than publiſh a Prohibition, that none ſhould go join the Princes; and it is certain, that no body would have been raſh enough to form a Thought of diſobeying ſuch a Command, ſeeing that *Arap Mahamet Chan* was at that time ſo much feared by all his Subjects, that if he had forbidden them to have any Commerce with their Wives for a Year together, they would not only have obeyed him without the leaſt Oppoſition, but they would even have avoided coming too near their Houſes, for fear they ſhould be accuſed of diſobeying the Orders of the *Chan:* but as he knew many People went to ſee the two Princes, and that he took no vigorous Meaſures to hinder them, they imagined what they did was by his own Conſent.

The Rebels invade Choraſſan.

The two Princes judging themſelves ſtrong enough to form ſome Enterprize, made an Irruption into the Country of *Choraſſan*; and being

ing returned from thence loaded with Booty, they ſent two *Perſians* as a Preſent to their Father; after which having again poſſeſſed their firſt Camp about the Fountain of *Piſhga*, they diſmiſſed all their Troops, and kept in all but eighty Men about them. In this Place *Arap Mahamet Chan* ſent again to them one of his Lords of the Tribe of the *Vigurs*, called *Kurbauc Hadſi*, to exhort them to come before him: but that Envoy returning the next Day in the Evening, gave the *Chan* an Account that all the *Usbecks* who dwelt between the Countries of *Darugan* and *Bakirgan* had joined with the Princes, and that they had no ſooner underſtood his Commiſſion, than all thoſe Men had unanimouſly anſwer'd, That the Princes had no need to go ſee their Father, and that they had nothing to do with him: that ſuch an Anſwer had indeed appeared very brutiſh to him, but that he was willing to relate exactly what had been ſaid to him upon that Occaſion, to the end the *Chan* might take his Meaſures accordingly; that for his Part he did not doubt but they would break out forthwith in open Rebellion, and that the beſt Counſel he had to give the *Chan* in that Juncture, was to retire immediately to *Chajuk*.

Upon that Report, *Arap Mahamet Chan* being ſeized with Fear, departed inſtantly for *Chajuk*. The two Princes being informed of the Retreat of their Father, went a-new to ravage the Lands belonging to the *Perſians*; and at their Return, they ſeized all the Granaries of their Father, and diſtributed all the Corn which they found there among their Troops, which increaſed them conſiderably: Wheat was at that time ſo cheap in the Country of *Charaſ'm*, that one might have had two hundred pounds of it for one *Tanga*; and that proceeded from hence, that all the People who

Arap Mahamet Chan *retires to* Chajuk.

who dwelt from the ſmall Town of *Modekan* to this ſide of *Bakirgan*, and as far as the Country of *Kuigan*, ſowed nothing but Wheat; and as *Arap Mahamet Chan* poſſeſſed a great Extent of Country on that ſide, he had cauſed the River *Kheſill* to be cut behind the Town of *Tuk*, and by means of that Opening, and divers ſmall Canals which proceeded from it, he could ſupply his Lands with as much Water as was neceſſary to make them fruitful, and when 'twas thought they had enough of it, they ſhut that Opening and the River reſumed its uſual Courſe into the Sea of *Maſanderan*.

Arap Mahamet Chan finding the Number of the Partiſans of the two Princes multiply'd from Day to Day, reſolved at laſt to come to an Agreement with them, giving up to them the Town of *Vaſir*, with all the *Turkmanns* depending on it: After which the two Princes, followed by 4000 Men, came to *Chajuk* to ſalute their Father.

Arap Mahamet Chan agrees with the Princes.

Four Years after, *Ilbars Sultan* having reſolved to aſſemble his Troops, under Pretence that he would go and beſiege *Jaurſurdi*, marked out a Place called *Sayzakuduk*, which lies to the North of *Vaſir*, for their Rendezvous: but underſtanding in that Place, that *Arap Mahamet Chan* was on the Road for *Urgens*, he turned immediately towards *Chajuk*, and took that Town: *Arap Mahamet Chan* having been informed before he got to *Urgens* of what had happen'd to *Chajuk*, found himſelf at a loſs what Courſe to take on that Occaſion; but ſome of his Lords having counſell'd him to return to *Chajuk*, being of Opinion that *Ilbars Chan* would be no ſooner inform'd that his Father was returning, than he would quit the Town, he followed their Advice, and retook the Road to *Chajuk*. In the way

New Rebellion of Ilbars Sultan.

way he came to lie at a little Burrough nigh the Town of *Chajuk*, called *Chaſgan*; *Ilbars Sultan* having been informed thereof, ſent thither five hundred Men of his Troops, who entring the Burrough in the Night, ſeized the Perſon of *Arap Mahamet Chan*, and all the Lords of his Retinue, and carry'd them to *Chajuk*, where *Ilbars Sultan* detained them all as his Priſoners. He diſtributed after that among his Troops, all the Money in his Father's Cheſt, which he had been ſo many Years gathering, as well as all the Goods of all the Lords who had been taken in his Father's Retinue.

Arap Mahamet Chan taken Priſoner.

Iſphandiar Sultan made his Abode then at *Haſſaraſſap*; but *Abulgaſi Sultan*, and *Shariph Mahamet Sultan*, who were both at *Urgens*, being informed of that deteſtable Action of *Ilbars Sultan*, reſolved immediately to make War againſt him; and *Habaſh Sultan* himſelf, who was likewiſe at that time at *Urgens*, offer'd to accompany them in that Expedition: Nevertheleſs ſome Lords, who were of their Attendance, diverted them from that Reſolution, by reaſon that ſuch an Expedition might put the Life of their Father in danger; and that *Ilbars Sultan*, in deſpair to ſee himſelf preſs'd too far, might perhaps be capable of carrying it to an Extremity againſt him; whereas, if they let him alone, all that he would do to his aged Father might be to take from him all he had, and afterwards let him go, which actually happen'd a ſhort while after; for *Ilbars Sultan* having accompliſhed his wicked Will, ſet his Father at Liberty, and return'd to the Place of his uſual Reſidence, which was in the Neighbourhood of *Urgens*; after which *Habaſh Sultan* went likewiſe to *Vaſir*.

Releaſed again.

Arap

Ilbars Sultan *flies to the Deſart.*

Arap Mahamet Chan returning afterwards to *Urgens*, accompany'd by his Son *Iſphandar Sultan*, they took meaſures to make ſure of the Perſon of *Ilbars Sultan*, who ſmelling it out, fled to the Deſart, accompany'd with only five or ſix Perſons; yet for all that, they ruined his Habitations, and removed elſewhere the greater part of his Subjects. At their Return from this Expedition, *Abulgaſi Sultan* went towards Evening to ſee his Father, who dwelt at *Urgens*, and told him, that notwithſtanding *Ilbars Sultan* was fled to the Deſart, that Affair might yet be forthwith put an end to, if he would leave it to him: That for that purpoſe, he would begin by going to *Vaſir* and killing *Habaſh Sultan*, who always carry'd on a cloſe Correſpondence with *Ilbars Sultan*, and from thence he would go and do as much to the latter, and that he would take his meaſures ſo right, that he muſt be very cunning if he eſcaped him; that it would be better for him to have but five Sons who were obedient to him, than to have two more and be continually expoſed to their criminal Attempts; but his Father would determine nothing, and told him, that he muſt return to him at Night-fall, becauſe he had a mind to take the Advice of one of his Lords called *Zin Hadſi*, upon that Propoſal.

Abulgazi Sultan *propoſes to kill his Brothers* Ilbars *and* Habaſh Sultan.

Zin Hagi *againſt that Propoſal.*

Abulgaſi Sultan returning to his Father at the Hour appointed, *Arap Mahamet Chan* told him, that he had conſulted *Zin Hadſi* about the Buſineſs, and that he did not approve of it at all: whereupon *Abulgaſi Sultan* deſired him to conſider, that at the time when he ſent the Brother of *Zinhadſi* to *Ilbars* and *Habaſh Sultan*, on their Return from the Country of *Choraſſan*, to preſs them to come to ſee him, he had ſo magnify'd the Forces of thoſe Princes at his Return, tho

tho they had not actually then above eighty Men about them, that he was determined thereupon to retire to *Chajuk*, inſtead of having them ſeized, as he might eaſily have done, if he had not taken care to prepoſſeſs him by falſe Reports; that all thoſe to whom he had communicated his Deſign altogether approved of it, except only *Zin Hadſi*; that that confirmed him entirely in the Opinion, that all the paſt Circumſtances of thoſe Troubles had given him more than once, *viz.* that *Zin Hadſi*, and his Brother *Kurbauc* were Traitors, and that they held criminal Correſpondence with *Ilbars Sultan*, by means of *Doſtum* and *Iſhim* their two other Brothers, who were the moſt intimate Confidents of that Prince, and who being the Authors of all thoſe Troubles, could not hope to ſave their Heads, if *Ilbars Sultan* happen'd to loſe his Life; that he had been intirely ſtript and thrown into a Priſon like a Beggar, but that much worſe would yet happen to him if he did not for once take up a Reſolution to remedy it, and that he would repent afterwards too late of his unwillingneſs to follow his Counſel.

Abulgazi Sultan accuſes Zin Hag and his Brothers.

But *Arap Mahamet Chan* having conſtantly refuſed to enter into thoſe Meaſures, *Abulgaſi Sultan* went to *Iſphandiar Sultan* to intreat him to go and execute that Deſign unknown to his Father; but *Iſphandiar Sultan* would have no hand in it, and deſired his Brother to ſpeak no more to him about that Affair. In the mean time as *Habaſh* and *Ilbars Sultan* had their Spies every where, one of the principal Domeſticks of *Iſphandiar Sultan* having informed *Habaſh Sultan* of the Project which *Abulgaſi Sultan* had form'd on that Occaſion againſt his Life, he never forgave it *Abulgaſi Sultan*. Some time after *Arap Mahamet Chan* returning to *Chajuk*, and

Arap Mahamet Chan and Iſphandiar Sultan againſt the Propoſal.

Iſphandiar Sultan to *Haſſaraſſap*, *Habaſh Sultan* ſent privately to *Ilbars Sultan* to let him know that it was time to return immediately, ſeeing his Father was return'd to *Chajuk*; nevertheleſs that was not done ſo ſecretly, but *Abulgaſi Sultan* was appriz'd of it; whereupon he repaired to his Father at *Chajuk* for fear of ſome Accident, and from thence he went to the Town of *Kaht*, which his Father had made over to him.

Arap Mahamet Chan *marches againſt* Ilbars *and* Habaſh Sultan.

Five Months after, *Arap Mahamet Chan* beginning to repent his not having follow'd the Advice of *Abulgaſi Sultan*, ſent his Orders to *Iſphandiar* and *Abulgaſi Sultan* to aſſemble all the Troops they could and come to join him immediately; and as *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* arriv'd juſt in that Interval at *Chajuk* to pay a Viſit to his Mother, he kept him alſo with him. While *Iſphandiar* and *Abulgaſi Sultan* were gathering their Troops, *Arap Mahamet Chan* ſent to tell *Habaſh* and *Ilbars Sultan* that they had in their Attendance ten Perſons who never ceaſed giving them evil Counſel againſt him; that provided they would deliver up to him thoſe ten Perſons, he would willingly pardon them all that was paſt; but that in caſe they would be ſo obſtinate as to keep them about them, he would not own them from that time forward for his Children. Upon the Princes refuſing to deliver him up the Perſons in queſtion, he was fain to have recourſe to Arms, and *Arap Mahamet Chan* advanced for that purpoſe with his Troops as far as the Burrow of *Candum*, which is not far from *Chajuk*, with a Reſolution to wait in that Place to be joined by his two Sons.

Abulgazi Sultan's *Advice.*

Abulgaſi Sultan having aſſembled his Troops, cauſed them to march leiſurely towards the Place of Rendezvous; but for his own part he advanced before and came and joined his Father late

late in the Evening after he had lain down, informing him that he left *Kaht* that Morning: Whereupon his Father having aſked him where he had left his Troops, he anſwer'd they were on the March to join him, but that he was in haſte to ſee him alone, in order to propoſe to him, that when *Iſphandiar Sultan* had joined him with his Troops, he ſhould march without Noiſe along the right Bank of the River, while he with the eight hundred Men which were with him ſhould oblige all the *Turkmanns* which incamped in the Deſart, more than the half of which were his Subjects, to join him; and that in caſe thoſe among the *Turkmanns*, who were the Subjects of *Habaſh* and *Ilbars Sultan*, ſhould be reſtif, he would deſtroy them intirely, and would order it in ſhort in ſuch a manner, that no *Turkmann* ſhould join the Princes, being very certain that without the *Turkmanns* they could not equip four hundred Men; that all he had to do was to ſee whether he would follow his Counſel or not, and that in this laſt Caſe he would waſh his Hands from all the Miſchief that ſhould come of it: But his Father anſwer'd him, that he could not approve of his Counſel, and that all he had to do was to advance with his Troops; which having been executed, they joined *Arap Mahamet Chan* in a Place called *Caſtmunum*; and *Iſphandiar Sultan* being likewiſe arrived with his Troops, they enter'd into the Country of *Ikzi-Kumani* *.

In that Place *Abulgaſi Sultan* came again to ſet upon his Father, to perſuade him to detach him or his Brother *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* to make a Diverſion among the *Turkmanns*, without being able to get him to hearken to Reaſon

Arap Mahamet Chan rejects the Advice of Abulgazi Sultan.

[* *Probably ſo called from the* Cumanians.]

thereupon, tho he might ſee plainly enough the great Prejudice he did himſelf thereby. Advancing afterwards by ſlow Marches as far as a ſmall Canal, called *Taſhli Germiſh*, which *Aly Sultan* had alſo cauſed to be cut for the Conveniency of his Lands, the two Princes who had time to get all their Forces together, came and charged him ſo briſkly, that his Men not being able to withſtand ſo ſmart an Attack, began preſently to fly, and left that unfortunate Prince a ſecond time Priſoner in the Hands of his Sons, who ſent him immediately under a ſtrong Guard to the Place of their uſual Reſidence After this Defeat *Iſphandiar Sultan* retired to *Haſſaraſſap*, and *Abulgaſi Sultan* to *Kaht*, and from thence into *Great Bucharia*, to *Imam Culi Chan*, who had ſucceeded *Abdulmomin Chan**. *Imam Culi Chan*, was the Son of *Jar Mahamet Sultan*, Son of *Mankiſhlak Sultan*, Son of *Sarak Sultan*, Son of *Mahamet Chan*, Son of *Timur Sultan*, Son of *Timur Kattalak Oglan*, Son of *Timur-beg Oglan*, Son of *Kutlak Timur Oglan*, Son of *Tumgan*, Son of *Abai*, Son of *Avas Timur*, Son of *Togai Timur*, Son of *Zuzi Chan*, Son of *Zingis Chan*; but let us return to the Hiſtory.

Is taken Priſoner a ſecond time by his Rebel Sons.

Iſphandiar Chan having ſhut himſelf up with his Brothers *Shariph Mahamet Sultan*, and *Charaſs'm Chan Sultan* in the Town of *Haſſaraſſap*, *Ilbars* and *Habaſh Sultan* came and beſieged them; but after forty days Siege they came to an Accommodation together: After which *Iſphandiar Sultan* retiring to the *Shah* of *Perſia*'s Court, under pretence of going to pay his Devotions

Chowarazm *poſſeſſed by* Ilbars *and* Habaſh Sultan.

* Abdulmomin Chan *was the laſt Prince of the Poſterity of* Sheybani Chan, *who reigned in* Great Bucharia; *for after having been aſſaſſinated, the Deſcendants of* Togai Timur, *youngeſt Son of* Zuzi Chan, *poſſeſſed the Throne of that Country.*

at

at *Mechka*, *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* remained in Poſſeſſion of the Town of *Haſſaraſſap*: *Charaſ'm Chan Sultan* was then but twelve Years old, and his Brother *Augan Sultan*, who was brought up with his Mother at *Chajuk*, was but ten. *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* having likewiſe quitted the Town of *Haſſaraſſap*, after poſſeſſing it four Months, repaired to his Brother *Abulgaſi Sultan* in *Great Bucharia*, and by his Departure, *Habaſh* and *Ilbars Sultan* became poſſeſſed of all the Country of *Charaſ'm*: After which thoſe two Princes divided between them the Dominions of their Father, in ſuch wiſe that *Habaſh Sultan* had for his Share the Towns of *Urgens* and *Vaſir*, with their Dependences; and *Ilbars Sultan*, *Chajuk* and *Haſſaraſſap*, with their Appendages. They aſſigned to their Father the little Town of *Kumkula*, to live there with his three Wives and his two youngeſt Sons; but a Year after *Ilbars Sultan* having ſent for his Father, with two Brothers aforeſaid, without the Knowledge of his Brother *Habaſh Sultan*, cauſed him to be put to death with his Son *Charaſ'm Sultan*, and ſent *Augan Sultan* the youngeſt, to *Habaſh Sultan*, to the end he might in like manner order him to be executed: But *Habaſh Sultan* unwilling to imbrue his Hands in the innocent Blood of his Brother, was ſatisfy'd to ſend him to the *Czar* of the *Uruſſes*, where he died in proceſs of Time. As to the two Sons of *Iſphandiar Sultan*, the eldeſt of which was at that time but three Years old, and the youngeſt but one and a half, *Ilbars Sultan* had them educated at *Chajuk*. *Arap Mahamet Chan* loſt his Life in the Year 1031, called *It*, or the *Dog*, after having reigned twenty Years.

Mecca.

Ilbars Sultan *puts his Father and two of his Brothers to death.*

An. Dom. 1621.

CHAP. X.

Of the Reign of Iſphandiar Chan, *and of that of his Brother* Shariph Mahamet Chan.

Iſphandiar Sultan *repairs to* Chowarazm.

THE News of the Death of *Arap Mahamet Chan* having reach'd the Court of the *Shah* of *Perſia*, the *Shah* gave three hundred choſen Men to *Iſphandiar Sultan*, to go try if he could put himſelf in poſſeſſion of his Father's Dominions: *Iſphandiar Sultan* having been joined on the Road by ſeventy *Turkmanns* of the Tribe of *Taka*, and by a hundred others of the Tribe of *Jamut*, advanced with his ſmall Troops directly forward to the Town of *Tuk*, in the Neighbourhood of which he knew *Habaſh Sultan* at that time incamped: but arriving about Midnight at his Camp, he found him not there, becauſe a Lord of his Vaſſals had given him a Feaſt that very Day; *Habaſh Sultan* had alſo reſolv'd to ſpend the Night with that Lord, when he heard of a ſudden the Trumpet ſound, which having given him to underſtand there were Enemies in the Neighbourhood, ſeeing it is forbidden to ſound the Trumpet upon any other Account, he mounted Horſe as faſt as he could and fled for Shelter to his Brother *Ilbars Suttan*; after which all thoſe who ſtill retained any Veneration for the Memory of *Arap Mahamet Chan*, as well as thoſe who had been before of the Number of the Subjects of *Abulgaſi Sultan*, and of *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* his Sons, came and joined *Iſphandiar Sultan*, and his Affairs were taking the beſt Turn in the World, when the

the Malice of one *Naſar Chodſa* intirely changed the Face of them.

This Man who was deſcended of the Poſterity of a holy Man of the Country of *Bakirgan*, called *Sagidatta*, was intirely devoted to *Ilbars Sultan*, who had marry'd his Daughter; and ſeeing the Storm which was riſing againſt his Son-in-Law, he ſent to bid him take Courage, and to tell him that he would be with him in two days, with all the Men he could get together in his Neighbourhood. For this purpoſe, having armed in haſte fifty Men, to which he ſtill joined all the People he met upon the Road, he went and poſſeſſed himſelf of the Ford of the River *Kheſill*, which was on that ſide, to obſtruct the Paſſage of the Men that had a mind to join *Iſphandiar Sultan*; after which he took the *Coran* in his Hands and began to curſe *Iſphandiar Sultan* with a loud Voice, giving out that he had embraced the Religion of the *Perſians*, and that wherever he came he put to the Sword all the Men, and condemned the Women and Children to ſlavery; and to the end they might the more eaſily give Credit to what he ſaid, he confirmed it with the ſolemneſt Oaths he would deviſe. This Diſcourſe made ſuch Impreſſion on many of the common People, who could not believe that a Man of his Birth would make uſe of the *Coran* and all that was ſacred to abuſe them; that inſtead of going to join *Iſphandiar Sultan*, as they at firſt deſigned, they went to reinforce the Troops of the two Princes, and the reſt reſolved to leave them to agree among themſelves without meddling in the Matter.

His Deſign defeated by Naſir Choga.

Ilbars and *Habaſh Sultan* by this means found themſelves ſoon in a Condition to go in queſt of their eldeſt Brother, and the two Armies meeting

Iſphandiar Sultan retires towards Mankiſhlak.

meeting, *Iſphandiar Sultan* had the worſt, and was obliged after a new bloody Action to retire towards *Mankiſhlak*: In that Place he was joined a-new by much People, and among the reſt by three thouſand *Turkmanns* of that Neighbourhood, as well as by a great Number of *Usbecks* who began to be weary of the Government of *Habaſh* and *Ilbars Sultan*. With this Reinforcement he went back again, and his Brothers having advanced to meet him with a conſiderable Army, they were continually fighting for twenty two days together: but at length *Iſphandiar Sultan* having carry'd the Victory, and taken his Brother *Ilbars Sultan* Priſoner, he cauſed him to be put to death immediately. *Habaſh Sultan* took Refuge among the *Mankatts*, who inhabit along the Banks of the *Sirr*; but not thinking himſelf ſafe enough with them, he retired to a Lord of the *Mankatts* called *Sharnik Mirſa*, who dwelt about the Banks of the *Jemm*, hoping that the Remembrance of what he did while he reigned at *Urgens*, as having ſent back all the Priſoners of the *Mankatts* which were in his Domains, would procure him a good Reception with the chief of that Tribe: but *Sharnik Mirſa* deteſting his Perfidiouſneſs cauſed him to be arreſted, and ſent him to his Brother *Iſphandiar Sultan*, who had him put to death without delay; ſuch was the End of *Habaſh* and *Ilbars Sultan*, and they both loſt their Lives without leaving Heirs behind them: After which *Iſphandiar Sultan* was ſolemnly acknowledged in quality of *Chan*, which happened in the Year 1032, called *Tongus*, or the Hog.

Death of Ilbars *and* Habaſh Sultan.

Iſphandiar Sultan *proclaimed* Chan, *An. Dom.* 1622.

Two Years after *Iſphandiar Chan* prepared to chaſtiſe the *Usbecks* within the Juriſdiction of *Chajuk*, whom he look'd upon as the Authors of all the paſt Misfortunes of his Family; but thoſe who

Iſphandiar Chan *chaſtiſes the* Usbecks *about* Chajuk.

who ſuſpected his Deſign, fled ſome to the *Mankatts* and the *Caſats*, and others to the Country of *Ma-urenner*. Three Years after, ſome of the *Usbecks*, who had fled to the *Mankatts* and the *Caſats*, having returned to the Number of three thouſand Families, went to ſettle near the Shores of the Sea of *Maſanderan* about the Mouth of the River *Amu*: Upon this News, ſome of thoſe who had taken Refuge in the Country of *Ma-urenner* deſigned likewiſe to return, and to that purpoſe began their Journey about eight hundred in Number: But *Iſphandiar Chan* who always diſtruſted them, having been informed of it, came upon them by ſurprize with ſome Troops upon the Banks of the River *Kheſill*, towards the Town of *Kaht*, and put them all to the Sword.

Iſphandiar Chan died the firſt Day of the Year 1044, called *Gilki*, or the Horſe, after having reigned twelve Years. After his Death, his Brother *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* took the Quality of *Chan*, and fixt his Reſidence at *Urgens*; that Prince was much at Variance with the *Callmaks*, who came in his Time and ſeized a great part of the Country of *Charaſ'm*. He died in the Year 1052.

Dies A.D. 1634.

Callmaks *ſeize part of* Chowarazm.

An. Dom. 1642.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

Concerning the firſt Years of the Life of Abulgaſi Chan.

An. Dom. 1605. *Abulgaſi Sultan* was born at *Urgens* in the Year 1014, called *Tauſhan*, or the Hare, on *Monday* in the Month of *Aſfet*, at Sun-riſe. It happen'd the ſame Year, ſome time after the Birth of *Abulgaſi Sultan*, that ten Merchants of the Town of *Urgens* being on the Road going to trafick with the *Uruſſes*, they fell into the Hands of the *Coſacks*, towards the Banks of the River *Jaigik*; who after having ſlain eight, gave the two others their Lives on Condition they inform'd them exactly of the preſent Condition of the Town of *Urgens*; and if it was true that there were no Soldiers in that Town during the Summer; whereupon one of the two Merchants, who was a Stranger, originally of *Turkeſtan*, having aſſured them that there were no armed Men all the Summer in the Town, but many a days Journey from thence, and that there was a Deſart on one ſide of the Town, by which they might eaſily enter without being perceived by any body, the *Coſacks* reſolved to go thither with a Party of 1000 Men, and to make uſe of that Man for a Guide.

Coſaks *of* Jaigik *invade* Chowarazm.

Coſaks *ſurprize* Urgens.

At their Arrival at *Urgens*, they enter'd directly into the City by the Gate of *Mirſa*, [or of the Prince] which opens to the Deſart, and that with ſo little Noiſe, that going to kill a Butcher, who was the firſt Man they met in the Town, he began to revile them, believing them to have been the *Chan*'s People, bawling out, "What are you going "to do, you *Armenians!* I will go and com- "plain to the *Chan* of you, who will have you "hang'd." But the *Coſacks* for all that kill'd him

him, and a thouſand other Inhabitants of the Town. *Arap Mahamet Chan* hearing of their Invaſion in his Summer-Camp upon the Banks of the River *Amu*, went and cut off their Retreat and handled them in the manner we have related above: Forty days after this happen'd, *Abulgaſi Sultan* came into the World, which made his Father *Arap Mahamet Chan* ſay, that Child will be very happy becauſe his Enemies were defeated before he was born; and in regard the Mother of the Infant was deſcended from the Branch of the *Gaſi*'s, he gave him the Name of *Abulgaſi Bayadur*. *Coſaks defeated.*

Abulgaſi Bayadur Sultan was the Son of *Arap Mahamet Chan*, Son of *Hadſim Chan*, Son of *Akattai Chan*, Son of *Amunak*, Son of *Jadigar Chan*, Son of *Timur Sheich Chan*, Son of *Hadſi Taulai*, Son of *Arab Shah*, Son of *Fulat*, Son of *Mengu Timur Chan*, Son of *Badikull*, Son of *Zuzi Buga*, Son of *Bayadur Chan*, Son of *Sheybani Chan*, Son of *Zuzi Chan*, Son of *Zingis Chan*, Son of *Jeſſugi Bayadur Chan*, Son of *Bortan Chan*, Son of *Cabull Chan*, Son of *Tumana Chan*, Son of *Baſſicar Chan*, Son of *Kaydu Chan*, Son of *Dutumin Chan*, Son of *Tocha Chan*, Son of *Budenſir Mogak*, Son of the Widow *Alancu*, Grand-daughter of *Julduſs Chan* by his Son, who dying young, *Alancu* was brought up in the Houſe of his Grandfather *Julduſs Chan*, who was the Son of *Mengli Chodſa*, Son of *Temirtaſh Chan*, Son of *Kaymazu Chan*, Son of *Simſanzi Chan*, Son of *Bukbendu Chan*, Son of *Menkoazin Borell Chan*, Son of *Kipzi Mergan Chan*, Son of *Bizin Kajan Chan*, Son of *Kaw-idill Chan*, Son of *Bertezena Chan*, between whom and the Founder of his Houſe called *Kajan*, there is an Interval of 450 Years, which takes in the time that the *Moguls* were confined among the Mountains of *Irgana-* *Genealogy of Abulgazi Bayadur Chan.*

kon,

kon. *Kajan* was the Son of *Ill Chan*, Son of *Tinjis Chan*, Son of *Mengli Chan*, Son of *Juldus Chan*, near Relation of *Ay Chan*, Brother of *Kiun Chan*, Son of *Ogus Chan*, Son of *Cara Chan*, Son of *Mogull* or *Mung'l Chan*, Son of *Alenza Chan*, Son of *Kajuk Chan*, Son of *Dibbakui Chan*, Son of *Jelza Chan*, Son of *Taunak Chan*, Son of *Turk*, Son of *Japhis*, Son of the Prophet *Nui*, Son of *Zamach*, Son of *Matuſhlach*, Son of the Prophet *Idris*, Son of *Berdi*, Son of *Melahil*, Son of *Shinan*, Son of *Anus*, Son of the Prophet *Shiſs*, Son of the Prophet *Adam*, ſurnamed *Saphi Jula*.

Safi Allah. The Mother of *Abulgaſi Sultan* was called *Mirbanu Chanum*, and was the Daughter of *Dſangaſi Sultan*, Son of *Shirgaſi Sultan*, Son of *Sultan Gaſi*, Son of *Ilbars Chan*, Son of *Burga Sultan*, Son of *Jadigar Chan*; inſomuch that *Abulgaſi Sultan* being deſcended by his Mother from *Burga Sultan*, eldeſt Son of *Jadigar Chan*, and by his Father from *Amunak*, third Son of *Jadigar Chan*, it happen'd that he deſcended, as well by the Father's as the Mother's ſide, from the Mother of *Zingis Chan*. *Abulgaſi* having loſt his Mother when he was ſix Years old, his Father had him brought up in his Houſe at *Urgens*, until entring into his ſixteenth Year, he marry'd him, and granted him the half of the Town of *Urgens*; whereof at the ſame time, he aſſigned the other half to his Brother *Habaſh Sultan*. A Year after, upon ſome Differences which *Abulgaſi Sultan* had with his Brothers *Habaſh* and *Ilbars Sultan*, he went to his Father at *Chajuk*, who gave him the Town of *Kaht* for his Portion. Some time after, having been obliged by the Command of his Father to come and join him with his Troops againſt *Habaſh* and *Ilbars Sultan*, they came to a bloody Battle, in

Marry'd at 16.

An. 1030.

An. 1031.

in which *Abulgaſi Sultan* fought with ſo much bravery, that at the third Charge he found himſelf ſo hemm'd in by the Enemy, that he was upon the Point of being made Priſoner; when in the nick of time he was brought off by ſix of his own Men, and with this Reinforcement he deliver'd himſelf out of the Hands of forty Men, who had ſurrounded him: On this Occaſion he had the Misfortune to receive a Shot with an Arrow in the Mouth, which wounded him in ſuch ſort that he was obliged afterwards to have ſome little Bone of the Jaw taken away on the ſide which the Arrow had fractur'd.

Abulgazi Sultan *flies into* Great Bucharia.

Abulgaſi Sultan going to fly after the Loſs of the Battle, fell with his Horſe; but one of his Men having brought him another Horſe, he made towards a River which he was obliged to croſs by Swimming. On his Arrival at the River ſide, he there found three of his own Men, who help'd him to put off his Coat of Mail the better to paſs the Stream: But he had ſcarce got it off before they came running after him, crying kill! kill! Whereupon throwing himſelf briſkly into the River, he ran great Riſk of being drown'd, the Current being very rapid in that Place, if giving the Horſe his Head, and holding by the Main, he had not found means to redouble the Vigour of his Horſe, and in that manner happily to gain the other ſide of the River. 'Tis true, they did not fail to ſend many Arrows after him; but none of them reach'd him. On the other ſide he was rejoined by the three Men of his Party, who had paſs'd the River with the ſame good Fortune as himſelf. After which he took the Road to *Kaht*, where he found ten more of his Men, and ſtaying only to change Horſes in that Town, he went and croſs'd the Country of *Ma-urenner*

to *Samarkant*, in order to go to *Imam Culi Chan* in *Great Bucharia*. That Prince receiv'd him very well, and adviſed him not to lay too much to heart the Misfortunes of his Houſe; that being young, and full of Spirit, he would infallibly find in time ſome favourable Occaſion to return with Honour into his own Country, in caſe God ſpar'd him Life.

Returns to Urgens. We have declar'd amply before, the Conſequences of thoſe Troubles which obliged *Iſphandiar Sultan* to retire into *Perſia*, and *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* to repair to his Brother into *Great Bucharia*. After *Abulgaſi Sultan* and his Brother had ſpent two Years in that Country, they learned that *Iſphandiar Sultan* had vanquiſhed his two Rebel Brothers, and had re-enter'd into the Poſſeſſion of his Father's Dominions; whereupon they took leave of *Imam Culi Chan*, and return'd to *Urgens*. At their Arrival in that Town, they cauſed *Iſphandiar Sultan* to be proclaimed in quality of *Chan*, and divided among them the Dominions of their Father, in ſuch ſort, that *Iſphandiar Chan* had the Towns of *Chajuk*, *Haſſaraſſap* and *Kaht*, *Abulgaſi Sultan* the Town of *Urgens*, with its Dependencies, and *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* the Town of *Vaſir*; *Abulgaſi Sultan* was then juſt nineteen Years of Age.

An. Dom. 1033.

Abulgazi Sultan *propoſes to kill the* Turkmanns. The Year after, all the principal among the Subjects of *Iſphandiar Chan* having gone in the *Autumn* to pay their Court to the *Chan*, *Abulgaſi Sultan* deſign'd to go thither alſo; but before his Departure he invited *Shariph Mahamet Sultan*, with three Lords of his Vaſſals to his Houſe, and at their Arrival he aſked *Shariph Mahamet Sultan*, in Preſence of two of his Vaſſal Lords, if perchance there was not ſome Animoſity between him and *Iſphandiar Chan*: and *Sha-*

riph Mahamet Sultan having aſſured him there was not, he took an Oath of his Brother and the five other Lords who aſſiſted at this Conference, that they ſhould not divulge to any one what he was going to truſt with them; after which, he told them he could not comprehend what *Iſphandiar Chan* meant by keeping the *Turkmanns* about him a whole Year; that may be his Deſign was to put to the Sword all the *Usbecks* about *Chajuk*, to revenge himſelf on them for having always favour'd *Ilbars Sultan*, and that being ſo, he would not fail to demand Help of them at their Arrival at *Chajuk*; that for that reaſon he believ'd the beſt Courſe they could take on that Occaſion was not to go thither at all, and that probably that might divert him from ſuch a Reſolution; but in Caſe they would abſolutely go there, it was his Advice to cauſe all the *Turkmanns* to be kill'd which they ſhould meet upon the Road, and afterwards to go and preſent themſelves before *Iſphandiar Chan* with Ropes about their Necks, to implore Pardon for having cauſed thoſe *Turkmanns* to be ſlain without his Knowledge: That the Remembrance of the uſual Treachery of that Nation, and the great occaſions of Complaint which they have had againſt them in time paſt, of which the *Chan* was as well appriſed as themſelves, had moved them to that Action; and that inaſmuch as the thing being done there was no Remedy, they came to put themſelves at his Mercy, to do with them what ſeem'd good unto him: but *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* not being of that Opinion, propoſed killing *Iſphandiar Chan*, and to cauſe *Abulgaſi Sultan* to be received as *Chan* in his room.

Sharif Mahamet Sultan *for killing the* Chan.

That

Propoſal to kill the Chan *rejected.*

That Propoſal was approv'd by four of the Lords who were preſent at that Conference; but the fifth, who was one of the Vaſſals of *Abulgaſi Sultan*, broke all their Meaſures: for not ſatisfy'd with abſolutely rejecting that Propoſal, he proteſted that if ever he heard any more mention of ſuch a Project againſt the Life of the *Chan*, he would not fail to be their Accuſer; and that Lord, who was of the Tribe of the *Vigurs*, was called *Curban Hadſi*: That Accident having obliged them to change their Reſolution, they went to *Chajuk*, and having ſtaid there three days, they intended to return the fourth; when *Iſphandiar Chan* having cauſed *Abulgaſi Sultan* to be arreſted, had all the *Vigurs* and *Naimanns* put to the Sword who were then at *Chajuk*; and notwithſtanding he had forbid any harm to be done to thoſe of the other Tribes of the *Usbecks*, yet the Men to whom he had committed the execution of that Affair, ſlew on that Occaſion 100 other *Usbecks*, tho they were neither Relations nor Friends of the *Vigurs*, or the *Naimanns*; there periſh'd in this manner above 500 *Vigurs* and *Naimanns* in the Town of *Chajuk* only. After which *Iſphandiar Chan* who was reſolved intirely to deſtroy thoſe two Tribes, having ſent Troops towards the Habitations which they poſſeſſed about *Chajuk*, with Orders to kill as many *Vigurs* and *Naimanns* as fell into their Hands; the Commanders of thoſe Troops, notwithſtanding the preciſe Orders of the *Chan*, put to the Sword all the *Usbecks* which dwelt from *Haſſaraſſap*, almoſt as far as the Tower which is upon the Bank of the River *Amu*, without ſparing the Infants at the Breaſt, and afterwards deſtroy'd all their Dwellings.

Abulgazi Sultan *arreſted by the* Chan's *Order.*

The Vigurs *and* Naimanns *put to the Sword.*

One

One ſees upon the ſide of the River *Amu*, a very high Tower built with Stones, about which inhabits a Branch of the *Vigurs* called *Cara Vigurs Tokai*; and 'tis near the Habitations of this Branch of the *Vigurs* that the River *Amu* divides it ſelf into two Arms, one of which paſſes before the ſaid Tower, and is called *Tokai*; and the other, which is the greateſt, having quitted for ſome time paſt its old Bed, throws it ſelf by a large Channel into the River *Kheſill*, near the Town of *Tuk*, which has done much Injury to the City of *Urgens*, at preſent no better than a Deſart; ſince by that Accident the antient Channel of the River *Amu*, which runs along by the Town, is become entirely dry; nevertheleſs the *Chan* continues ſtill to reſide there during the Winter, but at the beginning of Spring he uſually goes to encamp towards the Banks of the River *Amu* with the beſt part of his Subjects, who have almoſt all Lands on that ſide, which they cultivate in Summer, and at the end of Autumn he returns to *Urgens*. But let us return to the Hiſtory.

Stone Tower where the River Amu *divides.*

Iſphandiar Chan not ſatisfy'd with letting the *Vigurs* and *Naimanns* about *Chajuk* and *Haſſaraſ-ſap* feel the Effects of his Anger in the manner we have related, ſent *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* to *Urgens*, with Orders alſo to cauſe the Throats to be cut of all the *Vigurs* and *Naimanns* within the Dependence of that City; but on his Arrival at *Urgens*, the People of thoſe two Tribes gave him to underſtand that they did not intend to let themſelves be maſſacred with Impunity, and that if he perſiſted in the Reſolution to take away their Lives, they had taken all the neceſſary Meaſures to ſell them very dear; but that if the *Chan* was ſatisfy'd with their leaving the Country, they were ready to go into *Great Bucharia*, or ſome where elſe, where they might

Vigurs and Naimanns of Urgens ſtand on their Defence.

find ſome Settlement; and that if the *Chan* would leave them in the quiet Poſſeſſion of their Habitations, they offer'd to receive among them *Abulgaſi Sultan*, with one of the moſt truſty Servants of the *Chan* called *Mahamet Sainbeg*, to have an Eye upon their Conduct. *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* finding theſe Propoſals reaſonable, ſent a *Turkmann* called *Tangrebirdi* to *Iſphandiar Chan* to make a Report of them, and to receive his Orders thereupon. *Iſphandiar Chan* having pitch'd upon the laſt Expedient, gave Command out of hand to *Mahamet Sainbeg* to go thither with *Abulgaſi Sultan*, and carefully obſerve the Motions of the *Usbecks* of *Urgens*.

Abulgazi Sultan *ſent to watch the* Usbecks.

Abulgaſi Sultan being arriv'd among the *Usbecks* of thoſe two Tribes, found there was no Place fit for his Abode thereabouts, becauſe Water was very ſcarce; wherefore he went and ſettled himſelf towards the Banks of the River *Kheill*, in the Neighbourhood of *Tuk*, in a Place where there were then no Dwellings of the *Usbecks*; and he had that Place fortify'd the beſt he could for his Security. A few days after *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* arriving alſo there, went to lodge with his Brother *Abulgaſi Sultan*; and *Mahamet Sainbeg* having afterwards repaired there alſo, took up his Quarters in the Houſe of a *Sart*. At his Arrival eighty *Turkmanns*, who were come thither in the Train of *Shariph Mahamet Sultan*, quitted that Prince and went to join *Mahamet Sainbeg*. In the mean time the *Usbecks* who had their Habitations on the other ſide the River *Kheſill*, having been inform'd of the Arrival of *Abulgaſi Sultan* in their Neighbourhood, thirty of the moſt conſiderable among them came to welcome him, and on that Occaſion they offer'd him a thouſand choice Men to be imploy'd in his Service againſt *Iſphandiar*

phandiar Chan: That for that end they would begin by ſurprizing *Mahamet Sainbeg* and his eighty *Turkmanns*, who had quitted *Shariph Mahamet* to go over to him; and that they would take good heed that not one of them ſhould eſcape, becauſe they ought to look upon them, and all the reſt of the *Turkmanns*, as the only Authors of the Maſſacre of their Brethren; that afterwards they would go and beſiege *Chajuk* during the Winter, and put to the Sword all the *Turkmanns* about that Town.

Abulgazi Sultan's Project to deſtroy the Turkmanns.

But *Abulgaſi Sultan* found this Propoſal altogether impracticable, being perſuaded that the eighty *Turkmanns* would not fail to be upon their Guard; and that as ſoon as they ſhould perceive in the leaſt the Approach of the *Usbecks*, they would take Flight; inſomuch that before they could arrive before *Chajuk*, all the People about the Town would have ſufficient time to retire with their Effects; and that while they were detain'd at the Siege of *Chajuk*, the *Callmaks* would have the beſt Opportunity in the World to come and carry off their Wives and Children, and ſet Fire to their Habitations. Wherefore he was of Opinion they ought to treat *Mahamet Sainbeg* and his eighty *Turkmanns* kindly, and ſend them back with all ſorts of Civilities in order to lull the *Chan* aſleep; that for this purpoſe *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* might go and paſs the Winter at the little Town of *Kajuk*, near *Urgens*; whilſt the *Usbecks* on the other ſide of the River labour'd continually upon a good Intrenchment for their Security, as if they were in great Dread of the *Callmaks*; and that upon the two Roads which lead to the Country of the *Callmaks* they ſhould place good Guards, as tho to obſerve what paſs'd on that ſide; but that towards the beginning of the

Spring, a Man, whom Care had been taken to inſtruct, ſhould come running full ſpeed from towards thoſe Guard-Houſes, with the News that the *Callmaks* had carry'd off three days before ſome of their Centries; and as the Men who had been ſent to diſcover them were able to perceive by the many Fires they made in the Night, that a great Number of them was arriv'd, the Commanders of the Guard-Houſes had reſolv'd upon a Retreat, and had diſpatch'd him to give notice to *Abulgaſi Sultan*; that they had given him three Horſes for more Expedition, two of which they had kill'd on the Road, and that the third had much ado to bring him ſo far, he had rid ſo hard: That on this Advice they ſhould off-hand get together Troops under pretence of going to meet the *Callmaks*, but that in the March *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* ſhould come to join them with his Men at a Place agreed upon with him; after which they ſhould turn of a ſudden towards *Chajuk*, and put to the Sword all the *Turkmanns*; that they ſhould meet with the leſs Difficulty in the Execution of that Project, becauſe the *Turkmanns* of *Chajuk* were accuſtom'd to go and incamp every Spring, about the Seaſon that the Sheep brought forth their Lambs, in the neighbouring Foreſts, where they found Paſture for them; and that the *Sarts* of *Chajuk* went uſually about the ſame time to the Parts where they had their Lands which they cultivated; inſomuch that *Iſphandiar Chan* might then keep at moſt fifty or ſixty Men about him, and that there was all the Probability in the World that he would know nothing of it before they ſhould be in the City.

Mahamet Sainbeg *and the* Turkmanns *retire.*

But the *Usbecks* having no mind to depart from their Enterprize upon the Perſon of *Mahamet Sainbeg*, and the eighty *Turkmanns* which were

were with him; *Mahamet Sainbeg* who found it out, retir'd with his eighty Men at the beginning of the Night, when every body was gone to reſt; and the *Usbecks* arriving after his Departure, *Abulgaſi Sultan* repreſented to them, that as on all Occaſions the ſhorteſt Follies are the beſt, his Advice was to ſend ſome body to *Iſphandiar Chan* to aſſure him they knew not the Reaſon of the ſudden Departure of *Mahamet Sainbeg*, foraſmuch as they had not given him any Cauſe to complain of them; and that if they had any ill Deſign againſt him, it would have been very eaſy to have hinder'd his Departure from among them. This Propoſal how reaſonable ſoever it was, not being reliſh'd by *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* and the *Usbecks*, who maintain'd that he had no other Meaſures to take but to go with all their Forces to *Chajuk*; *Abulgaſi Sultan* ſuffer'd himſelf at length to be drawn in by the Majority, notwithſtanding that great Precipitancy did not altogether pleaſe him; after which they ſet forward towards *Chajuk*, and after two days March they came in the Evening to the Bridge of *Taſh-kupruk*, in the Country of *Chika*, where they halted the ſpace of forty days; and in the time of their Stay in that Place, they kill'd ſome *Turkmanns* who dwelt thereabout, but they did no hurt to the *Sarts*: Whereupon all the other *Turkmanns* of thoſe Parts retreated to *Chajuk*.

The Usbecks under Sharif Mahamet and Abulgazi Sultan revolt.

In the mean time the *Callmaks* having ſurpriz'd one Part of the Camp of the *Usbecks*, and carry'd away a great Number of them into ſlavery, it extremely diſconcerted their Projects, and many of them deſerted the Army, becauſe they began to have a bad Opinion of the Succeſs of their Enterprize. Upon the News of this Revolt of the *Usbecks*, the *Turkmanns*, who

The Callmaks invade Chowaraam.

dwelt about the Mountain of *Abulchan*, and at *Mankiſhlak*, coming to join *Iſphandiar Chan* at *Chajuk*, he took the Field in his Turn, and having encounter'd the *Usbecks* in the aforeſaid Place, he intirely defeated them. *Abulgaſi Sultan* ſeeing the Battle loſt, began to cry out to his Men that they ſhould all retire into the Intrenchment which they had rais'd to cover their Baggage; and being come there afterwards himſelf, he found four or five hundred of his own Men who were buſy packing up their Awls to be gone: but having ſtop'd them, and all thoſe that follow'd him, he obliged them to ſtand their Ground, and after he had made them diſmount and faſten the Horſes well together, to take from them intirely all hope of ſaving themſelves by Flight, he waited for the Enemy without ſtirring. *Iſphandiar Chan* did not fail in the Evening to draw near his Intrenchment, but *Abulgaſi Sultan* having ſally'd out of it on Foot at the Head of five hundred Men, receiv'd him in ſuch a manner, that not daring to return a ſecond time, he contented himſelf with intrenching himſelf likewiſe on his ſide, at a ſmall diſtance from the Intrenchment of *Abulgaſi Sultan*; and after they had look'd at one another in this manner for ſix days, without either of the Parties daring to renew the Fight, they came the ſeventh Day to an Accommodation. After which each of the two Brothers prepared to return to the Place of his uſual Reſidence; nevertheleſs with this Difference, that *Abulgaſi Sultan* and the *Usbecks* went away in good earneſt, whereas *Iſphandiar Chan* only feign'd to return; for perceiving that he could not force *Abulgaſi Sultan* in his Intrenchment, he had ſet this Treaty on Foot only with the View to draw him into the open Plain, where he promis'd himſelf he ſhould

Usbecks defeated by Iſphandiar Chan.

Accommodation between the Chan *and* Abulgazi Sultan.

ſhould find no Difficulty to put him to the Sword, with all his Men: but as he durſt not open his Deſign to any body, for fear of its taking Wind before the time, it happen'd that the *Turkmanns* were gone to pillage a Burrow inhabited by the *Sarts*, called *Chanaka*, at the time that *Abulgaſi Sultan* and his Men went out of their Intrenchment. *Iſphandiar Chan* vext at having miſs'd his Aim, as ſoon as the *Turkmanns* were return'd, ſet himſelf to purſue *Abulgaſi Sultan* with 5000 Men.

Abulgaſi Sultan, who had in all but 540, ſeeing him make up to him ſuſpected his Deſign; and having cauſed in haſte an Incloſure to be form'd of his Chariots, he defended himſelf with ſo much Reſolution and good Fortune, that *Iſphandiar Chan* was obliged to come to a ſecond Treaty, after having had eighty Men killed, and two thouſand wounded in this laſt Action; whereas *Abulgaſi Sultan* had but twenty dead and a hundred wounded. After which *Abulgaſi Sultan*, and his Brother *Shariph Mahamet Sultan*, being come to make their Abode at *Urgens*, all the *Usbecks* which dwelt before on both ſides of the River *Amu*, came to ſettle themſelves about that City.

Abulgazi Sultan *with* 540 *Men worſts the* Chan *with* 5000.

Some time after, a Comet having appear'd in the Sky, the common People were perſuaded, conſidering the extraordinary Animoſity which reigned among their Princes, it could not but portend great Calamaties to them; and in that Perſuaſion they went by Troops, which they called *Top*, *Top*, ſome into *Great Bucharia*, and others into the Country of *Turkeſtan*; *Abulgaſi Sultan* did in truth all he was able to remedy that Evil, but he could by no means ſtop their Flight; for while he ſent after one Party which went out on one ſide, two or three others went out

Usbecks *quit* Chowarazm *on the Appearance of a Comet.*

another way; inſomuch that having already by
Ramadan. the laſt Day of the Month of *Rameſan*, loſt three conſiderable Troops of his Subjects, one of which retired into *Great Bucharia*, and the other two among the *Caſats* and *Mankatts*, he was conſtrained, that he might not remain alone at the Mercy of *Iſphandiar Chan*, to go ſeek likewiſe
Abulgazi Sultan *retires alſo to* Turkeſtan. Refuge elſewhere. *Shariph Mahamet Sultan*, who was in the ſame Caſe, went on this Occaſion into *Great Bucharia*; but *Abulgaſi Sultan* retir'd towards *Caſatſhia Orda*, and went to viſit *Iſhim Chan* at *Turkeſtan*, where he ſtaid three Months; after which *Iſhim Chan* going to *Taſhkant* to pay his Reſpects to *Turſum Chan*, who was the reigning Prince of thoſe Provinces, he carry'd *Abulgaſi Sultan* with him. On his Arrival at the Court of *Turſum Chan*, he preſented *Abulgaſi Sultan* to him, ſaying this is *Abulgaſi Sultan*, Son of *Arap Mahamet Chan*, whoſe Anceſtors have been Benefactors to many of our Relations who have been obliged to fly to them for Refuge, tho never any of their Family have come to us: Wherefore it is both juſt and reaſonable, that in Conſideration of the Obligations which we owe to his Houſe, you ſhould allow him wherewithal to ſubſiſt according to his Birth at your Highneſſes Court at *Taſhkant*, till he can return into his own Country; whereupon *Turſam Chan* receiv'd him at his Court, and treated
Iſham Chan *of* Turkeſtan *maſſacres* Turſum Chan *of* Taſhkant. him with much Diſtinction. But two years after, *Iſhim Chan* having maſſacred *Turſum Chan*, together with all thoſe of the Tribe of the *Cataguns*, who were his antient Subjects, *Abulgaſi Sultan* could not forbear telling *Iſhim Chan* that he had always flatter'd himſelf with drawing powerful Succours from him and *Turſum Chan*; but ſeeing there was no leſs Diſcord between their Families

milies than there was in his own, he would repair to *Imam Culi Chan.*

On his Arrival in *Great Bucharia* he found a very cold Reception from *Imam Culi Chan*, becauſe he came not directly to his Court; but had choſen rather to retire to that of *Turſum Chan*, who had always been an Enemy to *Imam Culi Chan*; which made him reſolve to acquaint the *Usbecks* who were retir'd into *Great Bucharia*, that not being ſo well receiv'd at the Court of *Imam Culi Chan* as he had reaſon at firſt to hope, he ſaw himſelf obliged to hearken to the *Turkmanns*, who had propoſed to him, that provided he would forget what was paſt they would receive him with open Arms whenever he had a mind to come among them: Whereupon the *Usbecks* aſſured him, that notwithſtanding they had retir'd from him at the time of the Apparition of the Comet, he might always depend upon their Zeal for his Service; that in return they flatter'd themſelves on their ſide that he would not change with regard to them, but would always continue his Protection to them, that they had the more need of it, as they clearly ſaw he could have no dependence on the Promiſe of his Brother *Shariph Mahamet Sultan*, who was naturally ſo unconſtant, that ſuppoſing they ſhould follow him, they ſhould always be in fear, leſt one time or other he ſhould ſide with the *Turkmanns*, and leave them in the Lurch, which they were in no fear of from him, whoſe Stedfaſtneſs was ſufficiently known to them: Laſtly, that he had no more to do but go over to the *Turkmanns* upon the firſt Invitation, and that he might aſſure himſelf that they would all repair to him in proper time.

Abulgazi Sultan *retires into* Great Bucharia.

Shortly

Abulgazi Sultan invited by the Turkmanns, repairs to Chajuk.

Shortly after there came a new Deputy from the *Turkmanns* to *Abulgaſi Sultan*, with the News that his Brother *Iſphandiar Chan* being inform'd that the *Turkmanns* had invited him to their Quarters was frighten'd thereat, and retir'd to *Haſſaraſſap*, fearing ſome Surprize; upon which *Abulgaſi Sultan*, follow'd only by five or ſix Perſons, went directly to *Chajuk*, where he was immediately joined by Numbers of People who flock'd to him from all Parts. Two Months after, he learned that his Brother *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* being reconciled with *Iſphandiar Chan*, was arriv'd at *Haſſaraſſap*, and that they intended to turn all their Forces againſt him.

Defeats Iſphandiar Chan and Sharif Mahamet Sultan.

Upon this Advice *Abulgaſi Sultan* immediately took the Field with what Troops he had, and the two Armies coming to Blows, that of *Abulgaſi Sultan* had the better, which obliged the two Brothers to ſign a Treaty of Peace. Six Months after *Abulgaſi Sultan* being at *Chajuk*, where he kept his uſual Reſidence, ſince his return into the Country of *Charaſs'm*; and ſuſpecting no Treachery from his Brothers, they came on a ſudden with their Troops to beſiege the Town, and all the *Turkmanns* thereabouts joined with them; inſomuch that they had above fifteen thouſand Men, whereas *Abulgaſi Sultan* had only ſix hundred; nevertheleſs he did not loſe Courage, but defended himſelf ſo vigorouſly, that he obliged them at length to return with much Loſs.

Is beſieged by his Brothers in Chajuk.

Defeats Sharif Mahamet Sultan.

After their Retreat he ſent a Party of forty Men towards *Haſſaraſſap*, who having ſlain ſome People upon the Frontiers of the Territory of that Town, return'd with a great Number of Cattle which they had taken in that Inroad; but *Iſphandiar Chan* having been informed of it, ſent *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* with ſome Troops

Troops after them; *Abulgaſi Sultan*'s Men ſent in haſte to *Chajuk* for Succour, upon which *Abulgaſi Sultan* detach'd a hundred Men to ſupport them: The Commander of that Detachment meeting them near a Village of the Territory of *Chajuk*, called *Sultanbach*, which is not far from that Town, juſt at the time when *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* was going to charge them, took the Reſolution to make them advance ſlowly towards the Town with their Booty, and to follow themſelves at their Heels to oppoſe the Efforts of the Enemy. *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* perceiving the Prey ready to eſcape him, ſent for Aid to *Iſphandiar Chan*; and in the mean time he endeavour'd to tire out *Abulgaſi Sultan*'s Men by frequent Skirmiſhes to retard their March the moſt he could. *Iſphandiar Chan* having ſent him a conſiderable Reinforcement, *Abulgaſi Sultan* came in Perſon to relieve his Men, with moſt of the Soldiers which were in the Town of *Chajuk*; and the two Brothers coming to Blows, *Abulgaſi Sultan* put the Troops of *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* to Flight, and purſued them as far as the Body of the Army of *Iſphandiar Chan*; after which a new Treaty of Peace was made, and each of them return'd to his uſual Reſidence.

Iſphandiar Chan caused 800 Usbecks, with their Wives and Children to be slain.

Some time after *Iſphandiar Chan* cauſed the Throats of eight hundred of the principal *Usbecks*, with their Wives and Children, to be cut near the Town of *Kabi*, who came from *Great Bucharia* with deſign to ſettle in the Country of *Arall*; and taking this Occaſion to invite his two Brothers to Court, under pretence of regulating with them what related to the Affairs of the *Usbecks*, he perſuaded his Brother *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* to repair to the Country of *Arall*, among the *Usbecks*: but to make believe

as if he did it of his own Head, and unknown to *Iſphandiar Chan.* Next Day after the Departure of *Shariph Mahamet Sultan*, ſeveral of the principal *Turkmanns* coming early in the Morning to viſit him on that Occaſion, *Iſphandiar Chan* proteſted to them very ſolemnly that it was without his Knowledge that his Brother had undertaken that Voyage, but that without being a Conjurer he could tell them that it was a Plot of *Abulgaſi Sultan.* After he had incenſed them by theſe Inſinuations againſt his Brother, he repreſented to them that it was *Abulgaſi Sultan* who had recalled the *Usbecks* from *Great Bucharia*, in order to ſettle them in the Country of *Arall*, purely with an Intention to make uſe of them afterwards againſt them; that it was he alſo who had perſuaded his Brother *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* to go to the *Usbecks*, who were already ſettled in the Country of *Arall*, to prepare the Wood till they ſhould come and ſet Fire to it: that theſe things giving them to underſtand that he was contriving ſome great Plot againſt them, he judged they had no other Courſe to take on this Occaſion but to prevent him and ſecure his Perſon, deſiring their Opinion thereon.

Incenſes the Turkmanns *againſt* Abulgazi Sultan.

This Propoſal of *Iſphandiar Chan* having been approv'd of by all the Aſſembly, he cauſed the Gates of the Caſtle to be ſhut immediately, and ſent to arreſt *Abulgaſi Sultan*; who far from thinking to defend himſelf againſt ſo many with his ſmall Retinue of five or ſix Perſons, was ſtill faſt aſleep when they came to ſeize him. After which *Iſphandiar Chan* ſet forward in Perſon with his Brother to carry him into *Perſia*; but as ſoon as he arriv'd at *Jaurſurdi* he put him into the Hands of the Governor of that Town, and order'd him to ſend him under a ſtrong Guard into *Perſia.* The Governor of *Jaurſurdi*

Abulgazi Sultan *ſeized in his Bed.*

ſurdi, not daring to truſt his Priſoner with any body, went himſelf with him to *Hamadan*, where *Shah-ſefi* * of the *Perſians*, who ſucceeded *Shah Hiabas Maſi* in the Throne of *Perſia*, was at that time; and that Prince order'd that he ſhould be conducted immediately to *Iſpahan*, where he aſſigned him a good Houſe, and ten thouſand *Tanga* a Year for his Expence; but at the ſame time he had him very carefully watch'd, that he might have no Opportunity of eſcaping.

Sent Priſoner into Perſia.

Abulgaſi Sultan having paſs'd ten Years in that Condition, propos'd at length to three of his Domeſticks whom they had always left about him, that provided they would be faithful to him, he did not deſpair of finding Means to eſcape; whereupon they all three declared that they deſired no better than to return to their Country, and that he ſhould always find them of undoubted Fidelity: Aſſured on that ſide, *Abulgaſi Sultan*, who had form'd the Plan of his Deſign, called to him the Man who had the Guard of him that Day, and whoſe Friendſhip he had purchaſed for ſome time by means of Preſents; and after he had order'd him to take a Horſe, which had been ſent him for his Kitchen, and carry to the Butcher in order that he ſhould kill it, and ſend the Meat home; he ſaid to him, here are a thouſand *Tanga*, of which I make you a Preſent, go and buy your ſelf a pretty Slave, I give you leave to paſs the Night with her, and

Abulgazi Sultan *after ten Years ſtay in* Perſia *contrives to eſcape.*

* Shah Sefi *was Grandſon of* Shah Abbas *the Great, by* Sefi Mirſa *his eldeſt Son, which his too ſevere Father cauſed to be put to death on account of ſome Practices real or ſuppoſed, againſt his Perſon.* Shah Sefi *aſcended the Throne of* Perſia *in the Year* 1629, *at the Age of ſixteen Years, and died in* 1642. *This was a Prince of much Vivacity and Wit; but he addicted himſelf too much to Cruelty and all ſorts of Debaucheries, which ſent him to his Grave in the Flower of his Age, after a Reign of* 13 *Years.*

in

in the Morning you ſhall give me an Account. His Man being gone very joyfully with that Sum of Money and the Horſe, *Abulgaſi Sultan* went in the Evening, with three of his Domeſticks, and took eight Horſes out of a neighbouring Stable, and brought them without Noiſe into his Houſe: After which he cauſed the Beard of himſelf and his three Men to be ſhaved; and at the Entrance of the Night, when every body was laid down, he made one of his Domeſticks put on his beſt Cloaths, who could ſpeak the *Turkiſh* and *Perſian*, becauſe he was to repreſent the Maſter. He diſguiſed alſo the ſecond Domeſtick as a ſort of Gentleman: he cauſed the third to put on a Garb ſuitable to a common Valet; and himſelf was in the Diſguiſe of a Groom.

Diſguiſes himſelf and his Men.

Leaves Iſpahan.

In this Equipage they lead the Horſes very ſoftly out of the Houſe, and mounting at Midnight when they beat the Drum according to the uſual Cuſtom, they arrived at the Gate of the Town the very Moment it was opened; they afterwards continued their Journey very proſperouſly as far as *Baſtam*, which they paſſed thorow in the Evening without any Accident; but three of their Horſes failing on the other ſide of that Town, they were obliged to ſtop at a Village which was on the Road, and *Abulgaſi Sultan* having learned from ſome People who were burying a Corpſe near to it, that that Village was called *Boiiſh*, and that the Inhabitants of the Village were *Sagits*, he gave ten *Tanga* to one of them, ordering him to go and buy them Oats at the Village, and to learn at the ſame time if there were any of the Villagers who would exchange three Horſes with them, which being too fat were not able to ſuſtain the Fatigue of ſo bad a Journey. This Man being gone to the Village to execute his Commiſſion, *Abulgaſi Sultan*

Comes to Baſtam.

Sultan follow'd him immediately with his People, and he among them, who paſſed for the Maſter of the reſt, ſeating himſelf at the Entrance of the Village, upon a Carpet which the Man to whom they had given the Money had ſpread for that Purpoſe before the Gate, one of the Valets ſtood continually behind to wait on him, while the other held the Horſes. In the mean time *Abulgaſi Sultan* being enter'd into the Village to ſwap the three Horſes which were tir'd, there gather'd above two hundred People about him, inſomuch that it look'd like a Fair: he preſently ſwap'd off two of them, but an old Man of ſeventy, with a long grey Beard, who happen'd to be among the Croud, began to ſuſpect ſomething upon *Abulgaſi Sultan*'s aſking the *Sagit*, at whoſe Houſe they had lighted, which was the direct Road to the Village of *Magi*, which was known to none thereabouts but to the Inhabitants of that Village [*Boiiſh*] only; for leaving *Baſtam*, one may take two different Roads, *viz.* the common high Road, and a ſhort Road, which ſtriking directly thro' the Mountains, joins the great Road two days Journey from thence.

Is ſuſpected at the Village of Boiiſh.

The old Man giving Attention to *Abulgaſi Sultan*'s Queſtion, ſpoke thus to the reſt of the Villagers; " Friends, 'tis not for nothing that " theſe Men inquire after the neareſt way to " the Village of *Magi*, which ſcarce one in ten " of our ſelves know, and I have a ſtrong fancy " that this is the Sultan of the *Usbecks*, whom " our *Shah* detains Priſoner, who having found " a way to eſcape is going probably to *Samar-* " *kant*; and as in caſe it be ſo, there will be " infallibly Couriers after him to-morrow or " next day, thoſe who ſwap Horſes with him " will have a bad time of it; wherefore my Ad- " vice to you is, that you make him a Priſoner, " and carry him to *Baſtam*; or if you dare not " ſeize

Speech of one of the Villagers to the reſt.

" ſeize him at leaſt, don't exchange Horſes " with him." Upon this Diſcourſe *Abulgaſi Sultan*, who underſtood perfectly the Language of the Country, anſwer'd him, " My good " old Man, I have liſten'd a good while to " your imprudent Arguments without ſaying " any thing; but becauſe 'tis impoſſible to bear " your Follies with Patience any longer, I muſt " tell you who we are: We are obliged to take " the ſhorteſt Road, becauſe the *Shah* has late- " ly receiv'd News from the Frontiers of *Cho-* " *raſſan*, importing, that the *Zagatais* having " beſieged *Candahar*, and made an Irruption " into the Lands of *Baſt*, our Troops which " are on the Frontiers have fought with them, " and receiv'd a Repulſe; wherefore he has " ſent Orders every where to aſſemble Troops " to oppoſe the Enemy," pointing at the ſame time to him who perſonated the Maſter: " Know you, ſays he, that the Lord who " ſits there, is of the Nation of the *Zerkaſs*, " and called *Mahamet Culi Beg*, and I am a " Native of *Iſpahan*, of the Quarter called *Ha-* " *ſana*; I loſt my Father ſoon after I was born, " but my Mother is living ſtill, and being very " aged, ſhe ſaid to me when I was upon my " Departure with this Maſter, whom I have " ſerved theſe three Years; my Son, you may " remember that a Man of the Village of *Magi* " ſtudy'd twenty Years here at *Iſpahan*, and " that all that time he dieted at my Houſe; ever " ſince his Departure we heard from him duly " till within theſe five Years that he has for- " born writing to us; wherefore I deſire you " may go to that Village to inquire if he be " ſtill alive, and why he writes no more to us: " If he be dead, you ſhall make Commemo- " ration of his Soul in your Prayers; and if " you

Abulgazi *Sultan's Anſwer.*

" you do not what I order you on this Occa-
" ſion, I will give you my Curſe; therefore I
" have prevailed on my Maſter to take this
" Road, and this is a reaſon why I want to in-
" form my ſelf of the ſhorteſt way." Where-
upon all thoſe who heard *Abulgaſi Sultan* an- *The Villa-*
ſwer'd unanimouſly, " What you ſay is true, *gers ſide*
" that Man has been hinder'd to write by a Fall *with A-*
" from his Horſe, ſtumbling under him, which *bulgazi*
" broke one of his Legs, and that Misfortune *Sultan.*
" has confined him to his Bed theſe two Years;
" his Name is *Mullha Shah Aly*, and is a Man
" very exemplary for his Honeſty and Piety:
" He has alſo told us very often, that while he
" was at *Iſpahan* performing his Studies, he
" lodg'd with an old Woman, who had but
" one Son."

This Explanation having obliged the old Man *His Ad-*
to hold his Peace, tho he was ſtill of his firſt O- *venture*
pinion, he went to the Valet of the Overſeer of *with a Va-*
the Village, and bid him take Horſe and go *let.*
tell his Maſter, " That there were Deſerters
" there, and that he would do well to have
" them ſeized." The Valet being come up to
Abulgaſi Saltan juſt as he was about ſwapping the
third Horſe, laid hold twice of the Bridle, ſay-
ing to him, " You, Robber, where are you go-
" ing?" Whereupon *Abulgaſi Sultan* turning to-
wards him, aſked him with a great deal of
Preſence of Mind, whether he was ſerious in
what he ſaid, or meant only to joke? But the
other replying that he was in downright earneſt,
Abulgaſi Sultan ſaid to him, " Probably you
" are weary of carrying a Noſe; do you know
" my Maſter who ſits yonder, at the Entrance
" of the Village; it is *Mahamet Culi Beg*, Bro-
" ther of *Yuſſuf*, one of the greateſt Lords of
" the *Shah*'s Court, go ſpeak to him a little,

" and if he does not cauſe your Noſe to be cut " off that Inſtant, then ſay I'm a Lyar." Seeing at the ſame time two cover'd Chariots with ſeveral loaded Camels paſſing over the Plain at ſome diſtance from the Village; " My Maſter, " adds he, has no Heirs, and his Wife having " this long time teiz'd him to let her go a " Pilgrimage to the City of *Meſhed* to the " Tomb of the holy Man *Imam Ali Uſi Riſa*, " to ſee if ſhe might not have Children by his " Interceſſion, he is determin'd at laſt to car- " ry her with him in that Journey;" and pointing to the Chariots and Camels which paſſed along; " Obſerve thoſe, ſays he; in the Cha- " riot covered with green is my Maſter's Wife, " and in the other covered with yellow is one of " his Friends; wherefore it will be your wiſeſt " way to ſpeak ſo low that he may not under- " ſtand your fooliſh Diſcourſe; for upon hear- " ing the leaſt word of what you have ſaid, he " would ſend you to *Baſtam* immediately, and " have your Noſe and Ears cropt off." Upon which the Valet clapping him gently upon the Shoulder, deſired him to be ſilent, ſaying, What he did was only in Raillery: After which he brought him a Preſent of a Baſon full of Figs, and begg'd Pardon for what had paſſed.

Abulgazi Sultan *purſues his Journey.*

Abulgaſi Sultan having in the mean while ſwap'd his third Horſe, and informed himſelf ſufficiently about the Road, departed immediately from that Village with his pretended Maſter; and having made great Expedition to paſs the Frontiers of *Choraſſan*, he arrived at length in the Neighbourhood of *Cara-cum*, at a Place where he found two different Roads; and judging at firſt ſight that one led to *Mankiſhlak*, and the other to the Mountain of *Kuran*, he reſolved inſtead of keeping the Fields any longer, as he had

had till then done, to avoid meeting much People, to enter the firſt Village he found on the Road to get Intelligence; arriving afterwards at a Village which was inhabited by *Turkmanns*, without his knowing it, he aſked a Lad whom he ſaw near the Road what ſort of People inhabited that Village; and the Boy having reply'd we are *Kiſilaſaks*; *Abulgaſi Sultan* ſaid to him, "How then came ye here, ſince you belong "to *Mankiſhlak.?*" To which the Boy anſwer'd, "That is true; but the *Callmaks* having dri- "ven us out of our Habitations three Years "ago, we came to ſettle here, and did not "build us Houſes till this Year." After which *Abulgaſi Sultan* inquiring who were their Neighbours, the Lad named five or ſix *Turkmann* Families of the Tribe of *Irſari*, of *Abulgaſi Sultan*'s Acquaintance, which dwelt not far from thence. *Abulgaſi Sultan* being extremely glad to find by what the Boy told him that he had paſs'd out of the Dominions of the *Perſians*, went directly to the Village, and making himſelf known to the Inhabitants, was receiv'd by them with extreme Joy, and at their Intreaty determin'd to paſs the Winter with them; but as ſoon as Spring came he repair'd to the *Turkmanns* of the Tribe of *Taka*, who dwell near the Banks of the River *Amu*, at the Foot of the Mountain of *Kuran:* With theſe laſt he ſtaid two whole Years, and from thence he went to *Mankiſhlak*, where he found no more than ſeven hundred Families which were reduced under the Obedience of the *Callmaks*. The *Chan* of the *Callmaks* receiving an Account of the Arrival of *Abulgaſi Sultan* in his Dominions, ſent to him forthwith one of his principal Officers to invite him to his Court*. *A-*

Paſſes the Perſian Borders.

Part of Chowarazm in the hands of the Callmaks.

[* *'Twas at this time* Abulgazi Sultan *learned the* Mogul *Language, in which he wrote his Hiſtory.*]

bulgaſi Sultan accepting of the Invitation, the *Chan* of the *Callmaks* received him kindly, and treated him with all imaginable Diſtinction the whole Year he remain'd with him; after which *Abulgaſi Sultan* having form'd a Deſign of going to *Urgens*, he ſuffer'd him to depart with many Marks of Friendſhip and Regard.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Reign and Death of Abulgaſi Chan.

Abulgazi Sultan *proclaimed* Chan *An. Dom.* 1643.

A *Bulgaſi Chan* arriving at *Urgens* in the Year 1053, (called *Gilan* or the Serpent) the *Turkmanns* proclaimed him *Chan* ſix Months after in the Country of *Arall*, towards the Entrance of the River *Amu*, into the Sea of *Maſanderan*, which happen'd in the Year 1054, called *Choi* or the Sheep. *Shariph Mahamet Chan* his Brother died in the Year 1052. *Imam Culi Chan* of *Great Bucharia* died alſo during that time, and his Brother *Nadir Mahamet Chan* had aſſumed the Scepter after him. *Iſphander Chan*, who was dead ſince the Year 1044, had left his two Sons called *Yuſhan Sultan*, and *Aſhraf Sultan*, who was in poſſeſſion of *Cajuk* and *Haſſaraſſap*. *Abulgaſi Chan* ſeeing himſelf ſecured in the Poſſeſſion of the Towns of *Urgens* and *Vaſir*, preſs'd the *Turkmanns* who dwelt within the Domains of the Princes his Nephews, to ſubmit to him, but they abſolutely refuſed to do it, and put themſelves under the Protection of *Nadir Mahamet Chan* of *Great Bucharia*, after

An. Dom. 1644.

An. Dom. 1642.

An. Dom. 1634.

after ſending *Aſhraf Sultan*, youngeſt Son of *Iſphandiar Chan*, to the Court of the *Shah* of *Perſia* to be brought up there: Upon which *Abulgaſi Chan* having ſent twice to pillage the Habitations of the Subjects of *Chajuk*, *Nadir Mahamet Chan* placed Commanders and ſtrong Gariſons in the Towns of *Chajuk* and *Haſſaraſſap*, and ſent the Widow of *Iſphandiar Chan* to dwell in the Country of *Kanski*; having afterwards conferr'd the Government of thoſe two Towns, and the Lands of their Dependence, with all their Revenues, on his Grandſon *Kaſim Sultan*, Son of his eldeſt Brother *Chiſſeran Sultan*, *Abulgaſi Chan* reſolved to pay him a Viſit: To this purpoſe, having in the Evening embark'd his Infantry in the Country of *Arall*, with Orders to reaſcend the River of *Kheſill* as far as the Bridge of *Taſh Kupruck*, and wait for him there, he follow'd by Land with his Cavalry; but arriving at the Place of Rendezvous, he took only ſuch few Infantry as he found had debark'd, and having order'd his Cavalry to wait in that Place for the reſt of his Infantry, he advanced towards a Burrough not far from *Chajuk*, called *Candum*, where he arriv'd at Day-break; and paſſing a Brook which was betwixt him and *Chajuk*, he hid a hundred and eighty of his Men on his Left in a Valley, and with ſixty Archers and twenty Muſketeers advanced directly up to the Town, with Orders to his Men not to fire till they ſaw him fire firſt.

Abulgazi Chan *marches to attack* Chajuk.

The Enemy perceiving that there was a Party of the Troops of *Abulgaſi Chan* in the Neighbourhood of the Town, made a Sally upon them with a thouſand Men, of whom there were ſeven hundred in Coats of Mail, tho there were not above five ſo accoutred in all

The Enemy ſally.

his Troop. *Abulgaſi Chan*, without being diſmay'd at the Numbers of his Enemies, drew them very dextrouſly to the Place where he deſign'd, and thus reſolutely marching up to them, his Archers and Muſketeers gave them ſo rude a Salutation at twenty Paces diſtance, that having drop'd many of them, the Enemy loſt much of their firſt Fury; and thoſe who lay hid in the Valley coming to charge them at the ſame time in flank, they fell into Confuſion, and fled towards the Town, *Abulgaſi Chan* who had only Infantry, not being able to purſue them; and as after this Action the Enemy kept themſelves ſhut up within the Walls of the Town, *Abulgaſi Chan* return'd to *Taſhkupruk*, and having cauſed ſeveral Villages about *Chajuk* to be plunder'd, he ſent his Troops into Quarters.

Are put to flight.

Here Abulgazi Chan *ends his Hiſtory.*

The Reader is to be inform'd that thus much of this Book hath been written by *Abulgaſi Chan*, and that being hinder'd by a grievous Sickneſs from finiſhing it intirely, he gave the Care of it at his Death to *Anuſha Mahamet Bayadur Chan*; who, to obey his Father's Orders, has added that which follows.

Revolution in Great Bucharia.

Some time after *Nadir Mahamet Chan*, having recalled his Grandſon *Kaſim Sultan* from *Chajuk*, ſent one of his Lords called *Yacup*, to *Haſſaraſſap*, to take on him the Government of what he poſſeſſed in the Country of *Charaſ'm.* Upon which the *Turkmanns* who dwelt at *Chajuk*, and thereabouts, all retir'd to the Country of *Tarchan*; in the mean time *Nadir Mahamet Chan*, having been driven from the Throne by his vaſſal Lords, on account of his harſh Treatment of them, they ſet up his Son *Abdulaſis Sultan* in his Place. Upon the News of this Revolution, *Abulgaſi Chan* marching to *Chajuk* in the Year 1056, called *Tauk*, or the Hen,

An. Dom. 1646.

Hen, he found no difficulty to poſſeſs himſelf of it; after which he cauſed Proclamation to be made that all the *Turkmanns* who had quitted their Habitations on account of the late Troubles, might freely return home, upon his Promiſe never to think for the future of their paſt faults. Upon theſe Aſſurances, thoſe of the *Turkmanns* who were diſperſed about the Country on the other ſide of *Haſſaraſſap*, ſent to him three of their Chiefs called *Juſſum Bayadur*, *Din Mahamet Onbegi*, and *Uruſs Onbegi*, at the Head of eight other Deputies from their Body, to repreſent to him that they were his oldeſt Servants, and that they had never ſubmitted to any other Authority, after they had once promis'd him fealty at his Return from *Great Bucharia*: Laſtly, that they believ'd they had reaſon to hope that he would receive them into his Favour. Upon which *Abulgaſi Chan* gave them to underſtand in anſwer, that he was going to take Poſſeſſion of *Haſſaraſſap*, and that there all the *Turkmanns* who had ſent them in quality of their Deputies might come to him to tender their Faith and Homage. Departing afterwards for *Haſſaraſſap*, he cauſed his Tents to be ſet up before the Town, and the *Turkmanns* repairing thither according to his Orders, he ſent them word, that intending next Day to give a great Feaſt, he deſir'd they would provide his Kitchen on that occaſion with Store of Milk, and all ſorts of Beaſts; which having been executed to his Satisfaction, he treated them at firſt very ſplendidly; but towards the Evening, he cauſed them all to be kill'd, to the Number of 2000 Perſons: and after he had ſent to plunder their Habitations, he return'd to *Chajuk*.

Abulgazi Chan takes Chajuk.

Cauſes 2000 Turkmanns to be killed at a Feaſt.

Gomada Awal. *Abulgaſi Chan*, not ſatisfy'd with extirpating theſe, went in the Month *Dſamadi Awall*, of the Year *It*, or the *Dog*, with ſome Troops to the Country of *Tarchan*, to find out the *Turkmanns* who had quitted *Chajuk* after the Departure of *Kaſim Sultan*. At his Arrival in the Country of *Tarchan*, the greateſt part of them fled to the Country of *Bamaburinak*; and the reſt having been put to the Sword, he return'd to *Chajuk*. *Abulgaſi Chan*, in the Year *Zizkan*, or the Mouſe, entring into the Country of *Bamaburinak*, to diſlodge the *Turkmanns* who had fled thither from the Country of *Tarchan*; thoſe of them who knew not where elſe to go, ſent their Wives and Children to the Country of *Arall*, and retrench'd themſelves among the Ruins of ſome old Walls under the Command of one of their Chiefs called *Chahar Chodſa*, with a Reſolution to ſell their Lives dear. *Abulgaſi Chan* finding them in this Situation, made them ſome Propoſals of Accommodation; but as they durſt not truſt him, they reſolv'd to march a foot out of their Intrenchments, and to throw themſelves deſperately upon the Troops of the *Chan*; but they were ſo well receiv'd, that not one of them eſcaped. The Day after this Action, *Abulgaſi Chan* detach'd ſome of his Men towards the Country of *Arall*, in queſt of the Wives and Children of the *Turkmanns*, who had loſt their Lives on this Occaſion, and return'd himſelf to *Chajuk*.

Callmaks *defeated.* In the Year *Sigir*, or of the Cow, a Lord of the *Callmaks*, of the Tribe of the *Kurlauts**, being come with ſome Troops to *Kabt*, cauſed much People to be killed, and carry'd a great Number of the Inhabitants of that Town into

† *The Tribe of the* Kurlauts, *is ſprung from the* Mogulls, *according to what our Author relates*, p. 53.

ſlavery,

ſlavery. Soon after another *Callmak* of Diſtinction, of the Tribe of the *Torgauts**, called *Boyan*, coming into the Country of *Charaſs'm* to trafick, and with him ſeveral other Merchants of his Nation, *Abulgaſi Chan* let them finiſh their Buſineſs quietly; but fifteen days after their Departure he ſet out in purſuit of them, and coming up with their Rear on the Frontiers of the Country of *Juguruk-baſh*, he defeated them intirely: After which reſting ſome Hours in that Place, to give his Men time to ſhare the Booty, and his Horſes to breathe, he went in purſuit of the Body of that Troop. At his Approach the *Callmaks* ſeeing no poſſibility of eſcaping him, reſolv'd to give a vigorous Charge; but their Commander *Boyan*, having been wounded in the Shoulder in the beginning of the Action, and the Standard-bearer made Priſoner at the ſame time, Confuſion ſeized them, and they all took themſelves to flight with their Commander, leaving all their Effects a Prey to the Troops of *Abulgaſi Chan*; after which that Prince return'd into his Dominions.

Abulgazi Chan *chaſtiſes the* Turkmanns *of the Tribe of* Bairatzs.

The chief of the *Turkmanns* of the Tribe of the *Bairatzs*, called *Adi*, having always been an Enemy to *Abulgaſi Chan*, he reſolved in the Year *Taufhkan*, or the Hare, to go and chaſtiſe the *Turkmanns* of that Tribe, and put their Chief to death. To that purpoſe, being on his March with ſome Troops towards the River *Kurgan*, about which that Tribe had then their Habitations, he cauſed all the Villages which he could find of the *Bairatzs* to be intirely ruined; but that where their chief *Adi* reſided was ſo well hid, that *Abulgaſi Chan* employ'd ſe-

* *The Tribe of the* Torgauts, *is a Branch of the* Virats; *agreeable to what our Author relates*, p. 41.

veral

veral days in vain looking for it. Nevertheleſs, as he had cauſed all the Dwellings of the *Bairatzs* thereabouts to be deſtroy'd, his Men on that occaſion fell into ſo great a ſcarcity of Bread, that a Horſe was given for a ſmall Loaf, which obliged ſeveral out of the Body of his Troops to deſert. At length a Merchant of the Tribe of *Taka*, of the *Turkmanns*, called *Avanaſh*, having fallen into the Hands of a Party of the Troops of *Abulgaſi Chan*, that Man who was perfectly acquainted with all the Paſſages leading to that Village, having gone often there on account of his Trade, conducted *Abulgaſi Chan* and his Troops thither; and as *Adi* put himſelf in a Poſture of Defence, he was kill'd in the Action by a Muſket-ſhot, and his Village intirely demoliſh'd: After which *Abulgaſi Chan* return'd to his uſual Reſidence.

Chaſtiſes other Tribes of the Turkmanns.

Abulgaſi Chan being reſolv'd to reduce the *Turkmanns* ſo low, that they ſhould not be able to make any Diſturbance ſo eaſily for the future, he went in the Year *Gilan*, or the Serpent, to chaſtiſe the *Turkmanns* of the Tribe of *Gemergemilli*: and in the ſame Campaign he found occaſion to chaſtiſe thoſe of the Tribe of *Sarik*; not to mention ſeveral other Expeditions which he made on divers other Occaſions againſt the *Turkmanns*, of which he kept no Account, becauſe it was not worth the while.

Invaſion of the Callmaks.

In the Year *Lu*, or of the Crocodile, three Lords of the *Callmaks* of the Tribe of the *Torgauts*, called *Mergan Taiſha*, *Ochzutaba* and *Togull*, came with their Troops to make an Invaſion upon the Lands of *Haſſaraſſap*, and there intirely ruin'd a Village called *Jeſdus*; being inform'd afterwards that there was much Cattle at another Village called *Danugan*, they went thither

thither likewiſe, and having taken a great Booty both of Priſoners and Cattle, they propos'd to return. *Abulgaſi Chan*, who was inform'd that there were many Parties of *Callmaks* on the Frontiers, without knowing they had actually invaded his Territories, was come during theſe Tranſactions to *Haſſaraſſap*, intending to make a Journey into *Great Bucharia*; but fearing leſt the *Callmaks* ſhould take Advantage of his Abſence to fall upon his Dominions, he chang'd his Reſolution and ſent a Courier to *Abdulaſis Chan* of *Great Bucharia*, adviſing him to be upon his guard, for that the *Callmaks* hover'd upon his Frontiers with ſtrong Parties, and made terrible Havock wherever they came. That Courier having ſet forward to execute the *Chan*'s Orders, learn'd at the Paſſage of a River which was in his Road, that the three above-mention'd Lords of the *Callmaks* were actually return'd with a conſiderable Booty which they had taken from the Subjects of his Maſter; upon which returning in great haſte, he arrived ten days after his Departure with that News to *Abulgaſi Chan*. Upon this Advice *Abulgaſi Chan* mounted Horſe immediately to purſue them with all the Troops he could get together, notwithſtanding all his Officers could do to diſſuade him from that Enterprize, by repreſenting to him the little likelihood there was of his coming up with the *Callmaks*, who were ten days March a head of him. Nevertheleſs *Abulgaſi Chan* having travell'd Day and Night to recover what the *Callmaks* had gained of him, came up at length with their Rear-Guard near the Moun-

Abulgazi Chan *defeats a Party of* Callmaks.

Mountain *Irder*, and falling upon them on a ſudden, ſlew ſome and took others Priſoners, but the greater part of them ſaved themſelves by flight; underſtanding afterwards that the groſs of the *Callmaks* was not ſo far advanced but they might yet be overtaken; he cauſed all the Priſoners to be ſlain, that they might not embarraſs him on the Road, and put on in purſuit of their Comrades.

Overtakes another Party of the Callmaks.

The *Callmaks* ſeeing him approach them, and being willing to avoid coming to Blows with him, divided themſelves into three Parties, who fled by three different Roads; but *Abulgaſi Chan* continuing ſtill to preſs upon them, at length overtook *Ochzutaba* and *Togull*, two of the *Callmak* Lords in the Country of *Segeri-rabat*, where they were ſo well intrenched, that it was impoſſible to force them: But as on the other ſide the *Callmaks* durſt not ſally forth to continue their Journey, they ſent all the Booty they had taken on that Occaſion, together with their Bows and Arrows to *Abulgaſi Chan*, intreating him to pardon them for having deſtroyed the two Villages above-mentioned, in regard they did not know they belong'd to his Dominions; that their Deſign was to make an Invaſion into *Great Bucharia*, and that it was only by ſtraying out of the way that they came into his Territories; that they would give him their Oaths, not only never to return any more into his Dominions to do the leaſt Damage, but more than that, if they ever came to know that any other Lords of their Nation took up Arms againſt him, they would immediately advertiſe him of it, and even aſſiſt him againſt them in caſe of need. Whereupon

upon *Abulgaſi Chan* having called to mind that the *Callmaks* of that Tribe had never incommoded the Subjects of his Dominions before, he ſent them their Arms, and ſuffer'd them to return home peaceably. At his Return, *Abulgaſi Chan* rais'd *Jadigar Inak*, who till then had commanded at *Haſſaraſſap*, to the Dignity of firſt Lord of his Court; and after he had loaded him with Preſents, he carry'd him with him to *Chajuk*, and gave him the Name of *Jadigar Atalik*.

Lets them go unpuniſhed.

After theſe ſeveral Expeditions, *Abulgaſi Chan* deſign'd to paſs the reſt of his days in repoſe, and to regulate the Affairs within his Dominions, when *Subhan Culi Chan* of *Balk* ſent an Ambaſſador to repreſent to him, that having neither Father nor Brother, he had recourſe to him, who was to him in place of Father and Brother, in the ſtreights to which he ſaw himſelf reduced by *Abdulafis Chan* of *Great Bucharia*, who had taken the Field in order to deprive him of the City of *Balk*, and to put him to death who was the lawful *Chan* *; concluding, that he

Subhan Culi Chan of Balk, craves Aſſiſtance of Abulgazi Chan againſt Abulaziz Chan.

* *The Sieur* Bernier *informs us, that during the Courſe of that War (between the* Chans *of* Great Bucharia *and of* Balk) *the* Chan *of* Great Bucharia, *called in on his ſide the* Great Mogull Shah Gehan *to his Aſſiſtance, and that that Monarch actually ſent him a good Army under the Command of his Son* Aureng Zeb; *that with theſe Succours,* Abdulafis Chan *laid Siege to* Balk; *but when he was upon the Point of taking it, he conceived a Jealouſy of* Aureng Zeb, *and ſuſpecting that Prince might take a fancy to keep that Town to himſelf after it was taken, he ſtruck up a Peace all of a ſudden with the* Chan *of* Balk, *and ſent back* Aureng Zeb, *with his Troops, into his own Country.*

conjured

conjured him to take Arms in his favour againſt *Abdulaſis Chan*. *Abulgaſi Chan* conſidering that *Subhan Culi Chan* was his near Relation, as being marry'd to his Niece, the Daughter of *Shariph Mahamet Chan*, and calling to mind at the ſame time the Treachery with which *Abdula Chan* of *Great Bucharia* had formerly treated the Princes of the Poſterity of *Akattai Chan*, his Uncles and near Kinſmen, by putting them inhumanely to death, after he had drawn them by Fraud and falſe Promiſes out of the Town of *Vaſir*, he thought fit to lend his Aſſiſtance to *Subhan Culi Chan*; and advancing in the Year *Koi*, or of the Sheep, with a ſtrong Body of Troops into the Province of *Kogertlik*, which is ſituate upon the Frontiers of *Great Bucharia*, he detach'd one of his Officers called *Bik Aly Inak*, with a Body of ten thouſand choice Men towards the Town of *Carakul*, which belongs to *Great Bucharia*, and went himſelf in Perſon to take the Town of *Siuntzbala*, which he cauſed to be intirely ruin'd, with thirty or forty Villages in the Neighbourhood of that Town; after which he return'd into the Country of *Kogertlik*, where three days after *Bik Aly Inak* came to join him with his Detachment, after having plunder'd the Town of *Carakul*.

Abulgazi Chan *invades* Great Bucharia.

Abulgazi Chan *invades* Great Bucharia *a ſecond time.*

Abulgaſi Chan after that made a Tour to *Chajuk* to regulate ſome Domeſtick Affairs, and returning a while after towards the Frontiers of *Great Bucharia*, he made a ſecond Invaſion the ſame Year into the Lands ſubject to *Abdulaſis Chan*. In this Expedition he went in Perſon to *Carakul*, which he caus'd

caus'd to be plunder'd a-new, becauſe he found a great Number of the Inhabitants of that Town had return'd thither after the Departure of his Troops: From thence paſſing on to the Province of *Gordiſh*, the Lords who were charg'd with the Affairs of Government on the Frontiers, in the Abſence of *Abdulaſis Chan*, who was at *Carſhi*, which alſo was under his Dominion, came to meet *Abulgaſi Chan* with fifteen thouſand Men, but he intirely defeated them, inſomuch that ſcarce a thouſand of them eſcaped, a great part of whom having thrown themſelves into *Carakul*, *Abulgaſi Chan* went in queſt of them; and after ſlaying ſome of them, and making the reſt Priſoners, he cauſed the few Houſes which ſtill remain'd in that Town to be burnt; after which he return'd into his Dominions.

Several Invaſions of Abulgazi Chan *into* Great Bucharia.

In the Year *Bizin*, or the Ape, *Abulgaſi Chan* went to take the Town of *Zardjui* which belongs to *Great Bucharia*; and after he had intirely ruin'd it, and plunder'd the Country round it, he return'd to *Chajuk*. In the Year *Tauk*, or the Hen, *Abulgaſi Chan* having at the beginning of the Spring enter'd again into *Great Bucharia*, went and ravag'd the Province of *Jaizi*, which extends from the Town of *Carakul*, to that of *Nerſem*, and having taken much Booty, was return'd with a great Number of Priſoners upon his own Frontiers; at the ſame time that *Abdulaſis Chan*, accompany'd with *Kaſim Sultan*, was on the March with a numerous Army towards the Country of *Kogertlik* to give him a Diverſion; but upon the News which he heard of *Abulgaſi Chan*'s Return to *Charaſ'm*,

raſs'm, he retired with ſo much Precipitation, that many of his Men kill'd their Horſes, tho no one had Thoughts of purſuing them. In the mean time *Abulgaſi Chan* being returned to *Chajuk*, where he had taken a Turn after the Retreat of the Enemies Troops, he made this ſame Year a ſecond Invaſion into *Great Bucharia*, and having taken the Town of *Carmina*, gave it to be pillaged, and returned with conſiderable Booty and many Priſoners; but in his Retreat, having paſſed a River over a Bridge which he found there, he cauſed his Tents to be ſet up on this ſide the River, and believing himſelf very ſecure in this Place, he order'd that all the loaded Camels and Horſes, as well as all the Booty, Cattle, and in general all the Baggage of the Army ſhould begin to march at Midnight, and that the Army ſhould follow at break of Day: After which he laid himſelf down to reſt peaceably, keeping about his Perſon no more than his uſual Guard of a hundred Men, tho his Army conſiſted of above twenty five thouſand.

Carmina.

Abdolaziz Chan *overtakes* Abulgazi Chan.

Next Morning, ſome Hours after his Army had decamp'd, one of his principal Officers called *Chodſam Birdi Atalik*, enter'd into his Tent, and finding him ſtill faſt aſleep, cry'd to him, "Riſe, Sir; is this a time to "ſleep here?" But the *Chan* made anſwer, "Who is it that you would have me afraid "of, ſince we have not heard of any Ene- "mies Troops in all this Province?" At the ſame time one came to inform *Abulgaſi Chan* that Troops of the Enemy appear'd on the other ſide of the River, and in reality it was *Abdulaſis Chan*, who was arriv'd at the Head of

of all his Army; for a Beggar who ſat by the way-ſide, when *Abulgaſi Chan* was marching towards *Carmina*, and to whom the *Chan* cauſed an Alms which he aſked to be given, haſted to *Abdulaſis Chan*, after the Army of *Abulgaſi Chan* was paſs'd, and inform'd him that that Prince was advanced with a Body of twenty five thouſand Men to take *Carmina*; whereupon *Abdulaſis Chan* began his March that way immediately with his whole Army. *Abulgaſi Chan* ſeeing the Enemy draw towards him, retir'd leiſurely towards his Troops, which were employ'd about paſſing a little marſhy Brook; and in the March he ſent Orders to his Commanders, that they ſhould make an end of getting over the Baggage, but that the Troops ſhould halt on this ſide the Rivulet.

In the mean time all the Enemy's Army, to the Number of ſixty thouſand Men, purſued him cloſely, and a thouſand Horſemen in Coats of Mail detach'd from the Body of the Army, began to preſs him at the Heels: Upon which *Abulgaſi Chan* having gained a Paſs which was before him, lighted off his Horſe, and made the hundred Horſemen who were with him do the ſame, to the end they might be better able to make uſe of their Muſkets, with which they were armed. At the ſame time, he commanded him who carry'd the Enſign to advance in haſte towards his Army, the greateſt part of which had already paſſed the Brook, and to cauſe the Trumpet to ſound that they might return: After which he detach'd *Jadigar Atalik*, with thirty Men, to go charge the

Abulgazi Chan *encounters* 1000 *Horſe with* 100 *Men.*

thouſand Horſemen of the Enemy at the Entrance of the *Defile*, while he ſtood ready to ſupport him in Perſon with the reſt of his Men, in caſe he ſhould be preſs'd too hard. *Jadigar Atalik* executed thoſe Orders with ſo much Conduct, that having at firſt ſtunn'd the Enemy by a clever Diſcharge which he cauſed to be made upon them near hand, he knew ſo well afterwards how to manage his ſmall Forces, ſometimes retiring, ſometimes advancing on the Enemy as Occaſion ſerved; that he diſputed the Paſſage of that Defile till ſuch time as *Anuſhah Mahamet Bayadur Sultan*, Son of *Abulgaſi Chan*, who was but fourteen Years of Age, coming to his Father's Aſſiſtance at the Head of ſix hundred Horſemen, with three hundred Foot Soldiers behind them, *Abulgaſi Chan* found himſelf in a Condition to march out of the Paſs to receive them: But as in the interim the Enemy's Army had time to approach, thoſe thouſand Horſemen were ſoon ſupported by a great Body of Troops; which having ſurrounded *Abulgaſi Chan* on all ſides, would doubtleſs have mauled him ſeverely, if he had not given four hundred choice Men to his Son *Anuſha Mahamet Bayadur Sultan*, with Orders to fall furiouſly upon the Right of a great Squadron, which block'd up the Road from their Army, while he went in Perſon at the Head of ſix hundred Men which remained with him, to throw himſelf upon the Left of the ſame Squadron; which was executed with ſo much Succeſs, that having each of them on their reſpective ſides forced the Enemy's Troops,

Bravery of Anuſhah Mohammed Soltân.

Troops, they made their way thro' the midſt of them, and happily rejoined their Army; which upon the Report of the Danger the *Chan* was in, advanced with ſpeed to deliver him from it.

The two Armies engage.

As ſoon as *Abulgaſi Chan* had put himſelf at the Head of his Army, he cauſed it to advance forthwith under the Command of his Son *Anuſha Mahamet Bayadur Sultan*, to attack the Enemy's Army, which began already to appear; and as ſoon as the reſt of his Troops arriv'd, he made them advance to the Right and Left of his Son, in order to ſuſtain him. Then the Engagement becoming general, they fought a long time with equal Fortune; but at length the juvenile Courage of *Anuſha Mahamet Bayadur Sultan*, who tho it was the firſt time he was at ſuch an Entertainment, bore down every thing that ſtood before him, having turn'd the Balance on *Abulgaſi Chan*'s ſide, the Army of *Abdulaſis Chan* was beaten, notwithſtanding its great Superiority, and the victorious Troops purſued it as far as the above-mentioned River. The Rout of the Enemy was ſo ſignal on this Occaſion, that a great Number of them who could not gain the Bridge, drown'd themſelves in the River; and *Abdulaſis Chan* himſelf, tho very much wounded, was obliged to paſs the River by ſwimming, to avoid falling into the Hands of the Vanquiſher. After putting an end to the Campaign ſo glorioufly, *Abulgaſi Chan* return'd to *Chajuk*, with a great Number of Priſoners which he had taken in this Action from the Enemy. On

Abd al Aziz Chan *routed.*

his Arrival in that Town, he gave a ſplendid Feaſt to all the Lords and great Officers of his Dominions; and after he had in publick greatly commended the Valour which his Son had ſhewn in the laſt Battle, he reſigned to him the Town of *Haſſaraſſap*, and gave him Subjects in proportion to enable him to defend it.

Abulgazi Chan *invades* Great Bucharia, *and takes* Wardanſi.

In the Year *It*, or of the Dog, *Abulgaſi Chan* having again enter'd into *Great Bucharia*, went and took the Town of *Wardan*; and after he had cauſed it to be ſack'd, he return'd loaden with Booty and Priſoners into his Dominions. In the Year *Bars*, or the Tyger, he return'd a-new into *Great Bucharia*; and advancing to the very Walls of *Buchara*, the Capital of all the Country, he cauſed all the Villages of the Territory of that Town to be deſtroy'd: After which he went and incamp'd before one of the Gates of the City called *Namoſga*, which is always ſhut, except on great Feſtival days, with a Deſign to attempt taking of it; but reflecting afterwards that there would be no Glory in making himſelf Maſter of the Town, in the Abſence of the *Chan* who was at *Samarkant*, and at a time when there were none but Women and *Tadſiks*, or *Burghers*, in the Town, he laid aſide the Deſign till another Opportunity, and return'd into his own Dominions with much Booty and Priſoners.

Advances to the Walls of Buchara.

Makes Peace with Abd al Aziz Chan.

Abulgaſi Chan having by this time arriv'd at the Age of ſixty Years, began to conſider that there was Blood enough ſhed to ſatisfy the Paſſion of revenging the Murder of the Princes of his Houſe, committed by *Abdula Chan*;

Chan; and that whatever Advantage might accrue to him by continuing the War againſt *Abdulaſis Chan*, it would be acting entirely againſt the Dictates of his Conſcience, any more to perſiſt in giving Diſturbance to a Prince who was of the ſame Religion with himſelf, while he could more uſefully employ his Arms againſt the *Callmaks* and *Perſians*. Guided by theſe Sentiments, he ſent Ambaſſadors to *Abdulaſis Chan* with Propoſals of Peace: and as *Abdulaſis Chan* deſir'd no better than to ſee an end to ſo unfortunate a War, and to rid himſelf the beſt he could of an Enemy who carry'd Fire and Sword to the very Gates of his Reſidence, he readily agreed to the Conditions of Peace; and upon the Report which the aforeſaid Ambaſſadors made at their Return to *Chajuk*, to *Abulgaſi Chan* of the Succeſs of their Commiſſion, he reſolv'd to live ever after in good Friendſhip with *Abdulaſis Chan*; and having recalled all his Troops from the Frontiers of *Great Bucharia*, he ſent them towards the Borders of the Country of *Choraſſan*. After which *Abulgaſi Chan* * ſeeing his Dominions in Peace, reſigned the Throne to his Son *Anuſha Mahamet Bayadur Sultan*, with a Deſign to ſpend the reſt of his days in ſerving God; but he died not long after *His Death.*

Reſigns the Kingdom to his Son Anuſhah Mohammed.

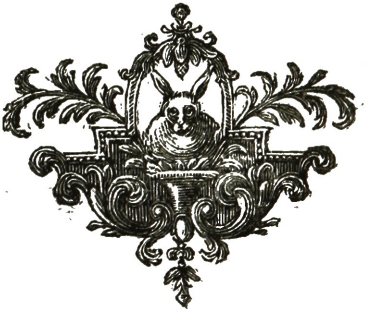
* *'Tis the Poſterity of this Prince which reigns at preſent in* Charaſ'm; *for it was his Grandſon* Hadſi Mahamet Bayadur Chan, *who ſent in the Year* 1714, *a Miniſter to* Petersburg *to treat of an Alliance with the Court of* Ruſſia, *notwithſtanding we know that there has happen'd ſince then another Revolution in the Government of that Country, without being yet informed of the Circumſtances of that Change.*

in

An. Dom. 1663. in the Month of *Rameſan*, of the Year 1074, called *Tauſhkan*, or the Hare, after he had reigned twenty Years.

I *Anuſha Mahamet Bayadur Chan*, have put the laſt Hand to this Book at *Chajuk*, in the A.D. 1663. Year 1076, called *Gilan*, or the Serpent; and I have been obliged to do it my ſelf, becauſe there are very few Perſons of Learning in our Provinces.

The End of the Firſt Volume.



The Reader is deſired, before he begins, to correct the following ERRATA.

PAG. 3. for *Safi Jula* in the Margin, r. *Safi Allah.* l. 5. inſtead of, *of the Turf*, r. *Mold*; and l. 6. inſtead of *Earth of the Turf*, r. *Mold of the Earth.* P. 46. l. 15. dele *that.* P. 60. l. 3. dele *Chan.* P. 65. l. 3. for *were*, r. *we are.* P. 123, and 141. for *Gaznehen* in the Margin, r. *Gazniu*, or *Gazna.* P. 130. l. 28. for *Kiaſudin*, r. *Kiyâſadin.* P. 134. l. 16. for *Mern*, r. *Merv.* P. 135. for *Abaſcum* in the Margin, r. *Aboſkum*, or *Aboſghum.* P. 143. r. *Daſht* for *Daſhté.* P. 172. laſt Line, for 2372, r. 1372. in the firſt Note, after *the ſame*, r. *tho not.* P. 187. take away the * l. 28. and ſet it after *Ulſeitu.* l. 19. P. 194. l. 12. for *Ureſſes*, r. *Uruſſes.* P. 206. l. 38. for Tatars, r. *People of* Tatary. P. 208. l. 21. for *Kutleg*, r. *Kutlek.* P. 219. l. 34. for *Subject*, r. *Subjects.* P. 223. inſert at the bottom, [*Title of* Sofi *is improper.* See p. 730.] P. 254. l. 37. for *Suttan*, r. *Sultan*, or *Soltan*, P. 294. l. 17. for *Mahamet*, r. *Mahamut.* P. 300. l. 35. after *Mahamut Sultan*, make a Comma. P. 325. l. 18. for *Kumkula*, r. *Kumkala.* P. 331. l. 31. for *Simſanzi*, r. *Simſauzi.* l. 32. for *Bukbendu*, r. *Bukbenduu.* P. 332. l. 24. dele *the Mother of.* P. 357. l. 8. after *Chan*, inſert *with her eldeſt Son.* l. 13. for *Brother*, r. *Son.* P. 365. for *Abulaziz* in the Margin, r. *Abd al Aziz.*

BOOKS Printed for J. and J. Knapton, J. Darby, A. Betteſworth, F. Fayram, J. Osborn and T. Longman, J. Pemberton, C. Rivington, F. Clay, J. Batley, *and* A. Ward.

FOLIO.

DOMAT's Civil Law, in its Natural Order, 2 Vol. both large and ſmall Paper.

Bridgman's Conveyancer, 2 Vol.

Tyrrel's Bibliotheca Politica, both large and ſmall Paper.

Leſtrange's *Joſephus*, with Maps and Cuts.

Montfaucon's Travels into *Italy*, with Cuts.

Moll's Geography, with Maps.

Moral Virtue delineated, both in *French* and *Engliſh*, with Cuts.

ABp. *Tillotſon*'s Works, 3 Vol.

Bp. *Patrick*'s Commentary on the Hiſtorical Books of the Old Teſtament, 2 Vol.

Dr. *Scott*'s Chriſtian Life Compleat.

Pufendorf's Law of Nature and Nations, with M. *Barbeyrac*'s Preface at large.

Wood's Inſtitutes of the Laws of *England*, together with his Thoughts on the ſame.

Jacob's Law Dictionary.

QUARTO.

Shakeſpear's Works, 7 Vol. publiſh'd by Mr. *Pope* and Dr. *Sewel*.

Tourneford's Voyage to the *Levant*, 2 Vol. with Cuts.

Stephens's *Spaniſh* Dictionary, 2d Edit.

Boyer's French Dictionary, both Quarto and Octavo.

OCTAVO.

Acta Regia, or Mr. *Rapin*'s Account of *Rymer*'s *Fœdera*, 4 Vol.

Abridgment of the Statutes, 6 Vol.

Antiquities of *Weſtminſter*, 2 Vol. with Cuts.

Bailey's *Engliſh* Dictionary, 4th Edit.

——his Tranſlation of *Eraſmus*'s Colloquies.

Boileau's Works in *Engliſh*, 3 Vol.

Bruyere's Characters, 2 Vol.

Betterton's Life, with the Amorous Widow, or Wanton Wife.

Blackmore's Eccleſiaſtical Antiquities, 2 Vol. Abridg'd from *Bingham*.

Cooke of Foreſt-Trees, 3d Edit.

Cocker's Decimal Arithmetick, 6th Edit.

Critical Hiſtory of the Nobility.

Calamy Benj. his Volume of Sermons, 6th Edit.

Collier's *Antoninus*, 3d Edit.

Du Pin's Method of ſtudying Divinity.

Dionis's Midwifery.

The Works of Monſ. St. *Evremond*, publiſh'd M. *Des Maizeaux*, 3 Vol. 2d Edit.

Bp. *Fleetwood*'s Sermons, on Relative Duties, 3d Edit.

Hutcheſon's Inquiry into the Ideas of Beauty and Virtue, 3d Edit.

——Eſſay on the Nature and Conduct of the Paſſions.